



The Large Hadron-Electron Collider at the HL-LHC

From resolving the partonic structure of matter to Higgs and
BSM physics

LHeC Collaboration



To be submitted to J.Phys. G

Abstract

This is our abstract.

Preface

This paper represents the updated design study of the Large Hadron electron Collider, the LHeC, a TeV energy scale electron-hadron (eh) collider which may come into operation during the third decade of the lifetime of the Large Hadron Collider (LHC) at CERN. It is an account, accompanied by numerous papers in the literature, for many years of study and development, guided by an International Advisory Committee (IAC) which was charged by the CERN Directorate to advise on the directions of energy frontier electron-hadron physics at CERN. End of 2019 the IAC summarised its observations and recommendations in a brief report to the DG of CERN, which is here reproduced as an Appendix.

The paper outlines a unique, far reaching physics programme, a design concept for a new generation collider detector, together with a novel configuration of the intense, high energy electron beam. This study builds on the previous, detailed LHeC Conceptual Design Report (CDR), which was published eight years ago [1]. It surpasses the initial study in essential characteristics: i) the depth of the physics programme, owing to the insight obtained mainly with the LHC, and ii) the luminosity prospect, for enabling a novel Higgs facility to be built and the prospects to search for and discover new physics to be strengthened. It builds on recent and forthcoming progress of modern technology, due to major advances especially of the superconducting RF technology and as well new detector techniques.

Unlike in 2012, there has now a decision been taken to configure the LHeC as an electron linac-proton ring configuration, which leaves the ring-ring option [1] as a backup. The high instantaneous luminosity of about $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ may be achieved with the electron accelerator built as an energy recovery linac (ERL) and because the brightness of the LHC exceeds early expectations by far, not least through the upgrade of the LHC to its high luminosity version, the HL-LHC [2, 3]. The LHeC is designed to operate concurrently with the LHC. It thus represents a unique opportunity to advance particle physics by building on the singular investments which CERN and its global partners have made into the LHC facility.

Extending much beyond the CDR, a configuration has newly been designed for a low energy ERL facility, termed PERLE [4], which is moving ahead to be built at Orsay by an international collaboration. The major parameters of PERLE have been taken from the LHeC, such as the 3-turn configuration, source, the 802 MHz frequency and cavity-cryomodule technology, in order to make PERLE a suitable facility for the development of LHeC ERL technology and the accumulation of operating experience prior to and later in parallel with the LHeC. In addition, the PERLE facility has a striking low energy physics programme, industrial applications and will be an enabler for ERL technology as the first facility to operate in the 10 MW power regime.

While the 2012 CDR focussed the physics discussion on the genuine physics of deep inelastic scattering (DIS) leading much beyond HERA, the focus here is shifted to the challenges posed

by the LHC. It is demonstrated that DIS at the LHeC can play a crucial role in sustaining and enriching the LHC programme, a consequence of the results obtained at the LHC, i.e. the discovery of the Higgs boson, the non-observation of super symmetry (SUSY) or other non Standard Model (SM) exotic particles and, not least, the unexpected realisation of the huge potential of the LHC for discovery through precision measurements in the strong and electroweak sectors. It thus was felt time to summarise the recent seven years of LHeC development, also in support of the current discussions on the future of particle physics, especially at the energy frontier. Both for the LHeC [5–7] and PERLE [8], documents were submitted for consideration to the strategy process.

The LHeC has something of a one in our lifetime opportunity for substantial progress in particle physics. It is about a linac shorter than the pioneering 2 mile linac at SLAC, a most ambitious, exciting physics programme and the introduction of novel accelerator technology. It is about exploiting the unique values and spendings into the LHC. It requires probably less courage than that of Pief Panowsky and colleagues half a century ago. Finally, not least, one may realise that the power LHeC needed without the recovery is beyond 1 GW. It so appears to be a significant step towards green accelerator technology, a major general desire and requirement of our times. This paper aims at substantiating these statements in the various chapters following.

Contents

Preface	1
1 Introduction	8
1.1 The Context	8
1.1.1 Particle Physics - an unfinished Area of Fundamental Science	8
1.1.2 Deep Inelastic Scattering and HERA	9
1.2 The Paper	11
1.2.1 The LHeC Physics Programme	11
1.2.2 The Accelerator	12
1.2.3 PERLE	13
1.2.4 The Detector	14
2 LHeC Configuration and Parameters	16
2.1 Introduction	16
2.1.1 Cost Estimate, Default Configuration and Staging	17
2.2 Configuration Parameters	18
2.3 Luminosity	19
2.3.1 Electron-Proton Collisions	20
2.3.2 Electron-Ion Collisions	20
2.4 Linac Parameters	21
2.5 Operation Schedule	22
3 Precision Standard Model Physics with LHeC	24
3.1 Resolving the Parton Substructure of the Proton	24
3.1.1 Open Questions on the QCD of PDFs	24
3.1.2 PDFs and the LHC	25
3.1.3 The Role of DIS/ep Colliders in the Determination of PDFs	28
3.1.4 Simulation and Default Fit	29
3.1.5 PDF Prospects with the LHeC	29
3.1.6 Heavy Quarks	35
3.1.7 Summary	38
3.2 Pushing the limits of QCD with high precision measurements	39
3.2.1 Determination of the strong coupling constant	39
3.2.2 New QCD Dynamics at Small x	47
3.2.3 Low x and the Longitudinal Structure Function F_L	54
3.2.4 The 3D Structure of the Proton	60
3.2.5 Inclusive diffraction	66
3.2.6 Light-Front Holography and Superconformal Algebra	75
3.2.7 Disentangling non-linear QCD dynamics at the LHeC	78

3.3	Electroweak Physics	85
3.3.1	Electroweak effects in inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections	85
3.3.2	Methodology of a combined EW and QCD fit	86
3.3.3	Weak boson masses M_W and M_Z	87
3.3.4	Further mass determinations	88
3.3.5	Weak Neutral Current Couplings	89
3.3.6	The neutral-current ρ_{NC} and κ_{NC} parameters	90
3.3.7	The effective weak mixing angle $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}$	92
3.3.8	Electroweak effects in charged-current scattering	94
3.3.9	Direct W and Z production and Anomalous Triple Gauge Couplings	94
3.3.10	Conclusion	96
3.4	Top Quark Physics	97
3.4.1	Wtq Couplings	98
3.4.2	FCNC Top Quark Couplings	99
3.4.3	Other Top Quark Property Measurements and Searches for New Physics	102
3.4.4	Summary Top Quark Physics	102
3.5	Novel QCD phenomena at the LHeC	102
4	Nuclear Particle Physics with Electron-Ion Scattering at the LHeC	105
4.1	Introduction	105
4.2	Nuclear Parton Densities	107
4.2.1	Pseudodata	108
4.2.2	Nuclear gluon PDFs in a global-fit context	110
4.2.3	nPDFs from DIS on a single nucleus	112
4.3	Nuclear diffraction	119
4.3.1	Exclusive vector meson diffraction	119
4.3.2	Inclusive diffraction on nuclei	124
4.4	New Dynamics at Small \mathbf{x} with Nuclear Targets	125
4.5	Collective effects in dense environments – the ‘ridge’	127
4.6	Novel QCD Nuclear Phenomena at the LHeC	128
5	Higgs Physics with LHeC	130
5.1	Signal Strength and Couplings	130
5.2	Htt Coupling Measurement	130
5.3	Higgs Decay into Invisible Particles	130
5.4	ep Measurement Potential in the EFT Framework	130
6	Searches for Physics Beyond the Standard Model	131
6.1	Introduction	131
6.2	Extensions of the SM Higgs Sector	131
6.2.1	Modifications of the Top-Higgs interaction	132
6.2.2	Charged scalars	132
6.2.3	Neutral scalars	133
6.2.4	Modifications of Higgs self-couplings	134
6.2.5	Exotic Higgs boson decays	134
6.3	Searches for supersymmetry	135
6.3.1	Search for the SUSY Electroweak Sector: prompt signatures	136
6.3.2	Search for the SUSY Electroweak Sector: long-lived particles	136
6.3.3	R-parity violating signatures	137
6.4	Feebly Interacting Particles	138

6.4.1	Searches for heavy neutrinos	139
6.4.2	Fermion triplets in type III seesaw	140
6.4.3	Dark photons	140
6.4.4	Axion-like particles	141
6.5	Anomalous Couplings	142
6.5.1	Triple Gauge couplings	142
6.5.2	Anomalous top-gauge-couplings	142
6.6	Theories with heavy resonances	144
6.6.1	Leptoquarks	144
6.6.2	Vector-like quarks	145
6.6.3	Excited fermions (ν^*, e^*, u^*)	145
6.6.4	Color octet leptons	146
6.7	Summary and conclusion	146
7	The Influence of the LHeC on Physics at HL-LHC	148
7.1	Precision Electroweak Measurements at the LHC	148
7.2	Higgs Physics	148
7.2.1	Resolving QCD Uncertainties in pp Higgs Physics using LHeC	148
7.2.2	Combined ep and pp Higgs Coupling Determinations	148
7.3	High Mass Searches at the LHC	148
7.4	Heavy Ion Physics with eA Input	148
8	The Electron Energy Recovery Linac	153
8.1	Introduction – Design Goals	153
8.2	The ERL Configuration of the LHeC	154
8.2.1	Baseline Design – Lattice Architecture	155
8.2.2	30 GeV ERL Options	162
8.2.3	Component Summary	163
8.3	Electron-Ion Scattering	164
8.4	Beam-Beam Interactions	165
8.4.1	Effect on the electron beam	165
8.4.2	Effect on the proton beam	165
8.5	Arc Magnets	165
8.6	LINAC and SRF	165
8.6.1	Choice of Frequency	166
8.6.2	Cavity Prototype	167
8.6.3	Dressed Cavity Design	169
8.6.4	Cavity-CryoModule	169
8.6.5	Sources	169
8.6.6	Injector	175
8.6.7	Compensation of Synchrotron Radiation Losses	175
8.6.8	LINAC Configuration and Infrastructure	177
8.7	Interaction Region	177
8.7.1	Layout	177
8.7.2	Proton Optics	179
8.7.3	Electron Optics	187
8.7.4	Interaction Region Magnet Design	195
8.8	Civil Engineering	198
8.8.1	Placement and Geology	198
8.8.2	Underground infrastructure	201

8.8.3	Construction Methods	202
8.8.4	Cost estimates	203
9	Technology of ERL and PERLE	204
9.1	Energy Recovery Linac Technology - Status and Prospects	204
9.1.1	ERL Applications	204
9.1.2	Challenges	204
9.1.3	ERL Landscape	207
9.2	PERLE	208
10	Experimentation at the LHeC	209
10.1	Introduction	209
10.2	Overview of Main Detector Elements	211
10.3	Inner Tracking	213
10.4	Calorimetry	218
10.5	Forward and Backward Detectors	219
10.5.1	Zero-Degree (Neutron) Calorimeter	220
10.5.2	Detector Design for a Low Energy FCCeh	222
10.6	Detector Installation and Infrastructure	223
11	Conclusions	227
A	Statement of the International Advisory Committee	228

Chapter 1

Introduction

1.1 The Context

1.1.1 Particle Physics - an unfinished Area of Fundamental Science

Despite the striking success of the Standard Model, it has been recognised to have major deficiencies. These may be summarised in various ways. Some major questions concern the:

- **Higgs boson** Is the electroweak scale stabilised by new particles, interactions, symmetries? Is the Higgs boson discovered in 2012 the SM Higgs boson, what is its potential? Do more Higgs bosons exist as are predicted for example in SuperSymmetry?
- **Elementary Particles** The SM has 61 discovered particles (12 leptons, 36 quarks, 12 mediators, 1 H boson). Are these too many or too few? Do right handed neutrinos exist? Why are there 3 families? What makes leptons and quarks different? Do leptoquarks exist, is there further substructure?
- **Strong Interactions** What is the meaning of the ADS/CFT relation and of SUSY in strong interactions? Do axions, odderons, instantons exist? How is confinement explained and how do partons hadronise. How can the Quark Gluon Plasma state be described in Quantum Chromodynamics. What is the true parton dynamics and structure of the proton and nuclei at different levels of resolution?
- **GUT** Is there a genuine, grand unification of the interactions at high scales, would this include gravitation? What is the real value of the strong coupling constant, is lattice correct?
- **Neutrinos** Do Majorana neutrinos exist, is there CP violation in the neutrino sector, is the proton stable?

These (and others) are known and persistent questions of particle physics. They are intimately related and any future strategic programme should not be confined to only one or a few of these. The field is far from being understood, despite the phenomenological success of the $SU_L(2) \times U(1) \times SU_c(3)$ gauge field theory termed the Standard Model. Attempts to declare its end [9], despite their perhaps stimulating irritation, may possibly be compared with Kelvin's prediction about the future which comprised precision only as all principal questions had already been solved, back in around 1900. The question is not why to end particle physics but how to proceed. The answer is not hidden in philosophy but requires new, better, affordable experiments.

Indeed the situation is special as expressed by Guido Altarelli a few years ago: *It is now less unconceivable that no new physics will show up at the LHC... We expected complexity and instead we have found a maximum of simplicity.. The possibility that the Standard model holds well beyond the electroweak scale must now be seriously considered [10]*.. This is reminiscent of the time before 1969, prior to anything like a Standard Model, when gauge theory was just for theorists, while a series of new accelerators, such as the 2 mile electron linac at Stanford or the SPS at CERN were planned which caused a complete change of the paradigm of particle physics.

Major challenges for particle physics also comprise basic puzzles on the Universe, especially on the nature of Dark Matter. Ingenuitive theoretical hypotheses, such as on the existence of extra dimensions, on SUSY, of un-particles or the embedding in higher gauge groups, like E8, are a strong motivation to develop high energy physics rigorously further. In this endeavour a substantial increase of precision, the conservation of diversity and a broadening of kinematic coverage is a necessity, which may turn out to be of fundamental importance. The strategic question in this context, therefore, is not just which new collider should be built next, as one often hears, but how we may challenge the current and incomplete knowledge best. A realistic step to progress requires to build a new e^+e^- collider, preferentially in Asia, and to complement the LHC in the thirties with an electron ERL to synchronously operate pp with ep at the LHC, the topic of this paper.

One may call these machines first technology generation colliders as their technology has been proven to principally work [11]. Beyond these times there is a long-term future reaching to the year 2050 and much beyond, of a second, further generation of hadron, lepton and electron-hadron colliders, which is not considered in the present paper ¹. For CERN a joint design study has recently been published of a future circular collider (FCC) accelerator complex [12–14], which would provide a corresponding base. A similar prospect is being discussed in China [15, 16].

A new collider for CERN at the level of O(10) GSF cost should have the potential to change the paradigm of particle physics with direct, high energy discoveries in the about 10 TeV mass range. This may only be achieved with the FCC-hh including an eh experiment. The FCC-hh accesses physics to several hundred TeV, assisted by a qualitatively new level of QCD/DIS input. It is the only collider to measure the Higgs potential as its major goal and thus may not fail. It reaches rare H decays, high scales and, when combined with ep , it measures the SM Higgs couplings to below percent precision. There is a huge, fundamental program on electroweak and strong interactions, flavour and heavy ions. It is CERN's unique opportunity to build on the ongoing LHC program, for many decades ahead. The FCC-hh requires high field dipoles. A strongly supported magnet R+D program shall find an affordable, high field solution, to be selected in the early thirties, and not this time. The size of the FCC-hh, in any case, requires this to be established as a global enterprise. The LHeC can be understood as a very important step towards this major new facility, both in terms of its physics and technology.

1.1.2 Deep Inelastic Scattering and HERA

The field of deep inelastic lepton-hadron scattering (DIS) [17] was born with the discovery [18, 19] of partons [20, 21] about 50 years ago. It readily contributed fundamental insight, for example on the development of QCD with the confirmation of fractional quark charges and of asymptotic freedom or with the spectacular finding that the right handed weak isospin charge of the electron

¹There are a few exceptions when studies are presented not only for the LHeC but also the ep version of the Future Circular Collider, the FCC-eh, which uses, seen from today, the same ERL technology and possibly hardware as is currently under development for the LHeC.

was zero [22] which established the Glashow-Weinberg-Salam “model of leptons” [23] as the base of the united electroweak theory. The quest to reach higher energies in accelerator based particle physics led to generations of colliders, with HERA [24] as the so far only electron-proton collider.

HERA collided electrons (and positrons) of about 27.6 GeV energy, E_e , off protons of 920 GeV energy, E_p , achieving a centre of mass energy of $\sqrt{s} = 2\sqrt{E_e E_p}$ of about 320 GeV. It therefore extended the kinematic range covered by fixed target experiments by two orders of magnitude in Bjorken x and in four-momentum transfers squared, Q^2 , with its limit $Q_{max}^2 = s$. HERA had a unique collider physics programme and success [25]. It was built in less than a decade and it operated for 16 years. Together with the Tevatron and LEP, HERA was pivotal to the development of the Standard Model. It established QCD as the correct description of proton substructure and parton dynamics down to 10^{-19} m. It demonstrated electroweak theory to hold in the newly accessed range, especially with the measurement of neutral and charged current ep scattering cross sections beyond $Q^2 \sim M_{W,Z}^2$ and with the proof of electroweak interference at high scales through the measurement of the interference structure functions $F_2^{\gamma Z}$ and $x F_3^{\gamma Z}$. The HERA collider has been the basis of the physics of parton distributions, not only in providing the genuine base to measure longitudinal gluon, valence, light and heavy sea quark momentum distributions, but as well in supporting the foundation of the theory of unintegrated, diffractive, photon, neutron PDFs through a series of corresponding measurements. It discovered the rise of the parton distributions towards small momentum fractions x supporting early QCD expectations on the asymptotic behaviour of the structure functions [26]. Like the $p\bar{p}$ and e^+e^- colliders exploring the Fermi scale of a few hundred GeV energy, determined by the vacuum expectation value of the Higgs field, $v = 1/\sqrt{\sqrt{2}G_F} = 2M_W/g \simeq 246$ GeV, HERA showed that there was no SUSY or other exotic particle with reasonable couplings existing at Fermi energies.

HERA established electron-proton scattering as an integral part of modern high energy particle physics. It demonstrated the richness of DIS physics, and the feasibility of constructing and operating energy frontier ep colliders. What did we learn to take into a next higher energy ep collider design? Perhaps there were three lessons about

- *the need for higher energy*, for three reasons i) to make charged currents a real, precision part of ep physics, for instance for the complete unfolding of the flavour composition of the sea and valence quarks, ii) to produce heavier mass particles (Higgs, top, exotics) with favourable cross sections and iii) in order to discover or disprove the existence of gluon saturation for which one needs to measure at lower $x \propto Q^2/s$ than HERA could;
- *the need for much higher luminosity*: the first almost ten years of HERA provided just a hundred pb^{-1} . As a consequence, HERA could not accurately access the high x region, and it was inefficient and short of statistics in resolving puzzling event fluctuations;
- *the complexity of the interaction region* when a bent electron beam caused synchrotron radiation while the opposite proton beam generated quite some halo background through beam-gas and beam-wall proton-ion interactions.

Based on these and further lessons, the LHeC design has been pursued recognising that the LHC is the only base to realise a TeV energy scale electron-hadron collider in the accessible future. It offers high energetic, intense hadron beams, a long time perspective and a unique infrastructure and expertise, i.e. everything required for an energy frontier DIS physics and innovative accelerator programme.

1.2 The Paper

1.2.1 The LHeC Physics Programme

This paper presents a design concept of the LHeC, using a 50 GeV energy electron beam to be scattered off the LHC hadron beams (proton and ion) in concurrent operation. Its main characteristics are presented in **Chapter 3**. The instantaneous luminosity is designed to exceed that of HERA, which achieved a few times $10^{31} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, by a factor of several hundreds. The kinematic range nominally is extended by a factor of about 15, but in fact by a larger amount because of the hugely increased luminosity which is required to explore the maximum Q^2 and large $x \leq 1$ regions, and was a major deficiency of HERA. The coverage of the Q^2 , x plane by previous and future DIS experiments is illustrated in Fig. 1.1.

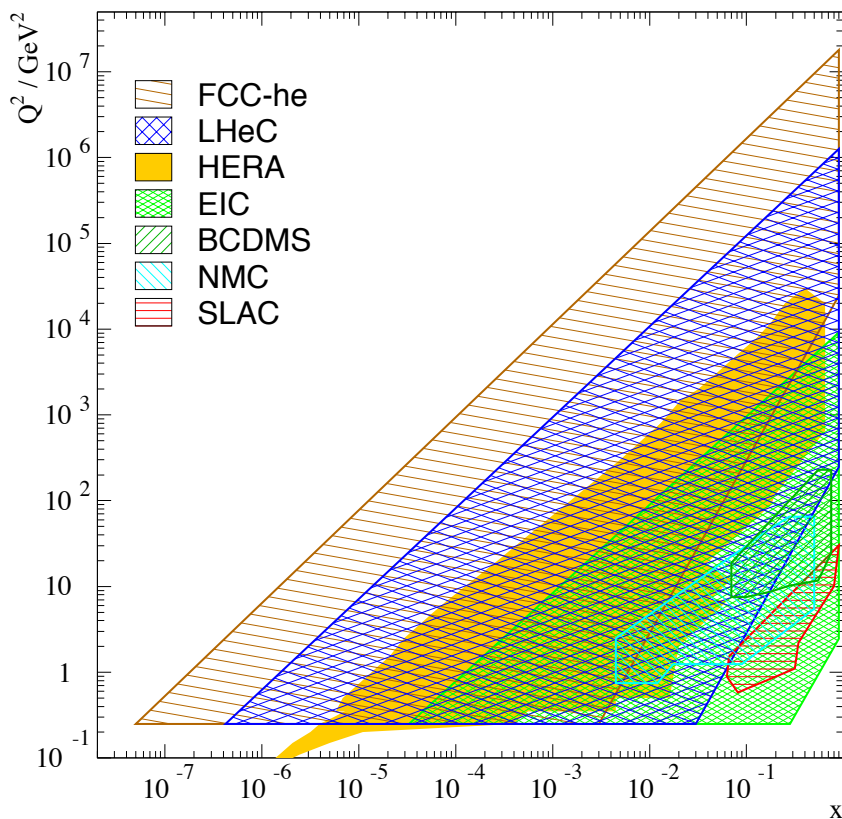


Figure 1.1: Coverage of the kinematic plane in DIS by some initial fixed target experiments with electrons (SLAC) and muons (NMC,BCDMS), by the future electron ion collider (EIC,green), HERA (yellow), the LHeC (blue) and the FCC-eh (brown). The low Q^2 region for the colliders is here limited to about 0.2 GeV^2 , which is covered by the central detectors, roughly and perhaps using low electron beam data. Electron taggers may extend this to even lower Q^2 . The high Q^2 limit is given by the line of inelasticity $y = 1$. Approximate limitations of acceptance at medium x , low Q^2 are drawn using polar angle limits of $\eta = -\ln \tan \theta/2$ of 4, 5, 6 for the EIC, LHeC, and FCC-eh, resp. Since these lines are given by $x = \exp \eta \cdot \sqrt{Q^2}/2E_p$ it is clear that largest x values at low Q^2 are covered by the EIC (green area bottom, right).

The LHeC would provide a major extension of the kinematics as is adequate for a physics programme of the next DIS generation. For the LHC, the ep/A detector would be the fifth

major experiment. Centered around different kinematic regions, a number of major themes would be developed as are discussed in quite some detail in this paper:

- Based on the unique hadron beams of the LHC and employing a point-like probe, the LHeC would represent the world’s cleanest, high resolution microscope for exploring the substructure of and dynamics inside matter, which may be termed the Hubble telescope for the smallest dimensions. It would clarify the dynamics of parton interactions at small x as is necessary for any future hadron collider, including the HL-LHC. The LHeC would challenge the SM to utmost precision in electroweak interactions, diffractive and top physics (**Chapter 4**):
- The LHeC extends the kinematic range in lepton-nucleus scattering by nearly four orders of magnitude. It so will transform nuclear particle physics completely, by establishing a QCD base for Quark Gluon Plasma (QGP) phenomena and resolving the hitherto hidden parton dynamics and substructure of nuclei (**Chapter 5**);
- The clean DIS final state in neutral and charged current scattering enables a high precision Higgs physics programme with the LHeC. This delivers unique insight especially into the $H - WW$ and $H - bb/cc$ couplings (**Chapter 6**);
- As a new, unique, luminous TeV scale collider, the LHeC has an outstanding opportunity to discover new physics, such as in the exotic Higgs, dark matter, heavy neutrino and QCD areas, which is presented in **Chapter 7**;
- With concurrent ep and pp operation, the LHeC would transform the LHC into a 3-beam, twin-collider of greatly improved potential (**Chapter 8**). Through ultra-precise strong and electroweak interaction measurements, the ep results would make the HL LHC complex a much more powerful search and measurement laboratory than current expectations based on pp only could possibly entail. The joint pp/ep LHC facility can become a Higgs factory of unprecedented impact as it challenges and complements what e^+e^- promises.

The development of particle physics including and leading beyond DIS, the future of CERN, the exploitation of the unprecedented LHC investments, the culture of accelerator art, all make the LHeC a project of singular interest with the advantage of being realistic in terms of technology, time and budget constraints.

1.2.2 The Accelerator

The LHeC should provide an intense, high energy electron beam to collide with the LHC. The intensity is gauged through the integrated luminosity goal of $\mathcal{O}(1) \text{ ab}^{-1}$. The electron beam energy is chosen to achieve a TeV energy collision and enable competitive searches and Higgs boson measurements. A cost-physics-energy evaluation is presented here which points to choosing $E_e \geq 50 \text{ GeV}$ as the default value. The wall plug power of the default design [1] had been constrained to 100 MW. In that configuration two super-conducting linacs, opposite to each other, accelerate the passing electrons by 8.3 GeV to 10 GeV each. This leads to a final electron beam of 50 – 60 GeV in a 3-turn racetrack configuration. For measuring at very low Q^2 and/or determining F_L , see below, the electron beam energy may be reduced to a minimum of perhaps 20 GeV. For maximising the acceptance at large Bjorken x , the proton beam energy, E_p , may be reduced to 1 TeV about. If the ERL may be combined in the further future with the double energy HE LHC [27], E_p could reach 14 TeV. One therefore considers a DIS scattering complex with an energy range between $\sqrt{s} \simeq 300$ to 1800 GeV. It thus covers an energy range

from HERA to the TeV region, at hugely increased luminosity and much more sophisticated experimental techniques.

The ERL beam configuration is located inside the LHC ring but outside its tunnel, which minimises any interference with the main hadron beam infrastructure. The electron accelerator may thus be built independently, to a considerable extent, of the status of operation of the proton machine.

The chosen energy of 50 GeV leads to a circumference U of the electron racetrack of 5.4 km, smaller than the SPS. This length is a fraction $1/n$ of the LHC circumference, for $n = 5$, as is required for the e and p matching of bunch patterns. It is chosen also in order to limit the energy loss in the last return arc and as a result of a cost optimisation between the fractions of the circumference covered by SRF and by return arcs. That configuration is adopted also as the default for the FCC-he.

For the LHC, the ERL would be tangential to IP2 which, according to the current plans, is taken by the ALICE detector until the first long shutdown following the three year pause of the LHC operation for upgrading the luminosity performance and detectors. This shutdown is termed LS4 and may begin in the early 30ties. For FCC-he the preferred position is IP L for geological reasons mainly and the time of operation fully depending on the progress with FCC-hh, beginning at the earliest in 2050.

The LHeC operation is transparent to the LHC collider experiments owing to the low lepton bunch charge and resulting small beam-beam tune shift experienced by the protons. The LHeC is thus designed to run simultaneously with pp (or AA) collisions with a possible dedicated final operation of a few years.

The paper presents in considerable detail the design of the LHeC (**Chapter 9**), i.e. the optics and lattice, components, magnets, as well as designs of the linac and interaction region besides special topics such as the prospects for electron-ion scattering, positron-proton operation and a novel analysis of beam-beam interaction effects. With the more ambitious luminosity goal, a new lattice for the new default energy of 50 GeV, with progress on the IR design, a novel analysis of the civil engineering work and especially the production and successful test [28] of the first SC cavity, at the newly chosen default frequency of 801.58 MHz, this report considerably extends beyond the initial CDR. Large progress has been made in the development of superconducting, high gradient cavities with quality factors beyond 10^{10} . This will enable the exploitation of ERLs in high-energy physics colliders, with the LHeC as the prime example, while considerations are also brought forward for future e^+e^- colliders [29].

1.2.3 PERLE

The status and challenges of ERLs are summarised in **Chapter 10**. This also presents the design, status and prospects for the ERL development facility PERLE. The major parameters of PERLE have been taken from the LHeC, such as the 3-turn configuration, source, frequency and cavity-cryomodule technology, in order to make PERLE a suitable facility for the development of LHeC ERL technology and the accumulation of operating experience prior to and later in parallel with the LHeC. An international collaboration has been invited to build PERLE at Orsay. With the design goals of 500 MeV electron energy obtained in three passes through two cryo-modules and of 20 mA, corresponding to 500 nC charge at 40 MHz bunch frequency, PERLE is set to become the first ERL facility to operate at 10 MW power. Following its CDR [4] and a paper submitted to the European strategy [8] work is directed to build a first dressed cavity and

to release a TDR by 2021. Besides its interest in accelerator and ERL technology, PERLE is also of importance for pursuing a low energy physics programme, see [4], and for several possible industrial applications. It also serves as a local hub for the education of accelerator physicists at a place, previously called Linear Accelerator Laboratory (LAL), which has long been at the forefront of accelerator design and operation.

The realisation of the ERL for the LHeC at CERN represents a unique opportunity not only for physics and technology but as well for a next and the current generation of accelerator physicists, engineers and technicians to realise an ambitious collider project while the plans for very expensive next machines may take shape. Similarly this holds for a new generation of detector experts, as the design of the upgrade of the GPDs at the LHC is reaching completion and the question increasingly posed about opportunities for new collider detector construction to not lose the expertise nor the infrastructure for building trackers, calorimeters and alike. The LHeC, offers the opportunity for a novel 4π particle physics detector design, built and operation. As a linac-ring accelerator, it may serve one detector of a size smaller than CMS and larger than H1.

1.2.4 The Detector

Chapter 11 on the detector relies to a large extent on the very detailed write-up on the kinematics, design considerations, and realisation of a detector for the LHeC as was presented in the CDR [1]. In the previous report one finds detailed studies not only on the central detector and its magnets, a central solenoid for momentum measurements and an extended dipole for ensuring head-on ep collisions, but as well on the forward (p and n) and backward (e and γ) tagging devices. The work on the detector as presented here was focussed on an optimisation of the performance and on the scaling of the design towards higher proton beam energies. It presents a new, consistent design and summaries of the essential characteristics in support of many physics analyses this paper entails.

Most demanding performance requirements arise from the ep Higgs measurement programme, especially the large acceptance and high precision desirable for heavy flavour tagging and the wish to resolve the hadronic final states completely. This has been influenced by the acceptance ambitions and the technology progress of the HL LHC detector upgrades, a key example being the high granularity and low material prospects of HV-CMOS Silicon technology, which is here sketched also.

Therefore we have now completed two studies of design: previously, of a rather conventional detector with limited cost and here of a more ambitious device. Both of these, perhaps, extremes appear realisable. This regards also the installation. The paper presents a brief description of the installation of the LHeC detector at IP2 with the result that it may proceed within two years, including the dismantling of the then residing detector. This calls for modularity and pre-mounting of detector elements on the surface, as was done for CMS too. It will be for the LHeC detector Collaboration, to be established with and for the approval of the project, to design the detector according to its understanding and technical capabilities.

Subsequently follow the chapters as mentioned above: Chapter 3 summarises the LHeC characteristics. Chapter 4 presents key topics on how the SM will be developed and tested through high precision measurements in the PDF, strong, electroweak and top physics sector, with a section on novel QCD phenomena to be found. Ample space is given to the question of parton

saturation at small x . Chapter 5 presents the unique potential of the LHeC to advance nuclear particle physics with its far reaching, luminous electron-ion scattering programme. Chapter 6 presents a detailed analysis of the opportunity for precision SM Higgs boson physics with CC and NC ep scattering. Chapter 7 is a description of the striking variety of opportunities to discover physics beyond the Standard Model with the LHeC, including non-SM Higgs physics, right-handed neutrinos, physics of the dark sector or heavy resonances. Chapter 8 describes the interplay of ep and pp physics, i.e. the necessity to have the LHeC in order to fully exploit the search and measurement potential of the LHC facility. Chapter 9 presents the update of the CDR on the ERL configuration with many novel results as on the lattice and interaction region design, besides new specifications of components. It also presents the very encouraging results of the first LHeC 802 MHz cavity. Chapter 10 is devoted, first, to the status and challenges of energy recovery based accelerators and, second, to the description of the PERLE facility, between its CDR and a forthcoming TDR. Chapter 11 describes the update of the detector study towards an optimum configuration in terms of acceptance and performance. Chapter 12 presents a summary of the paper including a time line for realising the LHeC to operate with the LHC.

Chapter 2

LHeC Configuration and Parameters

2.1 Introduction

The Conceptual Design Report (CDR) of the LHeC was published in 2012 [1]. The CDR default configuration uses a 60 GeV energy electron beam derived from a racetrack, three-turn, intense energy recovery linac (ERL) achieving a cms energy of $\sqrt{s} = 1.3 \text{ TeV}$, where $s = 4E_p E_e$ is determined by the electron and proton beam energies, E_e and E_p . In 2012, the Higgs boson, H , was discovered which has become a central topic of current and future high energy physics. The Higgs production cross section in charged current (CC) deep inelastic scattering (DIS) at the LHeC is roughly 100 fb. The Large Hadron Collider has so far not led to the discovery of any exotic phenomenon. This forces searches to be pursued, in pp but as well in ep , with highest achievable precision in order to access a maximum range of phase space and possibly rare channels. The DIS cross section at large x roughly behaves like $(1-x)^3/Q^4$ demanding very high luminosities for exploiting the unknown regions of Bjorken x near to 1 and very high Q^2 , the negative four-momentum transfer squared between the electron and the proton. For the current update of the design of the LHeC this has set a luminosity goal about an order of magnitude higher than the $10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ which had been adopted for the CDR. There arises the potential, as described subsequently in this paper, to transform the LHC into a high precision electroweak, Higgs and top quark physics facility.

The ep Higgs production cross section rises approximately with E_e . New physics may be related to the heaviest known elementary particle, the top quark, the ep production cross section of which rises stronger than linearly with E_e in the LHeC kinematic range as that is not very far from the $t\bar{t}$ threshold. Searches for heavy neutrinos, SUSY particles etc. are the more promising the higher the energy is. The region of deep inelastic scattering and pQCD requires that Q^2 be larger than $M_p^2 \simeq 1 \text{ GeV}^2$. Access with DIS to very low Bjorken x requires high energies because of $x = Q^2/s$, for inelasticity $y = 1$. In DIS, one needs $Q^2 > M_p^2 \simeq 1 \text{ GeV}^2$. Physics therefore requires a maximally large energy. However, cost and effort set realistic limits such that twice the HERA electron beam energy, of about 27 GeV, appeared as a reasonable and affordable target value.

In the CDR [1] the default electron energy was chosen to be 60 GeV. This can be achieved with an ERL circumference of 1/3 of that of the LHC. Recently, the cost was estimated in quite some detail [30], comparing also with other accelerator projects. Aiming at a cost optimization and providing an option for a staged installation, the cost estimate lead to defining a new default configuration of $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}$ with the option of starting in an initial phase with a beam energy

of $E_e = 30$ GeV and a circumference of 5.4 km which is 1/5 of the LHC length. Lowering E_e is also advantageous for mastering the synchrotron radiation challenges in the interaction region. Naturally, the decision on E_e is not taken now. This paper comprises studies with different energy configurations, mainly $E_e = 50$ and 60 GeV, which are close in their cms energy values of 1.2 and 1.3 TeV, respectively.

Up to beam energies of about 60 GeV, the ERL cost is dominated by the cost for the superconducting RF of the linacs. Up to this energy the ERL cost approximately scales linearly with the beam energy. Above this energy the return arcs represent the main contribution to the cost and to the ERL cost scaling is no longer linear. Given the non-linear dependence of the cost on E_e , for energies larger than about 60 GeV, significantly larger electron beam energy values may only be justified by overriding arguments, such as, for example, the existence of leptoquarks¹. Higher values of \sqrt{s} are also provided with enlarged proton beam energies by the High Energy LHC ($E_p = 13.5$ TeV) [27] and the FCC-hh [14] with E_p between 20 and possibly 75 TeV, depending on the dipole magnet technology.

2.1.1 Cost Estimate, Default Configuration and Staging

In 2018 a detailed cost estimate has been performed [30] following the guidance and practice of CERN accelerator studies. The assumptions were also compared with the DESY XFEL cost. The result was that for the 60 GeV configuration about half of the total cost was due to the two SC linacs. The cost of the arcs decreases stronger than linearly with decreasing energy, about $\propto E^4$ for synchrotron radiation losses and $\propto E^3$ when emittance dilution is required to be preserved [31]. It was therefore considered to set a new default of 50 GeV with a circumference of 1/5 of that of the LHC, see Sect. ??, compared to 1/3 for 60 GeV. Furthermore, an initial phase at 30 GeV was considered, within the 1/5 configuration but with only partially equipped linacs. The HERA electron beam energy was 27 GeV. The main results, taken from [30] are reproduced in Tab. 2.1.

The choice of a default of 50 GeV at 1/5 of the LHC circumference results, as displayed, in a total cost of 1.075 MCHF for the initial 30 GeV configuration and an additional, upgrade cost to 50 GeV of 296 MCHF. If one restricted the LHeC to a non-upgradeable 30 GeV only configuration one would, still in a triple racetrack configuration, come to roughly a 1 km long structure with two linacs of about 500 m length, probably in a single linac tunnel configuration. The cost of this version of the LHeC is roughly 800 MSF, i.e. about half the 60 GeV estimated cost. However, this would essentially reduce the LHeC to a QCD and electroweak machine, still very powerful but accepting substantial losses in its Higgs, top and BSM programme.

Choices on the final energy will be made later. They do not only depend on a budget but also on the future development of particle physics at large. For example, it may turn out that the community for a foreseeable future may not find the O(10) GCHF required to build any of the e^+e^- colliders currently considered. Then the only way to improve on the Higgs measurements beyond HL-LHC substantially is the high energy (50 – 60 GeV), high luminosity ($\int L = 1 \text{ ab}^{-1}$) LHeC. Obviously, physics and cost are intimately related. Based on such considerations, but

¹If these existed with a mass of say $M = 1.5$ TeV this would require, at the LHC with $E_p = 7$ TeV, to choose E_e to be larger than 90 GeV, and to pay for it. Leptoquarks would be produced by ep fusion and appear as resonances, much like the Z boson in e^+e^- and would therefore fix E_e (given certain E_p which at the FCC exceeds 7 TeV). The genuine DIS kinematics, however, is spacelike, the exchanged four-momentum squared $q^2 = -Q^2$ being negative, which implies that the choice of the energies is less constrained than in an e^+e^- collider aiming at the study of the Z or H bosons.

Component	CDR 2012 (60 GeV)	Stage 1 (30 GeV)	Default (50 GeV)
SRF System	805	402	670
SRF R+D and Prototyping	31	31	31
Injector	40	40	40
Arc Magnets and Vacuum	215	103	103
SC IR Magnets	105	105	105
Source and Dump System	5	5	5
Cryogenic Infrastructure	100	41	69
General Infrastructure and Installation	69	58	58
Civil Engineering	386	289	289
Total Cost	1756	1075	1371

Table 2.1: Summary of cost estimates, in MCHF, from [30]. The 60 GeV configuration is built with a 9 km triple racetrack configuration as was considered in the CDR [1]. It is taken as the default configuration for FCC-eh, with an additional CE cost of 40 MCHF due to the larger depth on point L (FCC) as compared to IP2 (LHC). Both the 30 and the 50 GeV assume a 5.4 km configuration, i.e. the 30 GeV is assumed to be a first stage of LHeC upgradeable to 50 GeV ERL. Whenever a choice was to be made on estimates, in [30] the conservative number was chosen.

also taking into account technical constraints as resulting from the amount of synchrotron radiation losses in the interaction region and the arcs, we have chosen 50 GeV in a 1/5 of U(LHC) configuration as the new default. This economises about 400 MCHF as compared to the CDR configuration.

If the LHeC ERL was built, it may later be transferred, with some reconfiguration and upgrades, to the FCC to serve as the FCC-eh. The FCC-eh has its own location, L, for the ERL which requires a new accelerator tunnel. It has been decided to keep the 60 GeV configuration for the FCC, as described in the recently published CDR of the FCC [14]. The LHeC ERL configuration may be used as a top-up injector for the Z and possibly WW phase of the FCC-ee, should the FCC-ee indeed precede the FCC-hh/eh phase.

2.2 Configuration Parameters

A possible transition from the 60 GeV to the 50 GeV configuration of the LHeC has been envisaged already in 2018, as considered in the paper submitted to the European strategy [6]. The machine layout shown in that paper is reproduced in Fig. 2.1. It is a rough sketch illustrating the reduction from a 60 GeV to a 50 GeV configuration, which results not only in a reduction of capital costs, as discussed above, but also of effort.

The ERL configuration has been recently revisited [31] considering its dependence on the electron beam energy. Applying a dimension scaling which preserves the emittance dilution, the results have been obtained as are summarised in Tab. 2.2. The 1/5 configuration is chosen as the new LHeC default while the CDR on the LHeC from 2012 and the recent CDR on FCC-eh have used the 1/3 configuration. The energy and configuration may be decided as physics, cost and effort dictate when a decision is taken eventually.

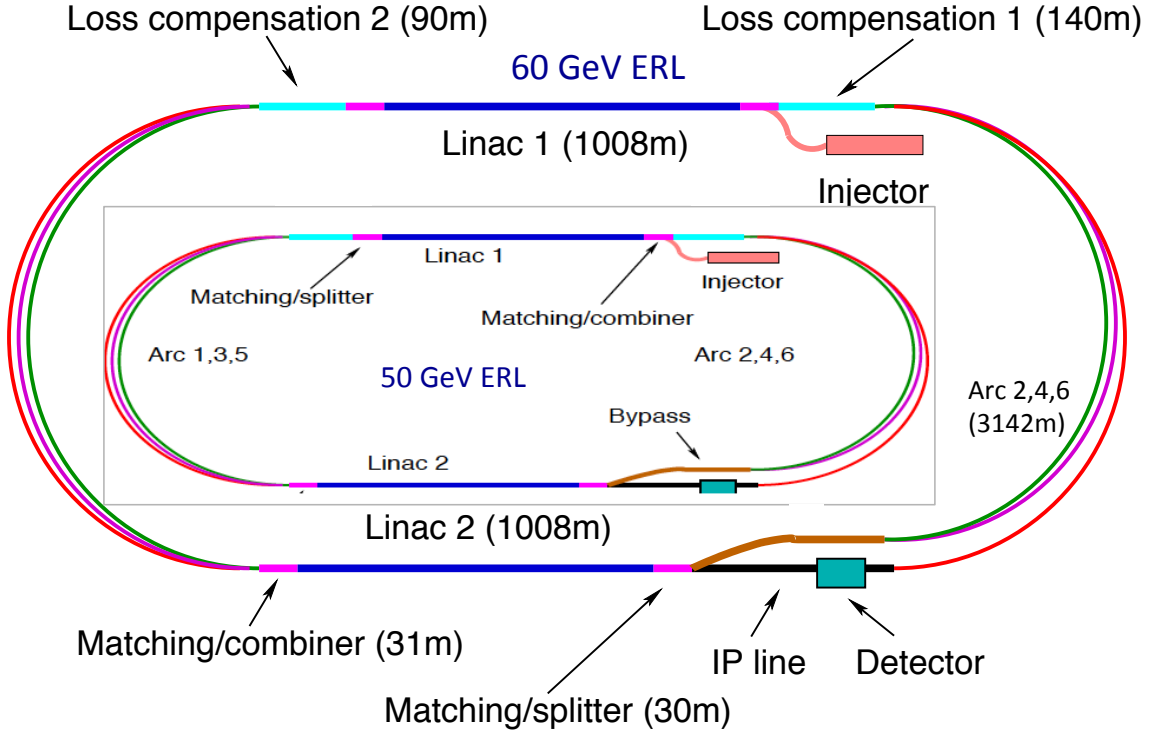


Figure 2.1: Schematic view of the three-turn LHeC configuration with two oppositely positioned electron linacs and three arcs housed in the same tunnel. Two configurations are shown: Outer: Default $E_e = 60$ GeV with linacs of about 1 km length and 1 km arc radius leading to an ERL circumference of about 9 km, or 1/3 of the LHC length. Inner: Sketch for $E_e = 50$ GeV with linacs of about 0.8 km length and 0.55 km arc radius leading to an ERL circumference of 5.4 km, or 1/5 of the LHC length, which is smaller than the size of the SPS. The 1/5 circumference configuration is flexible: it entails the possibility to stage the project as funds of physics dictate by using only partially equipped linacs, and it also permits upgrading to somewhat higher energies if one admits increased synchrotron power losses and operates at higher gradients.

2.3 Luminosity

The luminosity L for the LHeC in its linac-ring configuration is determined as

$$L = \frac{N_e N_p n_p f_{rev} \gamma_p}{4\pi \epsilon_p \beta^*} \cdot \prod_{i=1}^3 H_i, \quad (2.1)$$

where $N_{e(p)}$ is the number of electrons (protons) per bunch, n_p the number of proton bunches in the LHC, f_{rev} the revolution frequency in the LHC [the bunch spacing in a batch is given by Δ , equal to 25 ns at the LHC] and γ_p the relativistic factor E_p/M_p of the proton beam. Further, ϵ_p denotes the normalized proton transverse beam emittance and β^* the proton beta function at the IP, assumed to be equal in x and y . The luminosity is moderated by the hourglass factor, $H_1 = H_{geo} \simeq 0.9$, the pinch or beam-beam correction factor, $H_2 = H_{b-b} \simeq 1.3$, and the filling factor $H_3 = H_{coll} \simeq 0.8$, should an ion clearing gap in the electron beam be required. The product of these factors is taken to be one and the factors are therefore not listed in the subsequent tables.

Parameter	Unit	LHeC option			
		1/3 LHC	1/4 LHC	1/5 LHC	1/6 LHC
Circumference	m	9000	6750	5332	4500
Arc radius	m x 2 π	1058	737	536	427
Linac length	m x 2	1025	909	829	758
Spreader and recombiner length	m x 4	76	76	76	76
Electron energy	GeV	61.1	54.2	49.1	45.2

Table 2.2: Scaling of the electron beam energy, linac and further accelerator element dimensions with the choice of the total circumference in units $1/n$ of the LHC circumference. For comparison, the CERN SPS has a circumference of 6.9 km, only somewhat larger than $1/4$ of that of the LHC.

The electron beam current is given as

$$I_e = eN_e f. \quad (2.2)$$

The current for the LHeC is limited by the charge delivery of the source. In the new default design we have $I_e = 20$ mA which results from a charge of 500 pC for the bunch frequency of 40 MHz. It is one of the tasks of the PERLE facility to investigate the stability of the 3-turn ERL configuration in view of the challenge for each cavity to hold the sixfold current due to the simultaneous acceleration and deceleration of bunches at three different beam energies each.

2.3.1 Electron-Proton Collisions

The design parameters of the luminosity have been recently provided in a note describing the FCC-eh configuration [32], including the LHeC. The following table, Tab.2.3, represents an update comprising in addition the initial 30 GeV configuration and the lower energy FCC-pp version based on the LHC magnets². For the LHeC, as noted above, we assume $E_e = 50$ GeV while for FCC-eh we stick to 60 GeV. Since the source limits the electron current, the peak luminosity may be assumed not to depend on E_e . Studies of the interaction region design, presented in this paper, show that one may be confident in reaching a β^* of 10 cm, while it will be a challenge to reach even smaller values. Similarly, it will be quite a challenge to operate with a current beyond 20 mA. That has nevertheless been considered [33] for a possible dedicated LHeC operation mode, in which, it has been for a few years following the pp operation program. to bring progress in technology such as the cavity quality and source intensity.

The peak luminosity values exceed those at HERA by 2 – 3 orders of magnitude. The operation of HERA in its first, extended running period, 1992-2000, provided an integrated luminosity of about 0.1 fb^{-1} for the collider experiments H1 and ZEUS. This may now be expected to be taken in a day of initial LHeC operation.

2.3.2 Electron-Ion Collisions

The design parameters of the luminosity have recently been also provided [32] for the electron-lead ion scattering. The following table, Tab.2.4, is a slight update of the numbers presented in there also introducing the $E_p = 20$ TeV FCC-hh configuration. A year of eA operation, possibly distributed over some smaller bits of operation thus has the potential to provide an

²The low energy FCC-pp collider, as of today, uses a 6 T LHC magnet in a 100 km tunnel. If within decades ahead high field magnets may become available based on HTS technology, then a 20 TeV proton beam energy

Parameter	Unit	LHeC				FCC-eh	
		CDR	Initial	Default	Dedicated	$E_p=20$ TeV	$E_p=50$ TeV
E_e	GeV	60	30	50	50	60	60
N_p	10^{11}	1.7	2.2	2.2	2.2	1	1
ϵ_p	μm	3.7	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.2	2.2
I_e	mA	6.4	15	20	50	20	20
N_e	10^9	1	2.3	3.0	7.8	3.0	3.0
β^*	cm	10	10	7	7	12	15
Luminosity	$10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$	1	5	9	23	8	15

Table 2.3: Summary of luminosity parameter values for the LHeC and FCC-eh. Left: CDR from 2012; Middle: LHeC in three stages, an initial low energy run, the default 50 GeV, both concurrently with the LHC, and a final, dedicated, stand-alone ep phase ; Right: FCC-eh with a 20 and a 50 TeV proton beam, in synchronous operation.

Parameter	Unit	LHeC	FCC-eh	FCC-eh
			($E_p=20$ TeV)	($E_p=50$ TeV)
Proton beam energy E_p	TeV	7	20	50
Ion beam energy E_{Pb}	PeV	0.574	1.64	4.1
Electron beam energy E_e	GeV	50	50	50
Electron-nucleon COM $\sqrt{s_{eN}}$	TeV	0.8	1.4	2.2
Bunch spacing	ns	50	100	100
No. of bunches		1200	2072	2072
Ions per bunch	10^8	1.8	1.8	1.8
Geometric Emittance $\gamma\epsilon_A$	μm	1.5	0.9	0.9
Electrons per bunch	10^9	6.2	12.5	12.5
Electron current	mA	20	20	20
IP beta function β_A^*	cm	7	10	15
Luminosity	$10^{32} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$	10	18	54

Table 2.4: Baseline parameters of future electron-ion collider configurations based on the electron ERL, in concurrent eA and AA operation mode with the LHC and the two versions of a future hadron collider at CERN. Note that here $\gamma\epsilon_A$ is the geometric emittance.

integrated data set of about 5 (25) fb^{-1} for the LHeC (FCC-eh), resp. This exceeds the HERA ep luminosity values about hundredfold and the fixed target nuclear DIS experiment kinematics by about 3 – 4 orders of magnitude. These energy frontier electron-ion configurations therefore have the potential to establish a much different view on nuclear structure and parton dynamics as the current one. This is discussed in Chapter 5.

2.4 Linac Parameters

The brief summary of the main LHeC characteristics here concludes with a table of the main ERL parameters for the novel default of 50 GeV, Tab. 2.5, which are discussed in detail in Chapter 10.

may also be achievable in the LHC tunnel. To this extent the here considered low energy FCC and an HTS based HE-LHC represent much comparable options in terms of their energy reach.

Parameter	Unit	Value
Frequency	MHz	801.58
Bunch charge	pC	499
Bunch spacing	ns	24.95
Electron current	mA	20
Injector energy	MeV	500
Gradient	MV/m	19.73
Cavity length, active	m	0.918
Cavity length, flange-to-flange	m	1.5
Cavities per cryomodule		4
Length of cryomodule	m	7
Acceleration per cryomodule	MeV	72.45
Total number of cryomodules		112
Acceleration energy per pass	GeV	8.1

Table 2.5: Basic LHeC ERL characteristics for the default configuration using two such linacs located opposite to each other in a racetrack of 5.4 km length. Each linac is passed three times for acceleration and three times for deceleration.

2.5 Operation Schedule

The LHeC parameters are determined to be compatible with a parasitic operation with the nominal HL-LHC proton-proton operation. This implies limiting the electron bunch current to sufficiently small values so that the proton beam-beam parameter remains small enough to be negligible for the proton beam dynamics.

Assuming a ten year construction period for the LHeC after approval of the project and a required installation window of two years for the LHeC detector, the earliest realistic operation period for the LHeC coincides with the LHC Run 5 period in 2032 and with a detector installation during LS4 currently scheduled during 2030 and 2031. The baseline HL-LHC operation mode assumes 160 days of proton operation, 20 days of ion operation and 20 days of machine development time amounting to a total of 200 operation days per year. The HL-LHC project assumes an overall machine efficiency of 54% (e.g. fraction of scheduled operation time spent in physics production) and we assume that the ERL does not contribute to significant additional downtime for the operation. Assuming an initial 15 mA of electron beam current, a β^* of 10 cm and HL-LHC proton beam parameters, the LHeC reaches a peak luminosity of $0.5 \cdot 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$. Assuming further a proton beam lifetime of 16.7 hours, a proton fill length of 11.7 hours and an average proton beam turnaround time of 4 hours the LHeC can reach in this configuration an annual integrated luminosity of 20 fb^{-1} .

For the evaluation of the physics potential it is important to note, that the Run 5 initial ep operation period may accumulate about 50 fb^{-1} of integrated luminosity. This is the hundredfold value which H1 (or ZEUS) took over a HERA lifetime of 15 years. As one may expect, for details see Chapter 4, such a huge DIS luminosity is ample for pursuing basically the complete QCD programme. In particular, the LHeC would deliver on time for the HL LHC precision analyses the external, precise PDFs and with just a fraction of the 50 fb^{-1} the secrets of low x parton dynamics would unfold. Higher ep luminosity is necessary for ultimate precision and as well for the top, BSM and the Higgs programme of the LHeC to be of competitive value.

For the Run 6 period of the HL-LHC, the last of the HL-LHC operation periods, we assume that the number of machine development sessions for the LHC can be suppressed, providing

an increase in the operation time for physics production from 160 days to 180 days per year. Furthermore, we assume that the electron beam parameters can be slightly further pushed. Assuming a β^* reduced to 7 cm, an electron beam current of up to 25 mA and still nominal HL-LHC proton beam parameters, the LHeC reaches a peak performance of $1.2 \cdot 10^{34} \text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ and an annual integrated luminosity of 50fb^{-1} . This would add up to an integrated luminosity of a few hundred fb^{-1} , a strong base for top, BSM and Higgs physics at the LHeC.

Beyond the HL-LHC exploitation period, the electron beam parameters could be further pushed in dedicated ep operation, when the requirement of a parasitic operation to the HL-LHC proton-proton operation may no longer be imposed. The proton beam lifetime without proton-proton collisions would be significantly larger than in the HL-LHC configuration. In the following we assume a proton beam lifetime of 100 hours and a proton beam efficiency of 60 % without proton-proton beam collisions. The electron beam current in this configuration would only be limited by the electron beam dynamics and the SRF beam current limit. Assuming that electron beam currents of up to 50 mA the LHeC would reach a peak luminosity of $2.4 \cdot 10^{34} \text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ and an annual integrated luminosity of up to 180fb^{-1} . Table 2.6 summarizes the LHeC configurations over these three periods of operation.

Parameter	Unit	Run 5 Period	Run 6 Period	Dedicated
Brightness $N_p/(\gamma\epsilon_p)$	10^{17}m^{-1}	2.2/2.5	2.2/2.5	2.2/2.5
Electron beam current	mA	15	25	50?
Proton β^*	m	0.1	0.7	0.7
Peak luminosity	$10^{34} \text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$	0.5	1.2	2.4
Proton beam lifetime	h	16.7	16.7	100
Fill duration	h	11.7	11.7	21
Turnaround time	h	4	4	3
Overall efficiency	%	54	54	60
Physics time / year	days	160	180	185
Annual integrated lumi.	fb^{-1}	20	50	180

Table 2.6: The LHeC performance levels during different operation modes.

Depending on the years available for a dedicated final operation (or through an extension of the pp LHC run, currently not planned but interesting for collecting 4 instead of 3ab^{-1} to, for example, observe di-Higgs production at the LHC), a total luminosity of 1ab^{-1} could be available for the LHeC. This would double the precision of Higgs couplings measured in ep as compared to the default HL-LHC run period with ep added as described. It would also significantly enlarge the potential to observe or/and quantify rare and new physics phenomena. Obviously such considerations are subject to the grand developments at CERN. A period with most interesting physics and on-site operation activity could be particularly welcome for narrowing a possible large time gap between the LHC and its grand successor, the FCC-hh. One may, however, be interested in ending LHC on time. It thus is important for the LHeC project to recognise its particular value as an asset of the HL-LHC, and on its own, with even less than the ultimate luminosity, albeit values which had been dreamt of at HERA.

Chapter 3

Precision Standard Model Physics with LHeC

3.1 Resolving the Parton Substructure of the Proton

3.1.1 Open Questions on the QCD of PDFs

The LHeC provides the opportunity to push our Standard Model (SM) measurements to unprecedented precision. This also affords a chance to search for deviations from the SM predictions which may signal the presence of an undiscovered “new physics” channel.

In the near future, such searches will be driven by precision measurements which are sensitive to admixtures of BSM signals which distort the “vanilla” SM measurements. While direct production of new physics is limited by the energy (\sqrt{s}) of the machine, indirect precision measurements can probe scales many times larger than the CMS energy; this is an area where the LHeC excels. While the LHeC can directly probe the TeV scale, it offers the most promising avenue to search for new physics signals at multi-TeV scales, and gather clues as how to design the next-generation of accelerator experiments such as the FCC program.

An essential step in advancing this precision program is improving our knowledge of the Parton Distribution Functions (PDFs). For many precision measurements and “standard candle” observables, the element that limits our sensitivity to the highest energy scales is the PDF uncertainty.

With the increased energy and luminosity of the LHeC, we will also be capable of exploring the extreme regions of the kinematic plane to investigate new phenomena. For example, the rise of F_2 at low- x may suggest the onset of parton saturation and point to new contributions which are not included in the DGLAP framework of leading-twist linear evolution equations. The LHeC can offer us a glimpse of the high density regime of QCD where we can study collective effects and test our theoretical resummation tools.

The measurement of heavy quark production at the LHeC will be especially important to improve our knowledge of the gluon, strange, charm and bottom PDFs. The challenge is that the computation of heavy quark production in the framework of perturbative QCD is complicated due to the presence of several large scales like the heavy quark masses, the transverse momentum p_T of the produced quarks, and the momentum transfer Q^2 . Here, the large kinematic reach of the LHeC will be extremely advantageous as the span from the low energy “decoupling” region

into the high energy “asymptotic” region will allow improved understanding of the treatment of mass in the perturbative QCD calculations.

In this section, we will explore specific processes by which the LHeC can significantly improve our determination of PDFs.

3.1.2 PDFs and the LHC

Prospects with the HL-LHC

The particle physics community is busy preparing for the extensive precision and discovery physics programme that will come from Run III of the LHC, and most significantly, for the major upgrade beginning in the mid-2020s, the High-Luminosity LHC (HL-LHC). Here, protons will be collided with an instantaneous luminosity a factor of five greater than the LHC and will accumulate up to ten times more data, resulting in an integrated luminosity of around $\mathcal{L} = 3 \text{ ab}^{-1}$ for both the ATLAS and CMS detectors, and 300 fb^{-1} for LHCb. In this context, a precise determination of PDFs is an essential ingredient for the success of the HL-LHC and conversely, the HL-LHC itself offers a significant opportunity to improve our understanding of proton structure.

In [34] the HL-LHC potential to constrain PDFs was analyzed in detail, focussing on SM processes that are expected to have the most impact at higher x . In particular, projections for the production of top quark pairs, inclusive jets, forward $W +$ charm quark and direct photons, as well as forward and high-mass Drell-Yan and the Z boson p_{\perp} distribution were included. It was found that PDF uncertainties on LHC processes can be reduced by a factor between two and five, depending on the specific flavour combination and on the assumptions about the experimental systematic uncertainties.

It of course important to compare these constraints with those expected to come from the LHeC itself, as well as those coming from a combined PDF fit to the HL-LHC and LHeC datasets; this was studied in [35]. The basic procedure consists in generating HL-LHC and LHeC pseudodata with the PDF4LHC15 set [36] and then applying Hessian PDF profiling [37,38], in other words a simplified version of a full refit, to this baseline to assess the expected impact of the data. While the HL-LHC datasets are described above, for the LHeC pseudodata correspond to the most recent publicly available official LHeC projections, see Section 3.1.4, for electron and positron neutral-current (NC) and charged-current (CC) scattering. As well as inclusive data at different beam energies ($E_p = 1.7 \text{ TeV}$), charm and bottom heavy quark NC and charm production in e^-p CC scattering are included.

In Fig. 3.1 we show the expected impact of the HL-LHC, LHeC and their combination on the PDF uncertainties of the gluon, down quark, anti-up quark and strangeness distributions. We can see that at low x the LHeC data place in general by far the strongest constraint, in particular for the gluon, as expected from its greatly extended coverage at small x . At intermediate x the impact of the HL-LHC and LHeC are more comparable in size, but nonetheless the LHeC is generally expected to have a larger impact. At higher x the constraints are again comparable in size, with the HL-LHC resulting in a somewhat larger reduction in the gluon and strangeness uncertainty, while the LHeC has a somewhat larger impact for the down and anti-up quark distributions. Thus, the combination of both HL-LHC and LHeC pseudo-data nicely illustrate a clear and significant reduction in PDF uncertainties over a very wide range of x , improving upon the constraints from the individual datasets in a non-negligible way.

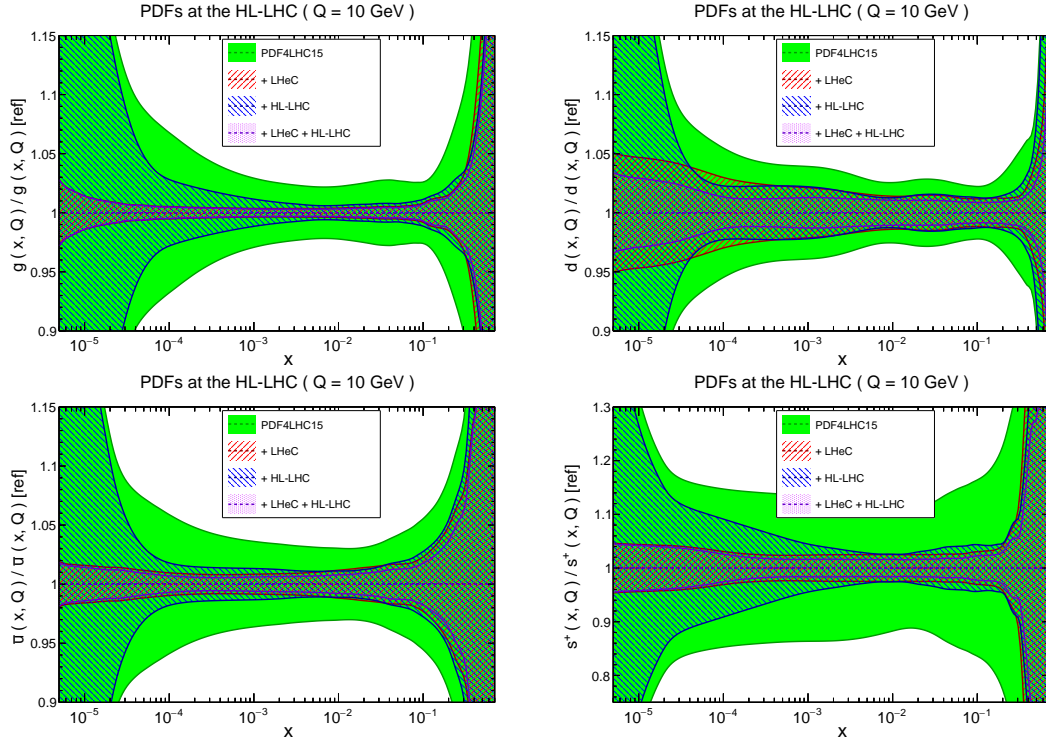


Figure 3.1: Impact of LHeC on the $1\text{-}\sigma$ relative PDF uncertainties of the gluon, down quark, anti-up quark and strangeness distributions, with respect to the PDF4LHC15 baseline set. Results for the LHeC, HL-LHC and to their combination are shown.

In Fig. 3.2 we show the impact on the gluon-gluon, quark-gluon, quark-antiquark and quark-quark partonic luminosities. Some clear trends are evident from this comparison, consistent with the results from the individual PDFs. We can in particular observe that at low mass the LHeC places the dominant constraint, while at intermediate masses the LHeC and HL-LHC constraints are comparable in size, and at high mass the stronger constraint on the gluon-gluon and quark-gluon luminosities comes from the HL-LHC, with the LHeC dominating for the quark-quark and quark-antiquark luminosities. As in the case of the PDFs, for the partonic luminosities the combination of the HL-LHC and LHeC constraints leads to a clear reduction in the PDF uncertainties in comparison to the individual cases, by up to an order of magnitude over a wide range of invariant masses, M_X , of the produced final state.

In summary, our results demonstrate that while the HL-LHC alone is expected to have a sizeable impact on PDF constraints, the LHeC can improve our current precision on PDFs significantly in comparison to this, in particular at low to intermediate x . Moreover, the combination of both the LHeC and HL-LHC pseudo-data leads to a significantly superior PDF error reduction in comparison to the two facilities individually. Further details, including LHeC-only studies as well as an investigation of the impact of the PDF baseline on the uncertainty projections, can be found in [35].

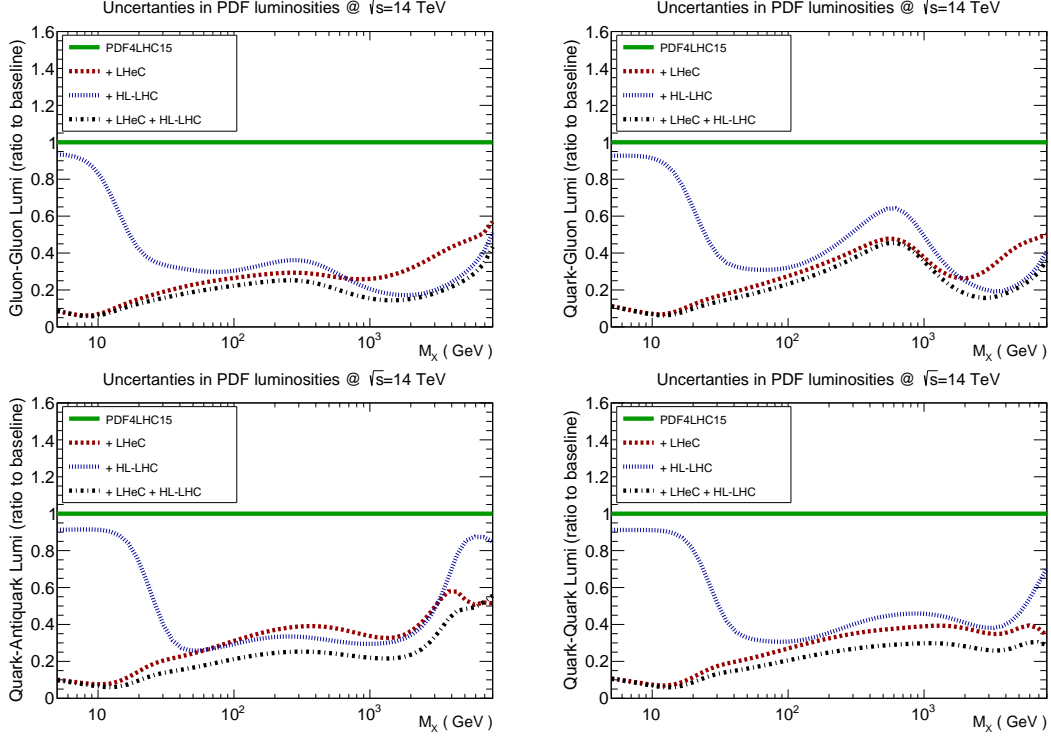


Figure 3.2: Impact of LHeC, HL-LHC and combined LHeC + HL-LHC pseudo-data on the uncertainties of the gluon-gluon, quark-gluon, quark-antiquark and quark-quark luminosities, with respect to the PDF4LHC15 baseline set. In this comparison we display the relative reduction of the PDF uncertainty in the luminosities compared to the baseline.

PDF Sensitivity: Comparing LHC and LHeC:

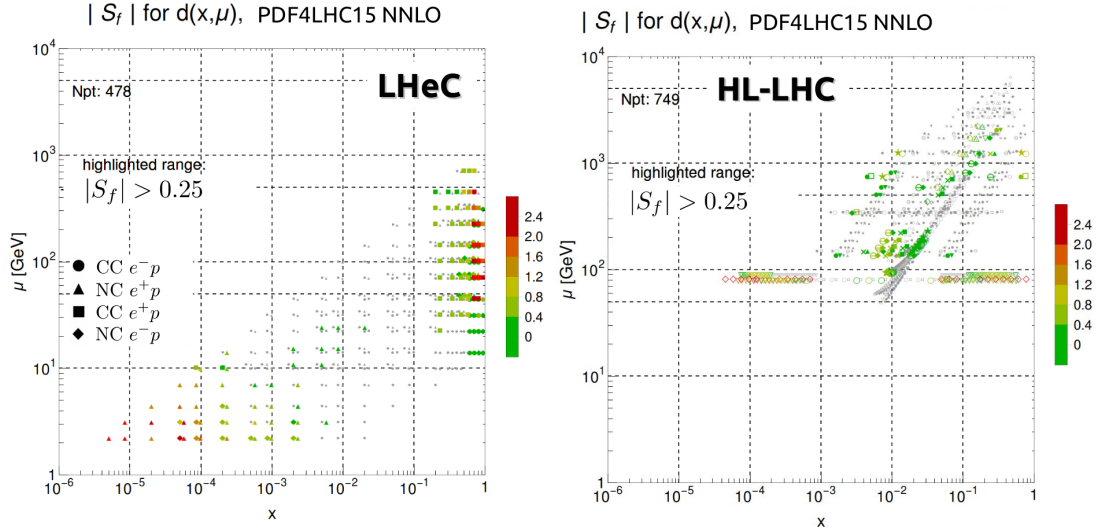


Figure 3.3: Sensitivity for a sample flavor $\{d(x, Q)\}$ in the $\{x, Q^2\}$ kinematic plane for the LHeC (left) and the HL-LHC (right) calculated with pseudodata [39]. We observe the LHeC is particularly sensitive in both the high and low x regions, and the HL-LHC covers the intermediate x region out to large Q scales.

While experimental reach of each facility in the $\{x, Q^2\}$ kinematic plane of Fig. 3.4 provides a useful comparison, there are more factors to consider—especially when we are striving for ultra-high precision measurements.

One measure that provides a dimension beyond the $\{x, Q^2\}$ plane is the *sensitivity*; this is a combination of the correlation coefficient times a scaled residual [39,40]. In Fig. 3.3 we display this sensitivity for a sample PDF flavor. This gives us an extra dimension of information compared to Fig. 3.4, and provides a measure of the impact of the data. In particular, we observe the LHeC provides strong sensitivity in the high- x region (which is important for BSM searches), and also in the low- x region (which is relevant for saturation). The HL-LHC provides constraints coming from W/Z production ($Q \sim M_{W/Z}$) as well as from jets at high Q scales. The combination of these measurements can provide very strong constraints on the various PDF flavors across the broad $\{x, Q^2\}$ kinematic plane.

While the kinematic plots of Fig. 3.4 provide a valuable overview, we must be caution to consider other “dimensions” to ascertain the complementary aspects when comparing the separate facilities.

3.1.3 The Role of DIS/ep Colliders in the Determination of PDFs

- Reasons for ep - Max
- HERA data and HERA2.0 Mandy
- The Role of LHeC Mandy

The Kinematic Landscape:

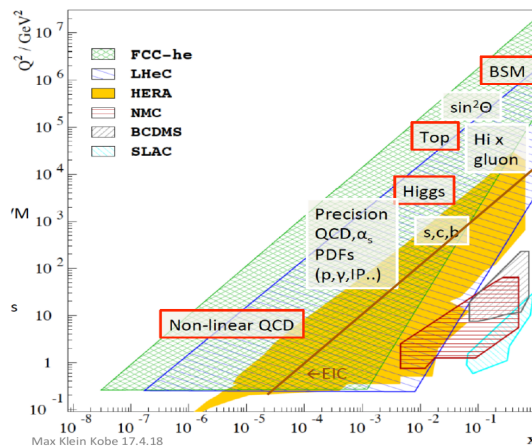


Figure 3.4: Comparison of $\{x, Q^2\}$ kinematic reach of various facilities. **FIGURE TO BE UPDATED**

In Fig. 3.4 we display the kinematic reach in $\{x, Q^2\}$ space for past, present, and future machines. We highlight the separate regions that impact specific processes such as BSM, top-quark production, Higgs production, and non-linear QCD.

The fixed-target measurements (SLAC, BCDMS, NMC) cover the high- x low- Q^2 region (bottom right portion of the figure). HERA ($\sqrt{s} \sim 313$ GeV) significantly extended the $\{x, Q^2\}$ reach.

The proposed Electron Ion Collider (EIC) ($\sqrt{s} \sim 140 \text{ GeV}$) will study both proton and nuclei in the high- x and low- Q^2 extremes.

The LHeC will extend the x reach by $\times 10$ and the Q^2 reach by $\times 100$ with a $\sqrt{s} \sim 1.2 \text{ TeV}$ and a luminosity $1000\times$ that of HERA. In the farther future, an FCC-he will then push the kinematic limits to an unprecedented $\sqrt{s} \sim 100 \text{ TeV}$.

3.1.4 Simulation and Default Fit

- Data, Syst errors, L profile, energy sets. (Max)
- Fit ansatz and its motivation (Mandy)

The Pseudo-Data Sets:

To make quantitative comparisons such as those displayed in Figs. 3.4 and 3.3, we have used a set of LHeC pseudo-data computed as outlined in Ref. [35] and shown in Fig. 3.5. [35]

The figure highlights the broad kinematic reach of the LHeC using electrons and positron beams, and also with a High Energy (HE) and Low Energy (LE) configuration in both Charged Current (CC) and Neutral Current (NC) channels. Additionally, we can include neutral current (NC) heavy quark production ($F_2^{c\bar{c}}, F_2^{b\bar{b}}$) which helps constrain the gluon PDF, as well as charged current production of charm (F_2^c) which can constrain the strange PDF.

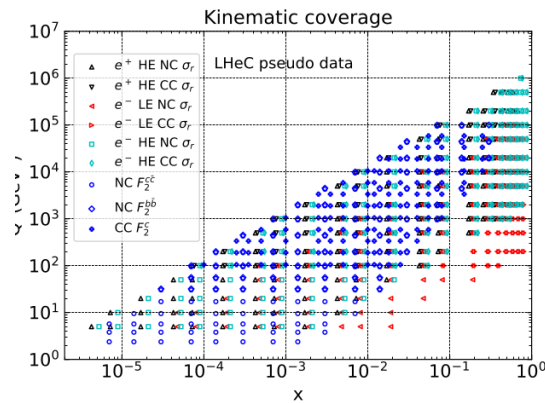


Figure 3.5: Pseudo-Data used for studies

3.1.5 PDF Prospects with the LHeC

- Quarks (valence)
- Light sea, lifting $d = \bar{u}$ condition
- Gluon

Overview: PDF Improvements from LHeC:

pdfs: the situation today

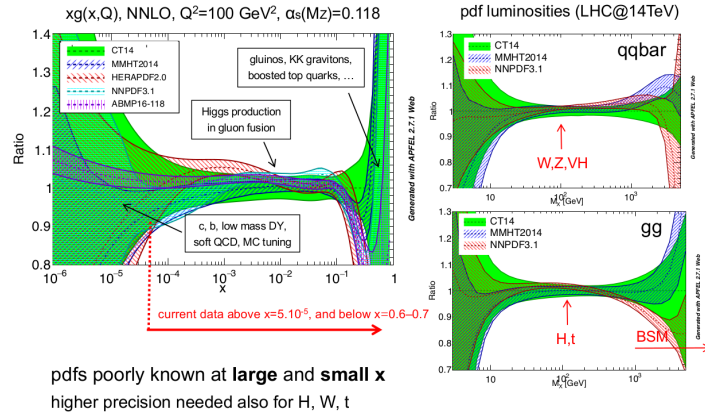


Figure 3.6: Current PDF uncertainties: this limits BSM searches

The extraction of PDFs in global analyses has an extensive history. At present, there are many groups actively working on improving the PDFs. [*** Cite current PDF groups ***]

In Fig. 3.6 we display some sample PDF uncertainties and luminosities. In all these figures, we see the general pattern that the PDFs are reasonably constrained in the central x region, but poorly known in both the large and small x region. The LHeC will greatly expand the kinematic coverage in the $\{x, Q^2\}$ plane, and offer an increased luminosity of $1000\times$ that of HERA.

In the small x region, much of the PDF constraints came from the HERA data which extends down to a few 10^{-5} (depending on the Q^2 cuts); the LHeC will extend these limits by more than a decade.

The high x region is crucial for precision measurements of both SM and BSM processes (as discussed in the previous section); here the large luminosity of the LHeC together with an increase of the Q^2 reach by an order of magnitude ($\sim 15\times$) will allow for significant improvement in this region.

summary of pdfs from ep

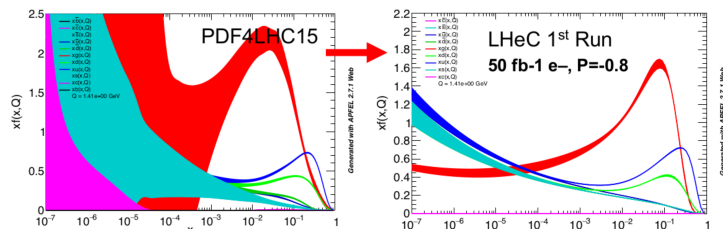


Figure 3.7: Improvements of PDFs from LHeC

The integrated luminosity for the LHeC across the full program is expected to be 1 ab^{-1} ; however, in just the first three years of running an integrated luminosity of just 50 fb^{-1} will provide a dramatic reduction of the PDF uncertainties illustrated in Fig. 3.7. This improvement in the

PDF uncertainties would presumably be in parallel with the running of the HL-LHC (and well before the end of the HL-LHC operation); hence, these improved PDFs would also be available to benefit improved HL-LHC analyses.

Improved PDFs from LHeC: High- x

We first focus on the high- x kinematic region, which is a particular strength of the LHeC; this advantage arises from primarily two factors: i) the increased energy of the LHeC machine ($Q^2 \sim 15$ times HERA), and ii) the fact that the initial state (ep) only has one composite object as compared to hadron-hadron processes.

In Figs. 3.8 and 3.9 we display the improvement of the LHeC PDF constraints as compared to current limits for the valence and gluon distributions, respectively. The broader (yellow) band represents the constraints from the initial run (50 pb^{-1}), and the narrower (blue) band represent the constraints from the full inclusive run (1 ab^{-1}). The improvements are dramatic for both the quark and gluon channels. Additionally, these measurements offer the opportunity to resolve the long-standing issue of the d/u ratio at large x as demonstrated in Fig. 3.10. Because these measurements are performed in the large Q^2 region on proton beams, they are insensitive to higher twist effects and nuclear corrections. As discussed previously, the high x region is key for constraining BSM physics signatures.

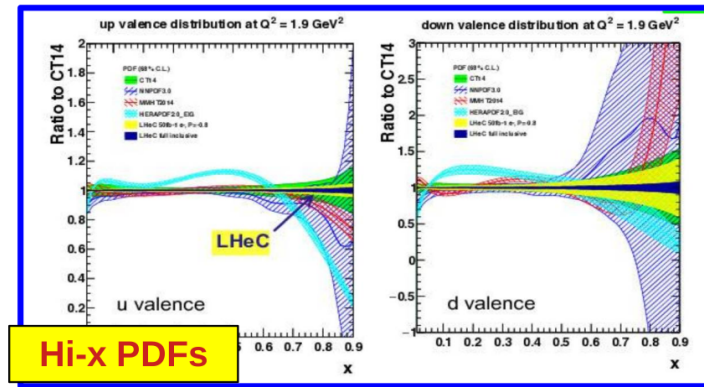


Figure 3.8: PDF constraints from LHeC at for quarks at hi- x .

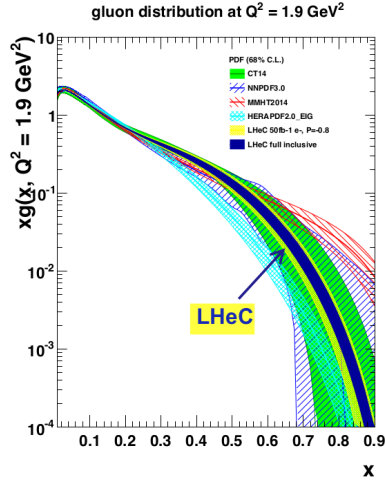


Figure 3.9: PDF constraints from LHeC for gluon at hi- x .

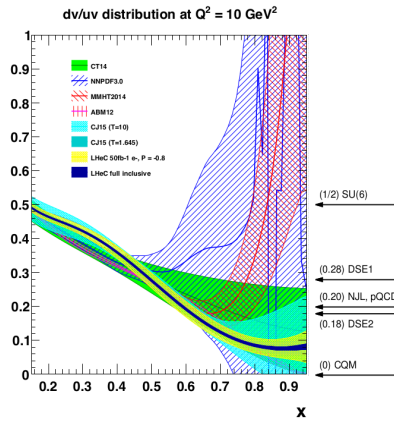


Figure 3.10: PDF constraints on the ratio d_v/u_v at hi- x .

Improved PDFs from LHeC: Low- x

The LHeC kinematics also enables us to probe the small x region of the kinematic plane with exceedingly high statistics. This allows us to address questions about parton saturation, recombination, and DGLAP vs. BFKL evolution and non-linear dynamics. This low x region is also relevant for ultra-high-energy neutrino cross sections as measured in cosmic ray experiments.

In Fig. 3.11 we display the comparative improvement of the up and down PDFs from the LHeC pseudo-data vs. the HERA constraints. Some care must be exercised when making comparisons at small x as parametrization effects can influence the interpretation [35]. In this particular case, we have used the same framework to compare the LHeC and HERA constraints.

Current data extends down to $x \sim 5 \times 10^{-5}$, while the LHeC provides a single precise data set down to $\sim 10^{-6}$, and the FCC-he can go down to $\sim 10^{-7}$. Evidence for the onset of BFKL dynamics has been investigated in a number of recent studies [41–43]. These simulations show that the LHeC has significant constraining power to discriminate between theoretical scenarios

of small x dynamics. Additionally, the measurement of F_L has a critical role to play as this is sensitive to both the gluon PDF and higher order effects. [44]

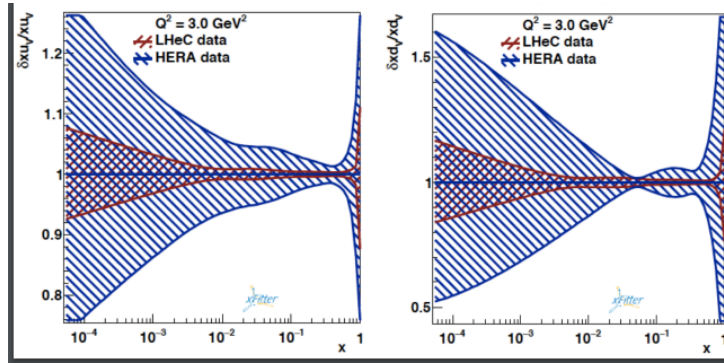


Figure 3.11: Constraints at small x .

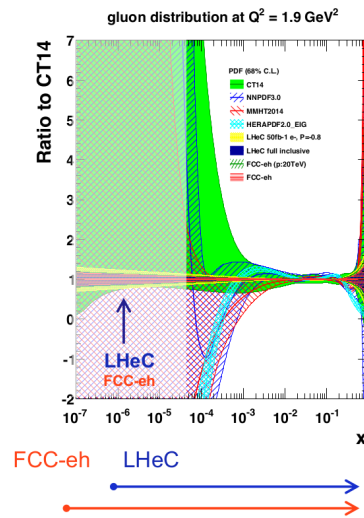


Figure 3.12: PDF constraints from LHeC for gluon at low- x .

Luminosity: Impact for LHC

Finally, we examine the impact of the LHeC precision measurements on the LHC processes. As a sample, in Fig. 3.13 we display the gluon-gluon and quark-quark luminosities for the LHC ($\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV) as compared with current estimates from the PDF4LHC15 benchmarks. The outer (yellow) band shows the improvement for the initial ($50 pb^{-1}$) run, and the inner (blue) band shows the improvement for the full ($1 ab^{-1}$) run. In either case, the LHeC data will allow us to make high precision measurements (on order of a few percent) well into the multi-TeV region.

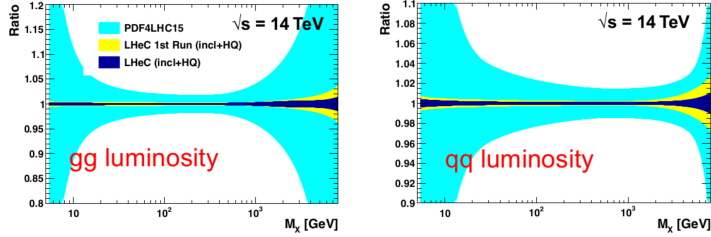


Figure 3.13: Current PDF luminosities.

LHeC PDF Sensitivity: Light Sea Quarks:

LHeC PDF Sensitivity: Gluons:

In Depth Investigations:

Within the working group on PDFs and Low x physics, there were a number of detailed studies examining the impact of parameterizations, tolerance factors, correlated errors, and other various factors that can influence the resulting PDF.

The result of one such study [45] is presented in Fig. 3.14 which shows the differing impacts due to different input assumptions.

It is for this reason that the PDF uncertainty limits have been re-calculated using multiple frameworks with different programs. For example, in Fig. 3.15 we display the improvements of selected PDF flavors using a different program (xFitter) in addition to a different parameterization. Recent efforts within the PDFs and Low x study group have reduced the final differences among the various calculations, and work is ongoing. Nevertheless, in all cases we see a dramatic improvement of the PDF uncertainties with the LHeC data included.

This study also highlights the point that many of these studies are implicitly assuming a specific framework (parameterization, tolerance level, ...). Should we encounter “new physics” signals that do not fit neatly into this framework, obviously the assumptions will need to be revised; this is an example where having complementary input from, for example, an HL-LHC and an LHeC would be crucial in discerning whether an anomalous signature arose from an uncertain SM process or could definitively be identified as a true BSM source.

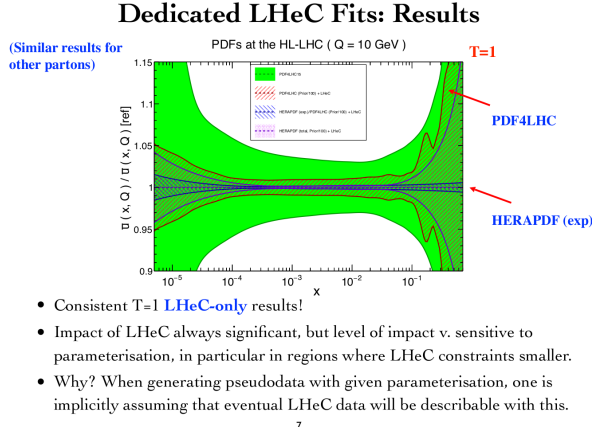


Figure 3.14: Parametrization and Pseudo-data issues.

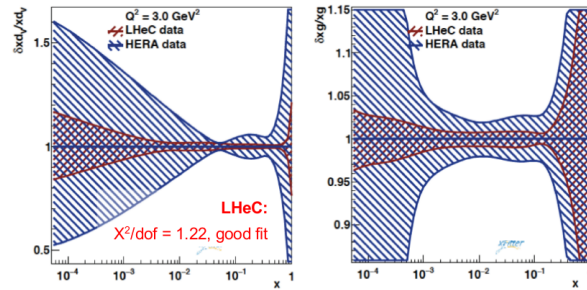


Figure 3.15: Marco & Fra studies:

3.1.6 Heavy Quarks

Heavy Quarks: Strange:

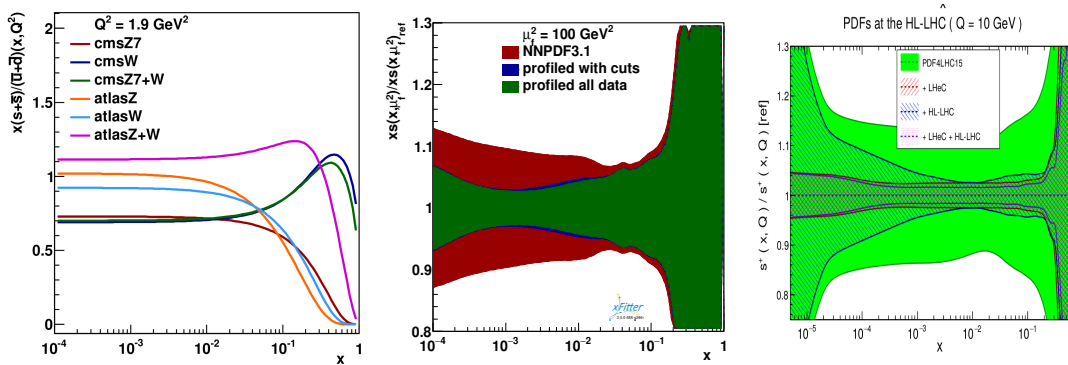


Figure 3.16: a) The fits to the PDF ratio $(s + \bar{s})/(\bar{u} + \bar{d})$ for various subsets of the ATLAS and CMS W and Z data sets from Ref. [46]. b) Constraints on the strange quark PDF using charged-current production of charm at the LHeC from Ref. [47]. c) Constraints on the strange quark PDF from Ref. [35].

Determination of the strange PDF has generated significant controversy in the literature for more than a decade. The older fixed-target neutrino DIS measurements typically prefer a strange PDF

that is roughly half of the up and down sea distribution; $\kappa = (s + \bar{s})/(\bar{u} + \bar{d}) \sim 0.5$, while recent measurements from the LHC suggest a larger strange quark distribution. The LHeC provides the opportunity to resolve many of these outstanding issues and greatly improved the precision of $s(x)$. The strange quark provides a significant contribution to “standard candle” measurements such as W/Z production, and influences the the W mass determination.

The high precision measurements of the inclusive W and Z boson cross section at the LHC provide new constraints on the strange quark density in the low- x regime. One of the earlier LHC analyses to study the strange quark PDF used the ATLAS inclusive W/Z data [48, 49]. In contrast to the results from the fixed-target experiments, the LHC analysis suggested the strange quark could be as large, or larger, than the up and down sea quarks (\bar{u} and \bar{d}). This observation was supported by analysis of the ATLAS $W + c$ data [50]

However, the CMS $W + c$ data [51] favor a somewhat smaller strangeness. Since the analysis of the $W + c$ data involve assumptions on charm jet fragmentation and hadronisation it is interesting to investigate if this disagreement is present for the inclusive Drell-Yan (DY) data of ATLAS and CMS.

A combined analysis was done by performing a parton distribution function analysis in NNLO QCD using the inclusive deep inelastic scattering data from HERA jointly with the ATLAS and CMS inclusive Drell-Yan data [46]. This study found that while there was no tension between the HERA data and the LHC data, or between the LHC data sets, the LHC data support unsuppressed strangeness in the proton at low x at both low and high scales. The result is dominated by the ATLAS data but is not in contradiction with the CMS data. Figure 3.16-a displays the preferred value of the ratio $(s + \bar{s})/(\bar{u} + \bar{d})$ for the individual measurements.

The LHeC has the potential to significantly improve the precision of the strange quark PDF, and this may provide additional insight into the above analyses. To investigate this possibility, the xFitter collaboration used LHeC pseudodata for charged current production of charm final states to constrain the initial strange quark PDF; at leading-order, the subprocess is $W s \rightarrow c$. Additionally, the charged current process allows us to use the electron and positron beams to separately probe the strange and anti-strange PDFs individually; this provides another level of flavor discrimination.

This study found that the LHeC can provide strong constraints on the strange-quark PDF, especially in the previously unexplored small- x region. Figure 3.16-b displays the improved constraints on the strange PDF using the LHeC pseudo-data for the charged current charm production channel ($sg \rightarrow Wc$) as obtained using xFitter profiling tools [47]. A large reduction of uncertainties is observed also when restricting the input data (profiled with cuts, Fig. 3.16-b) to the kinematic range where the differences between the different heavy flavor schemes (VFNS and FFNS) are not larger than the present PDF uncertainties, indicating that the obtained PDF constraints are stable and independent of the particular heavy-flavor scheme. A reduction of the strange-PDF uncertainties influences the W/Z production, and thus the Higgs production; hence, the LHeC CC DIS charm production data represent a valuable addition for the future global PDF fits.

A separate study [35] also looked at constraints on $s(x)$ using a variety of channels. The results of the improved PDF limits are displayed in Fig. 3.16-c which shows the constraints from the LHeC, the HL-LHC, and the combination.

In summary, we find that CC DIS charm production at the LHeC can provide strong constraints on the strange PDF which are complementary to the current data sets. As the PDF uncertainty is the dominant factor for many precision analyses, a reduction of these uncertainties will allow for

more accurate predictions which can be used to constrain both SM and BSM physics processes.

Heavy Quarks: Charm & Bottom:

The production of heavy quarks at HERA (charm and bottom) was an especially interesting process as the quark mass introduced a new scale ($m_{c,b}$) which was neither heavy or light. Such multi-scale problems are particularly difficult, and numerous techniques were developed to cope with this challenging problem.

At the LHeC, the increased CMS energy allows us to extend to very large Q^2 values. Thus, the LHeC can comprehensively explore the high energy limit where $m_{c,b}^2/Q^2 \rightarrow 0$, as well as low energy region $m_{c,b}^2/Q^2 \sim 1$.

In Fig. 3.17 we display the kinematic reach of $F_2^{c\bar{c}}$ and $F_2^{b\bar{b}}$, and contrast this with the HERA combined data. The extended reach is dramatic.

These channels can also help improve the determination of the charm and bottom quark masses and bring these uncertainties into the range of $\lesssim 10$ MeV. *** Need refs here.

Additionally, the production of heavy quarks is closely tied to the gluon distribution ($g \rightarrow Q\bar{Q}$), so can also contribute to reducing this uncertainty, c.f., Fig. 3.18. In Fig. 3.18 we display the impact of the LHeC heavy quark data on the gluon PDFs. ***** needs a bit more discussion here *****

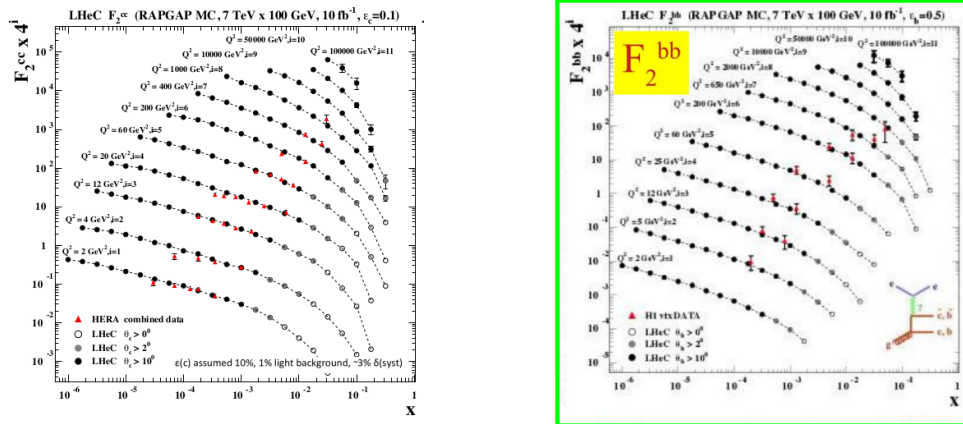


Figure 3.17: Heavy quark structure functions $F_2^{c\bar{c}}$ and $F_2^{b\bar{b}}$. Olaf has updated figures for this!!!

impact of HQ data on LHeC pdfs

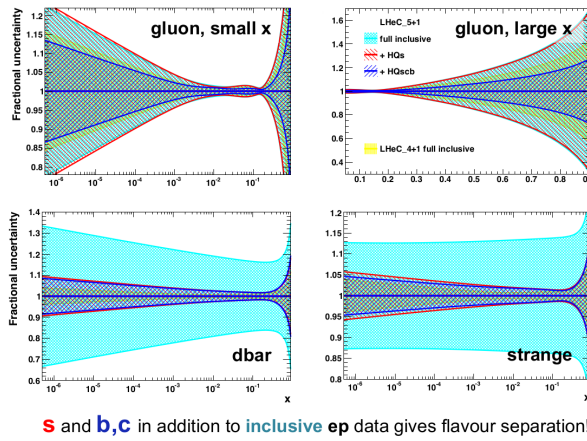


Figure 3.18: Impact of HQ data on LHeC PDFs Do we show just gluon, or also include dbar and strange???

Heavy Quarks: Top:

If there is nothing to add, then we can skip this section???

3.1.7 Summary

The LHeC provides the opportunity to study a variety of SM processes in a new kinematic realm with ultra-high statistics. This allows us to significantly improve the precision determination of quark and gluon PDFs of the proton; this in turn is of fundamental importance for future studies of both SM processes and BSM discoveries. Here, we briefly recap some of the key observations of this section.

- Updated studies for the LHeC demonstrates critical improvements of the PDF uncertainty can be obtained from the initial 3-year run of $50 pb^{-1}$; this is $50\times$ the total HERA integrated luminosity.
- The LHeC will provide a complete unfolding of the quark and gluon PDFs in both the large and small x regions. This can test limits of the QCD theory in extreme kinematic limits.
- The large energy reach of the LHeC allows us to study multi-scale processes such as heavy quark production.
- The precision LHeC measurements, when combined with the concurrently operating HL-LHC, will provide the most accurate extrapolation into the large energy region; this information can provide crucial clues as to the optimal design energy for a future FCC facility.

3.2 Pushing the limits of QCD with high precision measurements

A multitude of fundamental aspects of QCD can be probed at the LHeC with highest precision. Particularly in deep inelastic electron-proton and lepton-nucleus reactions the LHeC will extend tests of QCD to a new domain. The DIS events measure not only structure functions but also generalized structure observables such as the transverse momentum distributions (TMDs). [Write a few more sentences here.](#)

3.2.1 Determination of the strong coupling constant

Quantum Chromodynamics (QCD) [52, 53] has been established as the theory of strong interactions within the Standard Model of particle physics. While there are manifold aspects both from the theoretical and from the experimental point-of-view, by far the most important parameter of QCD is the coupling strength which is most commonly expressed at the mass of the Z boson, M_Z , as $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Its (renormalisation) scale dependence is given by the QCD gauge group $SU(3)$ [54, 55]. Predictions for numerous processes in e^+e^- , pp or ep collisions are then commonly performed in the framework of perturbative QCD, and (the lack of) higher-order QCD corrections often represent limiting aspects for precision physics. Therefore, the determination of the strong coupling constant $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ constitutes one of the most crucial tasks for future precision physics, while at the same time the study of the scale dependence of α_s provides an inevitable test of the validity of QCD as the theory of strong interactions and the portal for GUT theories.

Different processes and methodologies can be considered for a determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ (see e.g. reviews [56–58]). Since QCD is an asymptotically free theory, with free behaviour at high scales but confinement at low scales, a high sensitivity to the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is naturally obtained from low-scale measurements. However, the high-scale behaviour must then be calculated by solving the renormalisation group equation, which implies the strict validity of the theory and an excellent understanding of all subleading effects, such as the behaviour around quark-mass thresholds.

Precision measurements at the LHeC offer the unique opportunity to exploit many of these aspects. Measurements of jet production cross sections or inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections provide a high sensitivity to the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, since these measurements can be performed at comparably low scales and with high experimental precision. At the same time, the LHeC provides the opportunity to test the running of the strong coupling constant over a large kinematic range. In this section, the prospects for a determination of the strong coupling constant with inclusive jet cross sections and with inclusive NC/CC DIS cross sections are studied.

Strong coupling from inclusive jet cross sections

The measurement of inclusive jet or di-jet production cross sections in NC DIS provides a high sensitivity to the strong coupling constant and to the gluon PDF of the proton. This is because jet cross sections in NC DIS are measured in the Breit reference frame [59], where the virtual boson γ^* or Z collides head-on with the struck parton from the proton and the outgoing jets are

required to have a non-zero transverse momentum in that reference frame. The leading order QCD diagrams are QCD Compton and boson-gluon fusion and are both $\mathcal{O}(\alpha_s)$, see Fig. 3.19.

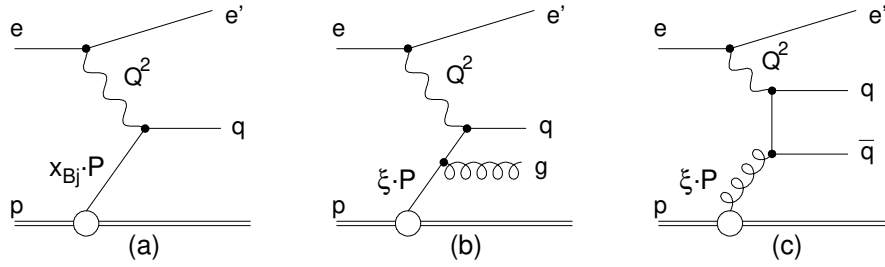


Figure 3.19: Leading order diagrams for inclusive DIS (a) and jet production (b,c) in the Breit frame (taken from Ref. [60]).

At HERA, jets are most commonly defined by the longitudinally invariant k_t jet algorithm [61] with a distance parameter $R = 1.0$ [60,62–78]. This provides an infrared safe jet definition and the chosen distance parameter guarantees a small dependence on non-perturbative effects, such as hadronisation. Differently than in pp at the LHC [79–82], jet algorithms at the LHeC do not require any pile-up subtraction and any reduction of the dependence on minimum bias or underlying event, due to the absence of such effects. Therefore, for this study we adopt the choices made at HERA.

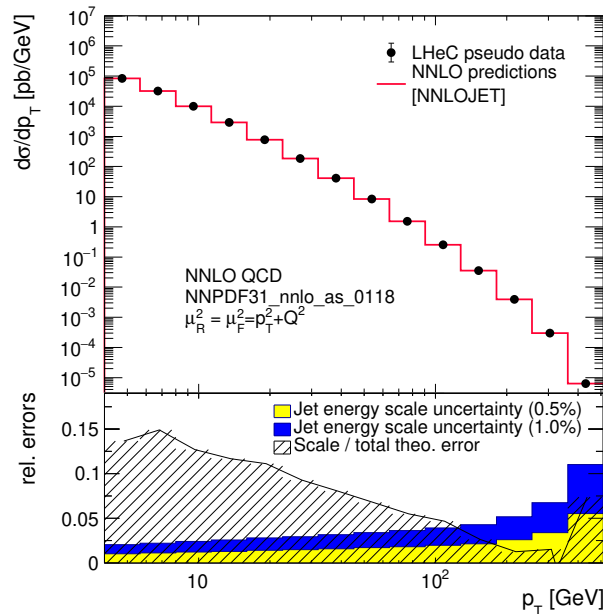


Figure 3.20: Inclusive jet cross sections calculated in NNLO QCD as a function of the jet transverse momentum in the Breit frame, p_T . The shaded area indicates NNLO scale uncertainties and the yellow band shows the estimated experimental jet energy scale uncertainty.

In Fig. 3.20 the next-to-next-to-leading order QCD (NNLO) predictions [83,84] for cross sections for inclusive jet production in NC DIS as a function of the transverse momentum of the jets in the Breit frame are displayed. The calculations are performed for $E_e = 60$ GeV and include γ/Z and Z exchange terms and account for the electron beam polarisation $P_e = -0.8$. The NC DIS kinematic range is set to $Q^2 > 4$ GeV². The calculations are performed using the NNLOJET program [85] interfaced to the fastNLO (applfast) library [86–88].

The kinematically accessible range in jet- P_T ranges over two orders of magnitude, $4 < P_T \lesssim 400$ GeV. The size of the cross section extends over many orders in magnitude, thus imposing challenging demands on LHeC experimental conditions, triggers and DAQ bandwidth, calibration, and data processing capabilities. The scale uncertainty of the NNLO predictions is about 10% at low values of P_T and significantly decreases with increasing values of P_T . Future improved predictions will further reduce these theoretical uncertainties.

For the purpose of estimating the uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ in a determination from inclusive jet cross sections at the LHeC, double-differential cross sections as a function of Q^2 and P_T with a full set of experimental uncertainties are generated. Altogether 509 cross section values are calculated in the kinematic range $8 < Q^2 < 500\,000$ GeV² and $4 < P_T < 512$ GeV, and the bin grid is similar to the ones used by CMS, H1 or ZEUS [79, 88–90]. The various error sources considered are summarised in Tab. 3.1. The uncertainties related to the reconstruction of the NC DIS kinematic variables, Q^2 , y and x_{bj} , are similar to the estimates for the inclusive NC DIS cross sections (see section ??). For the reconstruction of hadronic final state particles which are the input to the jet algorithm, jet energy scale uncertainty (JES), calorimetric noise and the polar angle uncertainty are considered. The size of the uncertainties is gauged with achieved values by H1, ZEUS, ATLAS and CMS [69, 77, 91–93]. The size of the dominant JES one is assumed to be 0.5% for reconstructed particles in the laboratory rest frame, yielding an uncertainty of 0.2–4.4% on the cross section after the boost to the Breit frame. A JES uncertainty of 0.5% is well justified by improved calorimeters, since already H1 and ZEUS reported uncertainties of 1% [69, 77, 91], and ATLAS and CMS achieved 1% over a wide range in P_T [92, 93], albeit the presence of pile-up and the considerably more complicated definition of a reference object for the in-situ calibration. The size of the JES uncertainty is also displayed in Fig. 3.20. The calorimetric noise of ± 20 MeV on every calorimeter cluster, as reported by H1, yields an uncertainty of up to 0.7% on the jet cross sections. A minimum size of the statistical uncertainty of 0.15% is imposed for each data point. An overall normalisation uncertainty of 1.0% is assumed, which will be mainly dominated by the luminosity uncertainty. In addition, an uncorrelated uncertainty component of 0.6% collects various smaller error sources, such as for instance radiative corrections, unfolding or model uncertainties. Studies on the size and the correlation model of these uncertainties are performed below.

Exp. uncertainty	Shift	Size on σ [%]
Statistics with 1 ab^{-1}	min. 0.15 %	0.15–5
Electron energy	0.1 %	0.02–0.62
Polar angle	2 mrad	0.02–0.48
Calorimeter noise	± 20 MeV	0.01–0.74
Jet energy scale (JES)	0.5 %	0.2–4.4
Uncorrelated uncert.	0.6 %	0.6
Normalisation uncert.	1.0 %	1.0

Table 3.1: Anticipated uncertainties of inclusive jet cross section measurements at the LHeC.

The value/uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is obtained in a χ^2 -fit of NNLO predictions [83, 84] to the simulated data with $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ being a free fit parameter. The methodology follows closely analyses of HERA jet data [88, 89] and the χ^2 quantity is calculated from relative uncertainties, i.e. those of the right column of Tab. 3.1. The predictions account for both α_s -dependent terms in the NNLO calculations, i.e. in the DGLAP operator and the hard matrix elements, by using

$$\sigma = f_{\mu_0} \otimes P_{\mu_0 \rightarrow \mu_F}(\alpha_s(M_z)) \otimes \hat{\sigma}(\alpha_s(M_z), \mu), \quad (3.1)$$

where f_{μ_0} are the PDFs at a scale of $\mu_0 = 30 \text{ GeV}$. The α_s uncertainty is obtained by linear error propagation and is validated with a separate study of the $\Delta\chi^2 = 1$ criterion.

In the fit of NNLO QCD predictions to the simulated double-differential LHeC inclusive jet cross sections an uncertainty of

$$\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)(\text{jets}) = \pm 0.00013_{(\text{exp})} \pm 0.00010_{(\text{PDF})} \quad (3.2)$$

is found. The PDF uncertainty is estimated from a PDF set obtained from LHeC inclusive DIS data. These uncertainties promise a determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ with the highest precision and would represent a considerable reduction of the current world average value with a present uncertainty of ± 0.00110 [?].

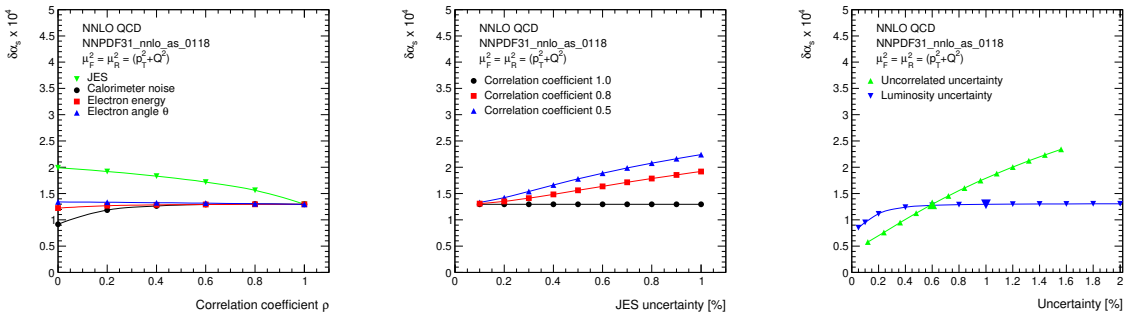


Figure 3.21: Studies of the size and correlations of experimental uncertainties impacting the uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Left: Study of the value of the correlation coefficient ρ for different systematic uncertainties. Common systematic uncertainties are considered as fully correlated, $\rho = 1$. Middle: Size of the JES uncertainty for three different values of ρ_{JES} . Right: Impact of the uncorrelated and normalisation uncertainties on $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)$.

The uncertainty of α_s is studied for different values of the experimental uncertainties for the inclusive jet measurement and for different assumption on bin-to-bin correlations, expressed by the correlation coefficient ρ , of individual uncertainty sources, as shown in Fig. 3.21. It is observed that, even for quite conservative scenarios, $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ will be determined with an uncertainty smaller than 2‰. For this, it is important to keep the size of the uncorrelated uncertainty or the uncorrelated components of other systematic uncertainties under good control.

In the present formalism theoretical uncertainties from scale variations of the NNLO predictions amount to about $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z) = 0.0035$ (NNLO). These can be reduced with suitable cuts in P_T or Q^2 to about $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z) \approx 0.0010$. However, it is expected that improved predictions, e.g. with resummed contributions or $N^3\text{LO}$ predictions will significantly reduce these uncertainties in the future. Uncertainties on non-perturbative hadronisation effects will have to be considered as well, but these will be under good control due to the measurements of charged particle spectra at the LHeC and improved phenomenological models.

The running of the strong coupling

The dependence of the coupling strength as a function of the renormalisation scale μ_R is predicted by QCD, which is often called the ‘running’ of the strong coupling. Its study with experimental data represents an important consistency and validity test of QCD. Using inclusive jet cross sections the running of the strong coupling can be tested by determining the value of α_s at

different values of μ_R by grouping data points with similar values of μ_R and determining the value of $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ from these subsets of data points. The assumptions on the running of $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ are then imposed only for the limited range of the chosen interval, and not to the full measured interval as in the previous study. Here we set $\mu_R^2 = Q^2 + P_T^2$ ¹. The experimental uncertainties

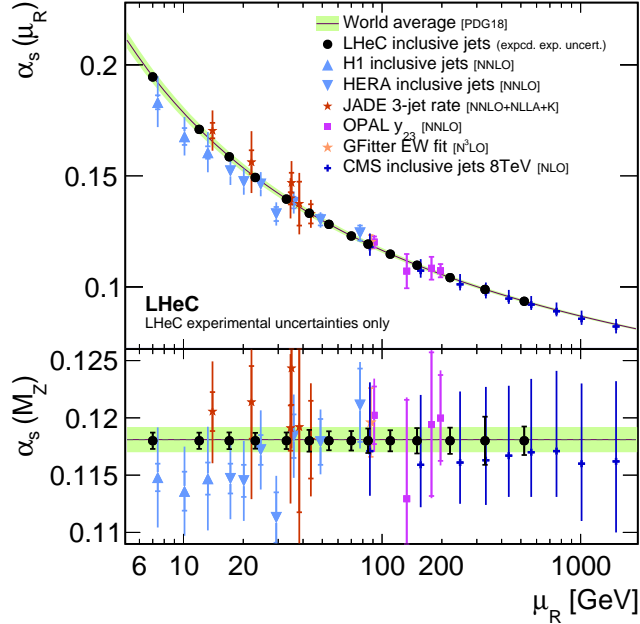


Figure 3.22: Uncertainties of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and corresponding $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ in a determination of α_s using LHeC inclusive jet cross sections at different values of $\mu_R^2 = Q^2 + p_T^2$. Only experimental uncertainties are shown for LHeC and are compared with a number of presently available measurements and the world average value.

from the fits to subsets of the inclusive jet pseudo-data are displayed in Fig. 3.22. These results demonstrate a high sensitivity to α_s over two orders of magnitude in renormalisation scale up to values of about $\mu_R \approx 500$ GeV. In the range $6 < \mu_R \lesssim 200$ GeV the experimental uncertainty is found to be smaller than the expectation from the world average value [108]. This region is of particular interest since it connects the precision determinations from lattice calculations [109] or τ decay measurements [110], which are at low scales $\mathcal{O}(\text{GeV})$, to the measurements at the Z pole [111] and to the applications to scales which are relevant for the LHC, e.g. for Higgs or top

¹ The pQCD predictions exhibit an inherent scale dependence. The choice of the scales follows a “conventional” scale setting procedure, i.e. one simply identifies the value of the scales with the characteristic energy or momentum transfer. Uncertainties for the scale choice, as well as unknown higher order terms, are estimated by varying the scales within a conventional range, e.g. by factors of 0.5 and 2. Such variations are sensitive only to the β terms, which govern the behavior of the running coupling, and may become unreliable since the resulting pQCD series diverges strongly as $\alpha_s^n \beta_0^n n!$, the “renormalon” divergence [94]. An alternative and systematic way to fix the scales is provided by the Principle of Maximum Conformality (PMC) [95–99]. When applying the PMC method, the scales are fixed by absorbing the β terms, and thus prevent the renormalon divergence, and the resulting predictions do not depend on the choice of the renormalisation scheme, which satisfies the principles of renormalisation group invariance [100–102]. The PMC method extends the Brodsky-Lepage-Mackenzie (BLM) scale-setting method [103] to all orders, and it reduces in the Abelian limit to the Gell-Mann-Low method [104, 105]. The PMC method was successfully applied to predictions of event shape observables in $e^+e^- \rightarrow Z^0 \rightarrow \text{hadrons}$ [106] and the renormalisation scale then depends on the specific kinematics of each event [107]. When applying the PMC method to observables in DIS, the alternative scale setting provides a profound alternative to verify the running of $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$, since μ_R is defined systematically by PMC. Such a procedure is particularly relevant for event shape observables, where the leading-order terms are insensitive to α_s and conventional scale choices may not be adequately related to the α_s sensitive higher order QCD corrections.

physics or high-mass searches. This kinematic region of scales $\mathcal{O}(10 \text{ GeV})$ cannot be accessed by (HL-)LHC experiments because of limitations due to pile-up and underlying event [112].

Strong coupling from inclusive DIS cross sections

Inclusive DIS cross sections are sensitive to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ through higher-order QCD corrections, contributions from the F_L structure function and the scale dependence of the cross section at high x ('scaling violations'). The value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ can then be determined in a combined fit of the PDFs and $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ [89]. While a simultaneous determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and PDFs is not possible with HERA inclusive DIS data alone due to its limited precision and kinematic coverage [89, 90], the large kinematic coverage, high precision and the integrated luminosity of the LHeC data will allow for the first time such analysis.

For the purpose of the determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from inclusive NC/CC DIS data, a combined PDF+ α_s fit to the simulated data is performed, similar to the studies in section 3.1. Other technical details are outlined in Ref. [89]. In this fit, however, the numbers of free parameters of the gluon parameterisation is increased, since the gluon PDF and $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ are highly correlated and LHeC data are sensitive to values down to $x < 10^{-5}$, which requires additional freedom for the gluon parameterisation. The inclusive data are restricted to $Q^2 > 3.5 \text{ GeV}^2$ in order to avoid a region where effects beyond fixed-order perturbation theory may become sizeable [90, 113].

Exploiting the full LHeC inclusive NC/CC DIS data with $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}$, the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ can be determined with an uncertainty $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z) = \pm 0.00038$. With a more optimistic assumption on the dominant uncorrelated uncertainty of $\delta\sigma_{(\text{uncor.})} = 0.25 \%$, an uncertainty as small as

$$\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)(\text{incl. DIS}) = \pm 0.00022_{(\text{exp+PDF})} \quad (3.3)$$

is achieved. This would represent a considerable improvement over the present world average value. Given these small uncertainties, theoretical uncertainties from missing higher orders or heavy quark effects have to be considered in addition. In a dedicated study, the fit is repeated

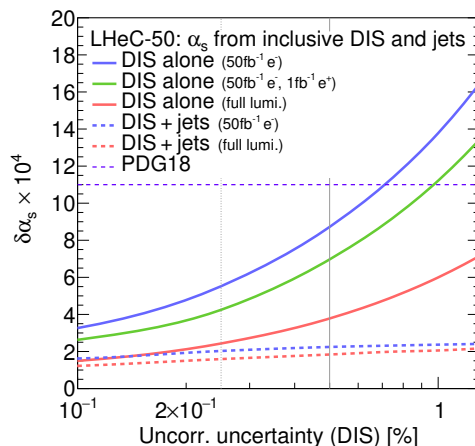


Figure 3.23: Uncertainties of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from simultaneous fits of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and PDFs to inclusive NC/CC DIS data as a function of the size of the uncorrelated uncertainty of the NC/CC DIS data. The full lines indicate the uncertainties obtained with different assumptions on the data taking scenario and integrated luminosity. The dashed lines indicate results where, additionally to the inclusive NC/CC DIS data, inclusive jet cross section data are considered.

with a reduced data set which can be accumulated already during a single year of operation², corresponding to about $\mathcal{L} \sim 50 \text{ fb}^{-1}$. Already these data will be able to improve the world average value. These studies are displayed in Fig. 3.23.

Inclusive DIS and inclusive jet data

The highest sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and an optimal treatment of the PDFs is obtained by using inclusive jet data together with inclusive NC/CC DIS data in a combined determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and the PDFs. Jet data will provide an enhanced sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, while inclusive DIS data has the highest sensitivity to the determination of the PDFs. Furthermore, a consistent theoretical QCD framework can be employed.

For this study, the double-differential inclusive jet data as described above, and additionally the inclusive NC/CC DIS data with $E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}$ as introduced in section 3.1.4, are employed. Besides the normalisation uncertainty, all sources of systematic uncertainties are considered as uncorrelated between the two processes. A fit of NNLO QCD predictions to these data sets is then performed, and $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ and the parameters of the PDFs are determined. The methodology follows closely the methodology sketched in the previous study. Using inclusive jet and inclusive DIS data in a single analysis, the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is determined with an uncertainty of

$$\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)(\text{incl. DIS \& jets}) = \pm 0.00018_{(\text{exp+PDF})}. \quad (3.4)$$

This result will improve the world average value considerably. However, theoretical uncertainties are not included and new mathematical tools and an improved understanding of QCD will be needed in order to achieve small values similar to the experimental ones. The dominant sensitivity in this study arises from the jet data. This can be seen from Fig. 3.23, where $\Delta\alpha_s(M_Z)$ changes only moderately with different assumptions imposed on the inclusive NC/CC DIS data. Assumptions made for the uncertainties of the inclusive jet data have been studied above, and these results can be translated easily to this PDF+ α_s fit.

Discussion of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ determinations at LHeC

The expected values for $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ obtained from inclusive jets or from inclusive NC/CC DIS data are compared in Fig. 3.24 with present determinations from global fits based on DIS data (called ‘PDF fits’) and the world average value [57]. It is observed that LHeC will have the potential to improve considerably the world average value. Already after one year of data taking, the experimental uncertainties of the NC/CC DIS data are competitive with the world average value. The measurement of jet cross sections will further improve that value.

Furthermore, LHeC will be able to address a long standing puzzle. All α_s determinations from global fits based on NC/CC DIS data find a lower value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ than determinations in the lattice QCD framework, from τ decays or in a global electroweak fit. With the expected precision from LHeC this discrepancy will be resolved.

Strong coupling from other processes

A detailed study for the determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from NC/CC DIS and from inclusive jet data was presented in the previous paragraphs. However, a large number of additional processes

²Two different assumptions are made. One fit is performed with only electron data corresponding to $\mathcal{L} \sim 50 \text{ fb}^{-1}$, and an alternative scenario considers further positron data corresponding to $\mathcal{L} \sim 1 \text{ fb}^{-1}$.

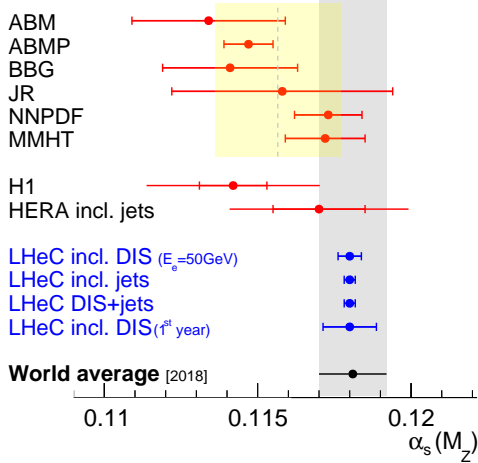


Figure 3.24: Summary of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ values in comparison with present values. The figure is just a placeholder for the final plot.

and observables that are measured at the LHeC can also be considered for a determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Suitable observables or processes are di-jet and multi-jet production, heavy flavour production, jets in photoproduction or event shape observables. These processes all exploit the α_s dependence of the hard interaction. Using suitable predictions, also ‘softer’ processes can be exploited for an α_s determination. Examples could be jet shapes or other substructure observables, or charged particle multiplicities.

Since $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is a parameter of a phenomenological model, the total uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is always a sum of experimental and theoretical uncertainties which are related to the definition of the observable and to the applied model, e.g. hadronisation uncertainties, diagram removal/subtraction uncertainties or uncertainties from missing higher orders. Therefore, credible prospects for the total uncertainty of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from other observables or processes are altogether difficult to predict, even more since LHeC will explore a new kinematic regime that was previously unmeasured.

In a first approximation, the sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ for any process scales with the order n of α_s in the leading-order diagram, α_s^n . Consequently, the experimental uncertainties may reduce with increasing power n . Already at HERA three-jet cross section were proven to have a high sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ albeit their sizeable statistical uncertainties [60, 70]. At the LHeC, due to the higher \sqrt{s} and huge integrated luminosity, as well as the larger acceptance of the detector, three-, four- or five-jet cross sections represent highly sensitive observables for a precise determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, and high experimental precision can be achieved. In these cases, fixed order pQCD predictions may become limiting factors, since they are more complicated for large n .

Di-jet observables are expected to yield a fairly similar experimental uncertainty than inclusive jet cross sections as studied in the previous paragraphs, since both have $n = 1$ at LO. However, their theoretical uncertainties may be smaller, since di-jet observables are less sensitive to additional higher-order radiation, in particular at lower scales where $\alpha_s(\mu_R)$ is larger.

Event shape observables in DIS exploit additional radiation in DIS events (see e.g. review [114] or HERA measurements [115, 116]). Consequently, once measured at the LHeC the experimental uncertainties of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from these observables are expected to become very similar to that in Eq. (3.4), since both the event sample and the process is similar to the inclusive

jet cross sections³. However, different reconstruction techniques of the observables may yield reduced experimental uncertainties, and the calculation of event shape observables allow for the resummation of large logarithms, and steady theoretical advances promise small theoretical uncertainties [117–123].

Jet production cross sections in photoproduction represents a unique opportunity for another precision determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$. Such measurements have been performed at HERA [124–127]. The sizeable photoproduction cross section provides a huge event sample, which is statistically independent from NC DIS events, and already the leading-order predictions are sensitive to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ [128]. Also its running can be largely measured since the scale of the process is well estimated by the transverse momentum of the jets $\mu_R \sim P_T^{\text{jet}}$. Limiting theoretical aspects are due to the presence of a quasi-real photon and the poorly known photon PDF [129, 130].

A different class of observables represent heavy flavour (HF) cross sections, which are discussed in section 3.1.6. Due to flavour conservation, these are commonly proportional to $\mathcal{O}(\alpha_s^1)$ at leading-order. However, when considering inclusive HF cross sections above the heavy quark mass threshold heavy quarks can be factorised into the PDFs, and the leading structure functions $F_2^{c,b}$ are sensitive to α_s only beyond the LO approximation (see reviews [131, 132], recent HERA measurements [133, 134] and references therein). The presence of the heavy quark mass as an additional scale stabilises perturbative calculations, and reduced theoretical uncertainties are expected.

At the LHeC the structure of jets and the formation of hadrons can be studied with unprecedented precision. This is so because of the presence of a single hadron in the initial state. Therefore, limiting effects like the underlying event or pile-up are absent or greatly diminished. Precise measurements of jet shape observables, or the study of jet substructure observables [135], are highly sensitive to the value of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$, because parton shower and hadronisation take place at lower scales where the strong coupling becomes large and an increased sensitivity to $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ is attained [136, 137].

Finally, also the determination of $\alpha_s(M_Z)$ from inclusive NC DIS cross sections can be improved. For NC DIS the dominant sensitivity to α_s arises from the F_L structure function and from scaling violations of F_2 at lower values of Q^2 but at very high values of x . Dedicated measurements of these kinematic regions will further improve the experimental uncertainties from the estimated values in Eq. (3.3).

3.2.2 New QCD Dynamics at Small x

The LHeC machine will offer access to a completely novel kinematic regime of DIS characterized by very small values of x . From the kinematical plane in (x, Q^2) depicted in Fig. 1.1, it is clear that the LHeC will be able to probe Bjorken- x values as low as 10^{-6} for perturbative values of Q^2 . At low values of x various phenomena may occur which go beyond the standard collinear perturbative description based on DGLAP evolution. Since the seminal works of Balitsky, Fadin, Kuraev and Lipatov [138–140] it has been known that, at large values of centre-of-mass energy \sqrt{s} or, to be more precise, in the Regge limit, there are large logarithms of energy which need to be resummed. Thus, even at low values of the strong coupling α_s , logarithms of energy $\ln s$ may be sufficiently large, such that terms like $(\alpha_s \ln s)^n$ will start to dominate the cross section.

³It shall be noted, that event shape observables in NC DIS can be defined in the laboratory rest frame or the Breit frame.

The calculation of scattering amplitudes in the high-energy limit and the resummation of $(\alpha_s \ln s)^n$ series in the leading logarithmic order was performed in [138–140] and it resulted in the famous BFKL evolution equation. This small x evolution equation, written for the so-called gluon Green’s function or the unintegrated gluon density, is a differential equation in $\ln 1/x$. An important property of this equation is that it keeps the transverse momenta unordered along the gluon cascade. This has to be contrasted with DGLAP evolution which is differential in the hard scale Q^2 and relies on the strong ordering in the transverse momenta of the exchanged partons in the parton cascade. The solution to the BFKL equation is a gluon density which grows sharply with decreasing x , as a power i.e. $\sim x^{-\omega_{IP}}$, where ω_{IP} is the hard Pomeron intercept, and in the leading logarithmic approximation equals $\frac{N_c \alpha_s}{\pi} 4 \ln 2$, which gives a value of about 0.5 for typical values of the strong coupling. The leading logarithmic (LLx) result yielded a growth of the gluon density which was too steep for the experimental data at HERA. The next-to-leading logarithmic (NLLx) calculation performed in the late 90s [141, 142] resulted in large negative corrections to the LLx value of the hard Pomeron intercept and yielded some instabilities in the cross section [143–147].

The appearance of the large negative corrections at NLLx motivated the search for the appropriate resummation which would stabilize the result. It was understood very early that the large corrections which appear in BFKL at NLLx are mostly due to the kinematics [148–150] as well as DGLAP terms and the running of the strong coupling. First attempts at combining the BFKL and DGLAP dynamics together with the proper kinematics [151] yielded encouraging results, and allowed a description of HERA data on structure functions with good accuracy. The complete resummation program was developed in a series of works [152–165]. In these works the resummation for the gluon Green’s function and the splitting functions was developed.

The low- x resummation was recently applied to the description of structure function data at HERA using the methodology of NNPDF [166]. It was demonstrated that the resummed fits provide a better description of the structure function data than the pure DGLAP based fits at fixed NN order. In particular, it was shown that the χ^2 of the fits does not vary appreciably when more small x data are included in the case of the fits which include the effects of the small x resummation. On the other hand, the fits based on NNLO DGLAP evolution exhibit a worsening of their quality in the region of low x and low to moderate values of Q^2 . This indicates that there is some tension in the fixed order fits based on DGLAP, and that resummation alleviates it. In addition, it was shown that the description of the longitudinal structure function F_L from HERA data is improved in the fits with the small x resummation. This analysis suggests that the small x resummation effects are indeed visible in the HERA kinematic region. Such effects will be strongly magnified at the LHeC, which probes values of x more than one order of magnitude lower than HERA. The NNPDF group also performed simulation of the structure functions F_2 and F_L with and without resummation in the LHeC range as well as for the next generation electron-hadron collider FCC-eh [166]. The predictions for the structure functions as a function of x for fixed values of Q^2 are shown in Figs. 3.25.

The simulations were done using APFEL [167] together with the HELL package [168] which implements the small x resummation. From Fig. 3.25 it is clear that LHeC will have much higher sensitivity to discriminate between fixed order and resummed scenarios than the HERA collider, with even better discrimination at the FCC-eh. The differences between the central values for the two predictions are of the order of 15% for the case of F_2 and this is much larger than the projected error bar on the reduced cross section or structure function F_2 which could be measured at LHeC. For comparison, the simulated pseudodata for F_2 are shown together with the expected experimental uncertainties. The total uncertainties of the simulated pseudodata are at the few percent level at most, and are therefore much smaller than the uncertainties

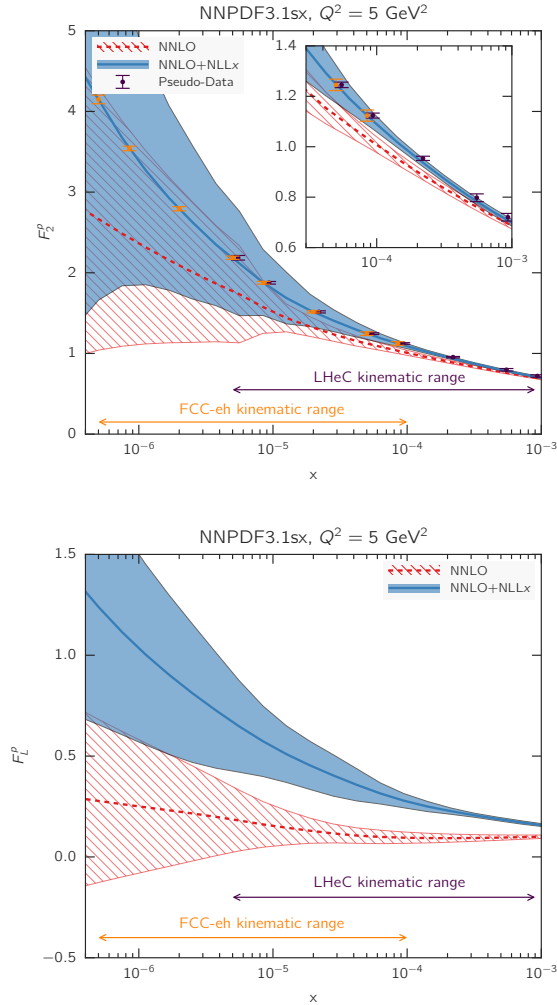


Figure 3.25: Predictions for the F_2 and F_L structure functions using the NNPDF3.1sx NNLO and NNLO+NLLx fits at $Q^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$ for the kinematics of the LHeC and FCC-eh. In the case of F_2 , we also show the expected total experimental uncertainties based on the simulated pseudo-data, assuming the NNLO+NLLx values as the central prediction. A small offset has been applied to the LHeC pseudo-data as some of the values of x overlap with the FCC-eh pseudo-data points. The inset in the left plot shows a magnified view in the kinematic region $x > 3 \times 10^{-5}$, corresponding to the reach of HERA data. Figure taken from Ref. [166].

coming from the PDFs in most of the kinematic range.

It is evident that fits to the LHeC data will have power to discriminate between the different frameworks. In the right plot in Fig. 3.25, the predictions for the longitudinal structure function are shown. We see that in the case of the F_L structure function, the differences between the fixed order and resummed predictions are even larger, consistently over the entire range of x . This indicates the importance of the measurement of the longitudinal structure function F_L which can provide further vital constraints on the QCD dynamics in the low x region due to its sensitivity to the gluon density in the proton.

To further illustrate the power of a high energy DIS collider like the LHeC in exploring the dynamics at low x , fits which include the simulated data were performed. The NNLO+NLLx resummed calculation was used to obtain the simulated pseudodata, both for the LHeC, in a scenario of a 60 GeV electron beam on a 7 TeV proton beam as well as in the case of the FCC-eh scenario with a 50 TeV proton beam. All the experimental uncertainties for the pseudodata have been added in quadrature. Next, fits were performed to the DIS HERA as well as LHeC and FCC-eh pseudodata using the theory with and without the resummation at low x . Hadronic data like jet, DY or top, were not included for this analysis but, as demonstrated in [166], these data do not have much of the constraining power at low x , and therefore the results of the analysis at low x are independent of the additional non-DIS data sets. The quality of the fits characterized by the χ^2 was markedly worse when the NNLO DGLAP framework was used to fit the HERA data and the pseudodata from LHeC and/or FCC-eh than was the case with resummation. To be precise, the χ^2 per degree of freedom for the HERA data set was equal to 1.22 for the NNLO fit, and 1.07 for the resummed fit. For the case of the LHeC/FCC-eh the χ^2 per degree of freedom was equal to 1.71/2.72 and 1.22/1.34 for NNLO and NNLO+resummation fits, respectively. These results demonstrate the huge discriminatory power of the new DIS machines between the DGLAP and resummed frameworks, and the large sensitivity to the low x region while simultaneously probing low to moderate Q^2 values.

In Fig. 3.26 the comparison of the gluon and quark distributions from the NNLO + NLLx fits is shown at $Q = 100$ GeV as a function of x , with and without including the simulated pseudodata from LHeC as well as FCC-eh. The large differences at large x are due to the fact that only DIS data were included in the fits, and not the hadronic data. The central values of the extracted PDFs using only HERA or using HERA and the simulated pseudodata coincide with each other, but a large reduction in uncertainty is visible when the new data are included. The uncertainties from the fits based on the HERA data only increase sharply already at $x \sim 10^{-4}$. On the other hand, including the pseudodata from LHeC and/or FCC-eh can extend this regime by order(s) of magnitude down in x . Furthermore, fits without resummation, based only on NNLO DGLAP, were performed to the HERA data and the pseudodata. We see that in this case the extracted gluon and singlet quark densities differ significantly from the fits using the NNLO+NLLx. Already at $x = 10^{-4}$ the central values of the gluon differ by 10% and at $x = 10^{-5}$, which is the LHeC regime, the central values for the gluon differ by 15%. This difference is much larger than the precision with which the gluon can be extracted from the DIS data, which is of the order of $\sim 1\%$.

The presented analysis demonstrates that the fixed order prediction based on the DGLAP evolution would likely fail to describe accurately the structure function data in the new DIS machines and that in that regime new dynamics including resummation are mandatory for quantitative predictions. Therefore, the LHeC machine has an unprecedented potential to pin down the details of the QCD dynamics at low values of Bjorken x .

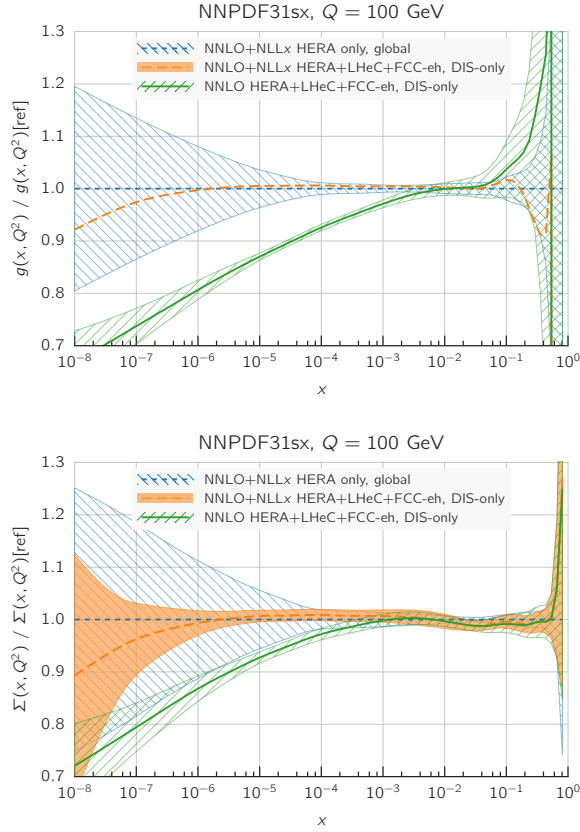


Figure 3.26: Comparison between the gluon (left plot) and the quark singlet (right plot) PDFs in the NNPDF3.1sx NNLO+NNLx fits without (blue hatched band) and with the LHeC+FCC-eh pseudo-data (orange band) on inclusive structure functions. For completeness, we also show the results of the corresponding NNPDF3.1sx NNLO fit with LHeC+FCC-eh pseudo-data (green hatched band). Figure taken from Ref. [166].

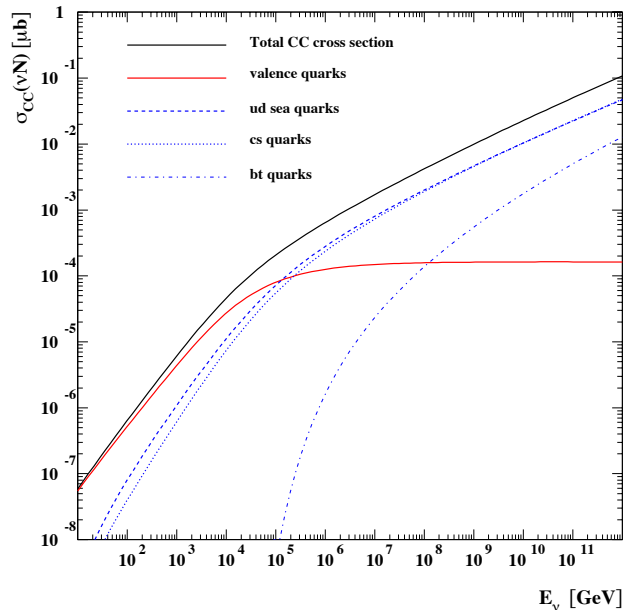


Figure 3.27: Charged current cross section for the neutrino - nucleon interaction on an isoscalar target as a function of neutrino energy. The total CC cross section is broken down into several contributions due to valence, up-down, strange-charm and bottom-top quarks. The calculation was based on Ref. [171].

Synergies with ultrahigh energy neutrino and astroparticle physics

The small- x region probed by the LHeC is also very important in the context of ultra-high energy neutrino physics and astroparticle physics. Highly energetic neutrinos provide a unique window into the Universe, due to their weak interaction with matter, for a review see for example [169]. They can travel long distances from distant sources, undeflected by the magnetic fields inside and in between galaxies, and thus provide complementary information to cosmic rays, gamma rays and gravitational wave signals. The IceCube observatory on Antarctica [170] is sensitive to neutrinos with energies from 100 GeV up (above 10 GeV with the use of their Deep Core detector). Knowledge about low- x physics becomes indispensable in two contexts: neutrino interactions and neutrino production. At energies beyond the TeV scale the dominant part of the cross section is due to the neutrino DIS CC and NC interaction with the hadronic targets [169].

In Fig. 3.27 we show the charged current neutrino cross section as a function of the neutrino energy for an isoscalar target (in the laboratory frame where the target is at rest), using a calculation [171] based on the resummed model in [151]. We see that at energies below ~ 50 TeV the cross section grows roughly linearly with energy, and in this region it is dominated by contributions from the large- x valence region. Beyond that energy the neutrino cross section grows slower, roughly as a power $\sim E_\nu^\lambda$ with $\lambda \simeq 0.3$. This high energy behaviour is totally controlled by the small- x behavior of the parton distributions. The dominance of the sea contributions to the cross section is clearly seen in Fig. 3.27. To illustrate more precisely the contributing

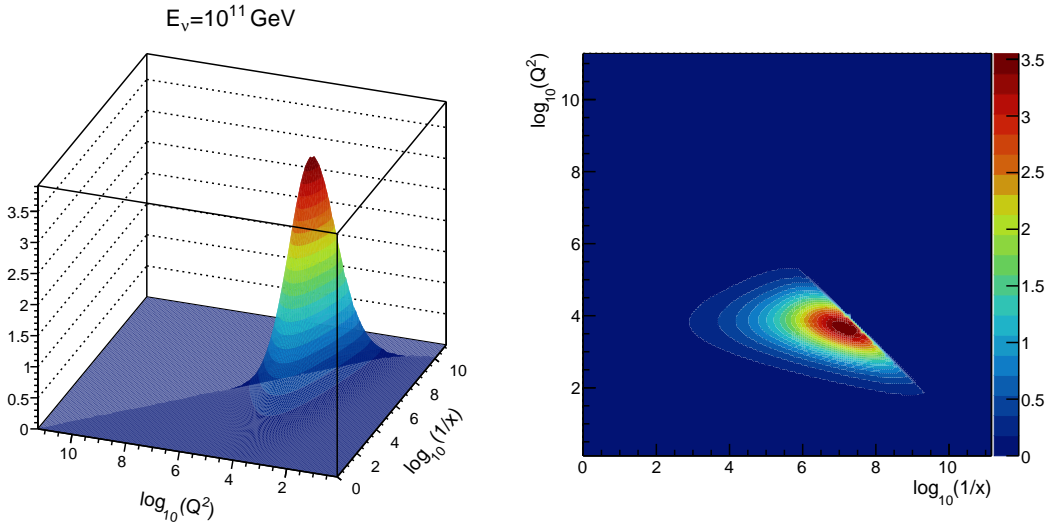


Figure 3.28: Differential charged current neutrino cross section $10^5 \cdot xQ^2 d\sigma^{CC}/dx dQ^2$ [nb] as a function of Q^2 and x for fixed neutrino energy $E_\nu = 10^{11}$ GeV. Left: surface plot; right: contour plot.

values of x and Q^2 , in Fig. 3.28 we show the differential cross section for the CC interaction $xQ^2 d\sigma^{CC}/dx dQ^2$ for a neutrino energy $E_\nu = 10^{11}$ GeV (in the frame where the hadronic target is at rest). We see a clear peak of the cross section at roughly a value of $Q^2 = M_W^2$ and an x value

$$x \simeq \frac{M_W^2}{2ME_\nu}, \quad (3.5)$$

which in this case is about 3×10^{-8} . We note that IceCube extracted the DIS cross section from neutrino observations [172] in the region of neutrino energies 10 – 1000 TeV. The extraction is consistent, within the large error bands, with the predictions based on the QCD, like those illustrated in Fig. 3.27. It is important to note that the IceCube extraction is limited to these energies by the statistics due to the steeply falling flux of neutrinos at high energy. We thus see that the neutrino interaction cross section at high energies is sensitive to a region which is currently completely unconstrained by existing precision DIS data.

Another instance where dynamics at low x are crucial for neutrino physics is in understanding the mechanisms of ultra-high energy neutrino production. The neutrinos are produced in interactions which involve hadrons, either in γp or in pp interactions. They emerge as decay products of pions, kaons and charmed mesons, and possibly beauty mesons if the energy is high enough [173]. For example, in the atmosphere neutrinos are produced in the interactions of the highly energetic cosmic rays with nitrogen and oxygen nuclei. The lower energy part of the atmospheric neutrino spectrum, up to about 100 TeV or so, is dominated by the decay of pions and kaons. This is called the conventional atmospheric neutrino flux. Above that energy the neutrino flux is dominated by the decay of the shorter-lived charmed mesons. Thus, this part of the neutrino flux is called the prompt-neutrino flux. The reason why the prompt-neutrino flux dominates at high energies is precisely related to the life-time of the intermediate mesons (and also baryons like Λ_c). The longer lived pions and kaons have a high probability of interacting before they decay, thus degrading their energy and leading to a steeply falling neutrino flux. The cross section for the production of charmed mesons is smaller than that for pions and kaons, but the charmed mesons D^\pm, D^0, D_s and baryon Λ_c live shorter than pions and kaons, and thus decay prior to any interaction. Thus, at energies about 100 TeV the prompt neutrino flux will dominate over the conventional atmospheric neutrino flux. Therefore, the knowledge of this part

of the spectrum is essential as it provides a background for the sought-after astrophysical neutrinos [174]. Charmed mesons in high energy hadron-hadron interactions are produced through gluon-gluon fusion into $c\bar{c}$ pairs, where one gluon carries rather large x and the other one carries very small x . Since the scales are small, of the order of the charm masses, the values of the longitudinal momentum fractions involved are also very small and thus the knowledge of the parton distributions in this region is essential [175]. The predictions for the prompt neutrino flux become extremely sensitive to the behaviour of the gluon distribution at low x (and low Q^2), where novel QCD phenomena like resummation as well as gluon saturation are likely to occur [176].

Finally, the low- x dynamics will become even more important at the HL-LHC and FCC hadron colliders. With increasing centre-of-mass energy, hadron colliders will probe values of x previously unconstrained by HERA data. It is evident that all the predictions in pp interactions at high energy will heavily rely on the PDF extrapolations to the small x region which carry large uncertainties. As discussed in detail in this section, resummation will play an increasingly important role in the low x region of PDFs. A precision DIS machine is thus an indispensable tool for constraining the QCD dynamics at low x with great precision as well as for providing complementary information and independent measurements to hadronic colliders.

3.2.3 Low x and the Longitudinal Structure Function F_L

DIS Cross Section and the Challenge to Access F_L

The inclusive, deep inelastic electron-proton scattering cross section at low $Q^2 \ll M_Z^2$,

$$\frac{Q^4 x}{2\pi\alpha^2 Y_+} \cdot \frac{d^2\sigma}{dx dQ^2} = \sigma_r \simeq F_2(x, Q^2) - f(y) \cdot F_L(x, Q^2) = F_2 \cdot \left(1 - f(y) \frac{R}{1+R}\right) \quad (3.6)$$

is defined by two proton structure functions, F_2 and F_L , with $y = Q^2/sx$, $Y_+ = 1 + (1-y)^2$ and $f(y) = y^2/Y_+$. The cross section may also be expressed [177] as a sum of two contributions, $\sigma_r \propto (\sigma_T + \epsilon\sigma_L)$, referring to the transverse and longitudinal polarisation state of the exchanged boson, with ϵ characterising the ratio of the longitudinal to the transverse polarisation. The ratio of the longitudinal to transverse cross sections is termed

$$R(x, Q^2) = \frac{\sigma_L}{\sigma_T} = \frac{F_L}{F_2 - F_L}, \quad (3.7)$$

which is related to F_2 and F_L as given above. Due to the positivity of the cross sections $\sigma_{L,T}$ one observes that $F_L \leq F_2$. The reduced cross section σ_r , Eq. (3.6), is therefore a direct measure of F_2 , apart from a limited region of high y where a contribution of F_L may be sizeable. To leading order, for spin 1/2 particles, one expected $R = 0$. The initial measurements of R at SLAC [178, 179] showed that R was indeed small, $R \simeq 0.18$, which was taken as evidence for quarks to carry spin 1/2.

The task to measure F_L thus requires to precisely measure the inclusive DIS cross section near to $y = 1$ and to then disentangle the two structure functions by exploiting the $f(y) = y^2/Y_+$ variation which depends on x , Q^2 and s . By varying the cms beam energy, s , one can disentangle F_2 and F_L obtaining independent measurements at each common, fixed point of x, Q^2 . This is particularly challenging not only because the F_L part is small, calling for utmost precision, but also because it requires to measure at high y . The inelasticity $y = 1 - E'/E_e$, however, is large only for scattered electron energies E' much smaller than the electron beam energy E_e ,

for example $E' = 2.7 \text{ GeV}$ for $y = 0.9$ at HERA⁴. In the region where E' is a few GeV only, the electron identification becomes a major problem and the electromagnetic ($\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$) and hadronic backgrounds, mainly from unrecognised photo-production, rise strongly.

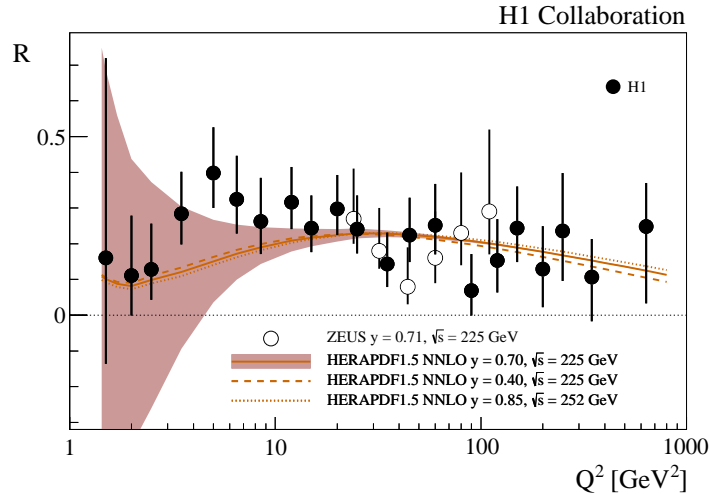


Figure 3.29: Measurement of the structure function ratio $R = F_L / (F_2 - F_L)$ by H1 (solid points) and ZEUS (open circles), from a variation of proton beam energy in the final half year of HERA operation. The curve represents an NNLO QCD fit analysis of the other HERA data. This becomes uncertain for Q^2 below 10 GeV^2 where the Q^2 dependence of F_2 at HERA does not permit an accurate determination of the gluon density which dominates the prediction on F_L .

The history and achievements on F_L , the role of HERA and the prospects as sketched in the CDR of the LHeC, were summarised in detail in [44]. The measurement of F_L at HERA [180] was given very limited time and it collected about 5.9 and 12.2 pb^{-1} of data at reduced beam energies which were analysed together with about 100 pb^{-1} at nominal HERA energies. The result may well be illustrated with the data obtained on the ratio $R(x, Q^2)$ shown in Fig. 3.29. To good approximation, $R(x, Q^2)$ is a constant which was determined as $R = 0.23 \pm 0.04$, in good agreement with the SLAC values of $R \simeq 0.18$ despite the hugely extended kinematic range. The rather small variation of R towards small x , at fixed $y = Q^2/sx$, may appear to be astonishing as one observed F_2 to strongly rise towards low x . A constant R of e.g. 0.25 means that $F_2 = (1 + R)F_L/R$ is five times larger than F_L , and they rise together, as they have a common origin, the rise of the gluon density. This can be understood in approximations to the DGLAP expression of the Q^2 derivative of F_2 and the so-called Altarelli-Martinelli relation of F_L to the parton densities [181, 182], see the discussion in [44]. The resulting H1 value also obeyed the condition, $R \leq 0.37$, which had been obtained in a rigorous attempt to derive the dipole model for inelastic DIS [183].

Parton Evolution at Low x

Parton distributions are to be extracted from experiment as their x dependence and flavour sharing are not predicted in QCD. They acquire a particular meaning through the theoretical prescription of their kinematic evolution. “PDFs”, as they are frequently used for LHC analyses, are predominantly defined through the now classic DGLAP formalism, in which the Q^2

⁴The nominal electron beam energy E_e at the LHeC is doubled as compared to HERA. Ideally one would like to vary the proton beam energy in an F_L measurement at the LHeC, which yet would affect the hadron collider operation. In the present study it was therefore considered to lower E_e which may be done independently of the LHC.

dependence of parton distributions is regulated by splitting functions while the DIS cross section, determined by the structure functions, is calculable by folding the PDFs with coefficient functions. Deep inelastic scattering is known to be the most suited process to extract PDFs from the experiment, for which the HERA collider has so far delivered the most useful data. Through factorisation theorems the PDFs are considered to be universal such that PDFs extracted in ep DIS shall be suited to describe for example Drell-Yan scattering cross sections in pp at the LHC. This view has been formulated to third order pQCD already and been quite successful in the interpretation of LHC measurements, which by themselves also constrain PDFs in parton-parton scattering sub-processes.

However, the question has long been posed about the universal validity of the DGLAP formalism, especially for the region of small Bjorken x where logarithms $\propto \ln(1/x)$ become very sizeable. This feature of the perturbation expansion is expected to significantly modify the splitting functions. This in turn changes the theory underlying the physics of parton distributions, and predictions for the LHC and its successor will correspondingly have to be altered. This mechanism, for an equivalent Q^2 of a few GeV^2 , is illustrated in Fig. 3.30, taken from [42]. It shows the x dependence of the gluon-gluon and the quark-gluon splitting functions, P_{gg} and P_{qg} , calculated in DGLAP QCD. It is observed that at NNLO P_{gg} strongly decreases towards small x , becoming smaller than P_{qg} for x below 10^{-4} . Resummation of the large $\ln(1/x)$ terms, see [42], here performed to next-to-leading log x , restores the dominance of the gg splitting over the qg one. Consequently, the gluon distribution in the resummed theory exceeds the one derived in pure DGLAP. While this observation has been supported by the HERA data, it yet relies on

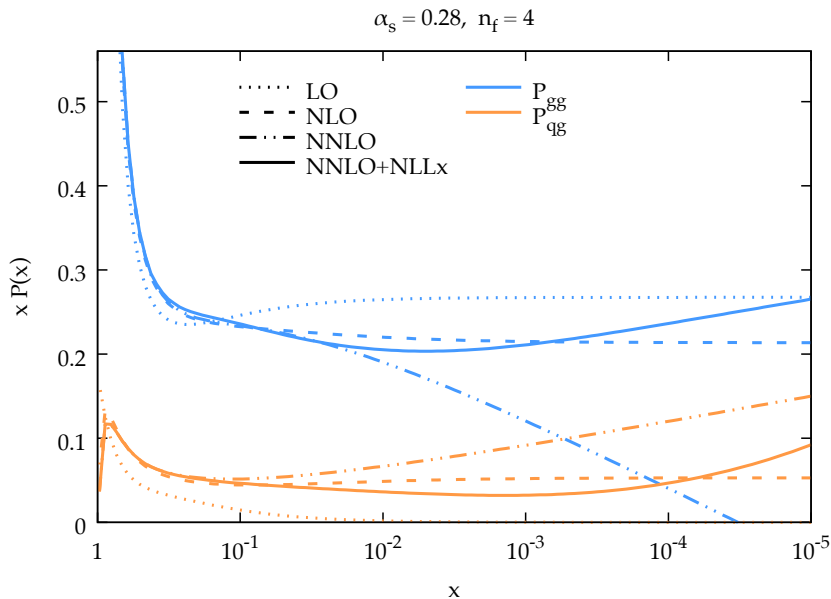


Figure 3.30: Calculation of splitting functions P_{gg} (top, blue) and P_{qg} (bottom, brown) in resummed NNLO (solid) as compared to non-resummed calculations at LO (dotted), NLO (dashed) and NNLO (dashed-dotted) as functions of x for $n_f = 4$ at a large value of α_s corresponding to a Q^2 of a few GeV^2 , from [42]. The resummed calculation is seen to restore the dominance of P_{gg} over P_{qg} as x becomes small (towards the right side), which is violated at NNLO.

limited kinematic coverage and precision. The LHeC will examine this in detail, at a hugely extended range and is thus expected to resolve the long known question about the validity of the BFKL evolution and the transition from DGLAP to BFKL as x decreases while Q^2 remains large enough for pQCD to apply.

Kinematics of Higgs Production at the LHC

The clarification of the evolution and the accurate and complete determination of the parton distributions is of direct importance for the LHC. This can be illustrated with the kinematics of Higgs production at HL-LHC which is dominated by gluon-gluon fusion. With the luminosity upgrade, the detector acceptance is being extended into the forward region to pseudorapidity values of $|\eta| = 4$, where $\eta = \ln \tan \theta/2$ is a very good approximation of the rapidity. In Drell-Yan scattering of two partons with Bjorken x values of $x_{1,2}$ these are related to the rapidity via the relation $x_{1,2} = \exp(\pm\eta) \cdot M/\sqrt{s}$ where $\sqrt{s} = 2E_p$ is the cms energy and M the mass of the produced particle. It is interesting to see that $\eta = \pm 4$ corresponds to $x_1 = 0.5$ and $x = 0.00016$ for the SM Higgs boson of mass $M = 125$ GeV. Consequently, Higgs physics at the HL-LHC will depend on understanding PDFs at high x , a challenge resolved by the LHeC too, and on clarifying the evolution at small x . At the FCC-hh, in its 100 TeV energy version, the small x value for $\eta = 4$ will be as low as $2 \cdot 10^{-5}$. Both the laws of QCD and the resulting phenomenology of particle production at the HL-LHC and its successor demand to clarify the evolution of the parton contents at small x as a function of the resolution scale Q^2 . This concerns in particular the unambiguous, accurate determination of the gluon distribution, which dominates the small x parton densities and as well the production of the Higgs boson in pp scattering.

Indications for Resummation in H1 F_L Data

The simultaneous measurement of the two structure functions F_2 and F_L is the cleanest way to establish new parton dynamics at low x . This holds because their independent constraints on the dominating gluon density at low x ought to lead to consistent results. In other words, one may constrain all partons with a complete PDF analysis of the inclusive cross section in the kinematic region where its F_L part is negligible and confront the F_L measurement with this result. A significant deviation from F_L data signals the necessity to introduce new, non-DGLAP physics in the theory of parton evolution, especially at small x . The salient value of the F_L structure function results from its inclusive character enabling a clean theoretical treatment as has early on been recognised [181, 182]. This procedure has recently been illustrated [42] using the H1 data on F_L [184] which are the only accurate data from HERA at smallest x . The result is shown in Fig.3.31. One observes the trend described above: the resummed prediction is higher than the pure NNLO curve, and the description at smallest x , below $5 \cdot 10^{-4}$, appears to be improved. The difference between the two curves increases as x decreases. However, due to the peculiarity of the DIS kinematics, which relates x to Q^2/sy , one faces the difficulty of Q^2 decreasing with x at fixed s for large $y \geq 0.6$, which is the region of sensitivity to F_L . Thus one not only wishes to improve substantially the precision of the F_L data but also to increase substantially s in order to avoid the region of non-perturbative behaviour while testing theory at small x . This is the double and principal advantage which the LHeC offers - a much increased precision and more than a decade of extension of kinematic range.

The Longitudinal Structure Function at the LHeC

Following the method described above, inclusive cross section data have been simulated for $E_p = 7$ TeV and three electron beam energies E_e of 60, 30 and 20 GeV. The assumed integrated luminosity values are 10, 1 and 1 fb^{-1} , respectively. These are about a factor of a hundred larger than the corresponding H1 luminosities. At large y , the kinematics is best reconstructed using the scattered electron energy, E'_e , and polar angle, θ_e . The experimental methods to calibrate the

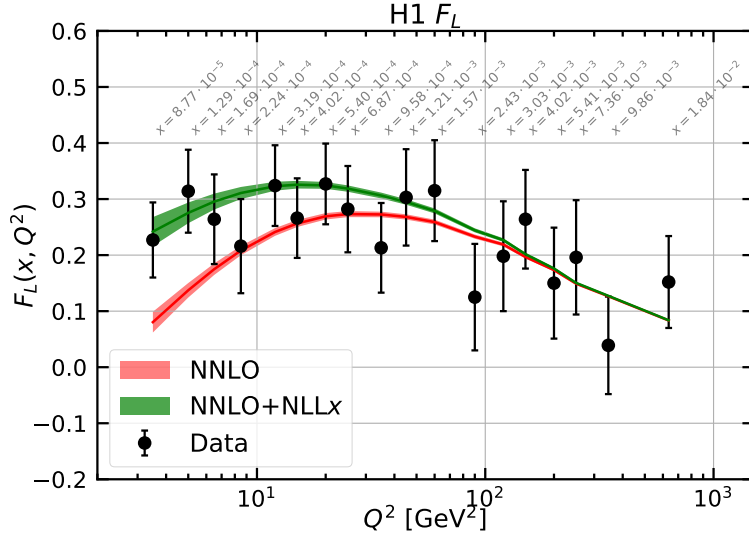


Figure 3.31: Measurement of the longitudinal structure function F_L , obtained as an average results over a number of x dependent points at fixed Q^2 , plotted vs Q^2 with the corresponding x values indicated in grey. Red curve: NNLO fit to the H1 cross section data; green curve: NNLO fit including NLLx resummation, from [42].

angular and energy measurements are described in [180]. For the present study similar results are assumed: for E'_e a scale uncertainty of 0.5% at small y (compared to 0.2% with H1) rising linearly to 1.2%, in the range of $y = 0.4$ to 0.9. For the polar angle, given the superior quality of the anticipated LHeC Silicon tracker as compared to the H1 tracker, it is assumed that θ_e may be calibrated to 0.2 mrad, as compared to 0.5 mrad at H1. The residual photo-production background contamination is assumed to be 0.5% at largest y , twice better than with H1. There is further an assumption made on the radiative corrections which are assumed to be uncertain to 1% and treated as a correlated error. The main challenge is to reduce the uncorrelated uncertainty, which here was varied between 0.2 and 0.5%. This is about ten to three times more accurate than the H1 result which may be a reasonable assumption: the hundred fold increase in statistics sets a totally different scale to the treatment of uncorrelated uncertainties, as from imperfect simulations, trigger efficiency or Monte Carlo statistics. It is very difficult to transport previous results to the modern and future conditions. It could, however, be an important fix point if one knows that the most precise measurement of Z boson production by ATLAS at the LHC had a total systematic error of just 0.5% [185].

The method here used is that of a simple straight-line fit of $\sigma_r = F_2 - f(y)F_L$ (Eq. (3.6)), in which F_L is obtained as the slope of the $f(y)$ dependence⁵. The predictions for F_2 and F_L were obtained using LO formulae for the PDF set of MSTW 2008. In this method any common factor does not alter the absolute uncertainty of F_L . This also implies that the estimated absolute error on F_L is independent of whether F_L is larger or smaller than here assumed. For illustration, F_L was scaled by a factor of two. Since $f(y) \propto y^2$, the accuracy is optimised with a non-linear choice of lowered beam energies. The fit takes into account cross section uncertainties and their correlations, calculated numerically following [187], by considering each source separately and adding the results of the various correlated sources to one correlated systematic error which is added quadratically to the statistical and uncorrelated uncertainties to obtain one total error.

⁵Better results were achieved by H1 using a χ^2 minimisation technique, see [186], which for the rough estimate on the projected F_L uncertainty at the LHeC has not been considered.

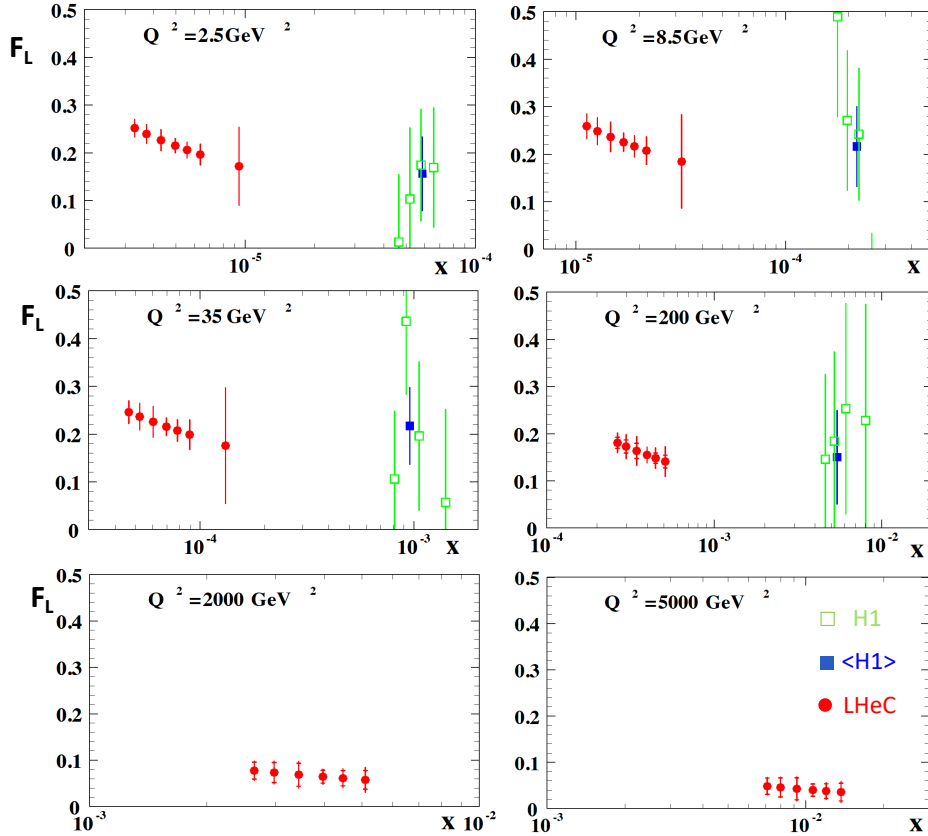


Figure 3.32: H1 measurement and LHeC simulation of data on the longitudinal structure function $F_L(x, Q^2)$. Green: Data by H1, for selected Q^2 intervals from [184]; Blue: Weighted average of the (green) data points at fixed Q^2 ; Red: Simulated data from an F_L measurement at the LHeC with varying beam energy, see text. The H1 error bars denote the total measurement uncertainty. The LHeC inner error bars represent the data statistics, visible only for $Q^2 \geq 200 \text{ GeV}^2$, while the outer error bars are the total uncertainty. Since the F_L measurement is sensitive only at high values of inelasticity, $y = Q^2/sx$, each Q^2 value is sensitive only to a certain limited interval of x values which increase with Q^2 . Thus each diagram has a different x axis. The covered x range similarly varies with s , i.e. H1 x values are roughly twenty times larger at a given Q^2 . There are no H1 data for high Q^2 , beyond 1000 GeV^2 , see [184].

The result is illustrated in Fig. 3.32 presenting the x dependent results, for some selected Q^2 values, of both H1, with their average over x , and the prospect LHeC results. It reflects the huge extension of kinematic range, towards low x and high Q^2 by the LHeC as compared to HERA. It also illustrates the striking improvement in precision which the LHeC promises to provide. The F_L measurement will cover an x range from $2 \cdot 10^{-6}$ to above $x = 0.01$. Surely, when comparing with Fig. 3.31, one can safely expect that any non-DGLAP parton evolution would be discovered with such data, in their combination with a very precise F_2 measurement.

A few comments are in order on the variation of the different error components with the kinematics, essentially Q^2 since the whole F_L sensitivity is restricted to high y which in turn for each Q^2 defines a not wide interval of x values covered. One observes in Fig. 3.32 that the precision is spoiled towards large $x \propto 1/y$, see e.g. the result for $Q^2 = 8.5 \text{ GeV}^2$. The assumptions on the integrated luminosity basically define a Q^2 range for the measurement. For example, the statistical uncertainty for $Q^2 = 4.5 \text{ GeV}^2$ and $x = 10^{-5}$, a medium x value at this Q^2 interval, is only 0.6% (or 0.001 in absolute for $F_L = 0.22$). At $Q^2 = 2000 \text{ GeV}^2$ it rises to 21% (or 0.012 for $F_L = 0.064$). One thus can perform the F_L measurement at the LHeC, with a focus

on only small x , with much less luminosity than the 1 fb^{-1} here used. The relative size of the various systematic error sources also varies considerably, which is due to the kinematic relations between angles and energies and their dependence on x and Q^2 . This is detailed in [187]. It implies, for example, that the 0.2 mrad polar angle scale uncertainty becomes the dominant error at small Q^2 , which is the backward region where the electron is scattered near the beam axis in the direction of the electron beam. For large Q^2 , however, the electron is more centrally scattered and the θ_e calibration requirement may be more relaxed. The E'_e scale uncertainty has a twice smaller effect than that due to the θ_e calibration at lowest Q^2 but becomes the dominant correlated systematic error source at high Q^2 . The here used overall assumptions on scale uncertainties are therefore only rough first approximations and would be replaced by kinematics and detector dependent requirements when this measurement may be pursued. These could also exploit the cross calibration opportunities which result from the redundant determination of the inclusive DIS scattering kinematics through both the electron and the hadronic final state. This had been noted very early at HERA times, see [188–190] and was worked out in considerable detail by both H1 and ZEUS using independent and different methods. A feature used by H1 in their F_L measurement includes a number of decays such as $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ and $J/\psi \rightarrow e^+e^-$ for calibrating the low energy measurement or $K_s^0 \rightarrow \pi^+\pi^-$ and $\Lambda \rightarrow p\pi$ for the determination of tracker scales, see [180].

It is obvious that the prospect to measure F_L as presented here is striking. For nearly a decade, Guido Altarelli was a chief theory advisor to the development of the LHeC. In 2011, he publishes an article [186], in honour of Mario Greco, about “The Early Days of QCD (as seen from Rome)” in which he describes one of his main achievements [181], and persistent irritation, regarding the longitudinal structure function, F_L , and its measurement: *.. The present data, recently obtained by the H1 experiment at DESY, are in agreement with our [this] LO QCD prediction but the accuracy of the test is still far from being satisfactory for such a basic quantity.* The LHeC developments had not been rapid enough to let Guido see results of much higher quality on F_L with which the existence of departures from the DGLAP evolution, to high orders pQCD, may be expected to most safely be discovered.

3.2.4 The 3D Structure of the Proton

As is evident from the discussion in the previous sections, the LHeC machine will be able to measure the collinear parton distribution functions with unprecedented accuracy in its extended range of x and Q^2 . Thus, it will provide a new insight into the details of the one-dimensional structure of the proton and nuclei, including novel phenomena at low x . In addition to collinear dynamics, the LHeC opens a new window into proton and nuclear structure by allowing a precise investigation of the partonic structure in more than just the one dimension of the longitudinal momentum. Precision DIS thus gives access to multidimensional aspects of hadron structure. This can be achieved by accurately measuring processes with more exclusive final states like production of jets, semi-inclusive production of hadrons and exclusive processes, in particular the elastic diffractive production of vector mesons and deeply virtual Compton (DVCS) scattering. These processes have the potential to provide information not only on the longitudinal distribution of partons in the proton or nucleus, but also on the dependence of the parton distribution on transverse momenta and momentum transfer. Therefore, future, high precision DIS machines like the LHeC or the Electron Ion Collider (EIC) in the US [191], open a unique window into the details of the 3D structure of hadrons.

The most general quantity that can be defined in QCD that would contain very detailed information about the partonic content of the hadron, is the Wigner distribution [192]. This function

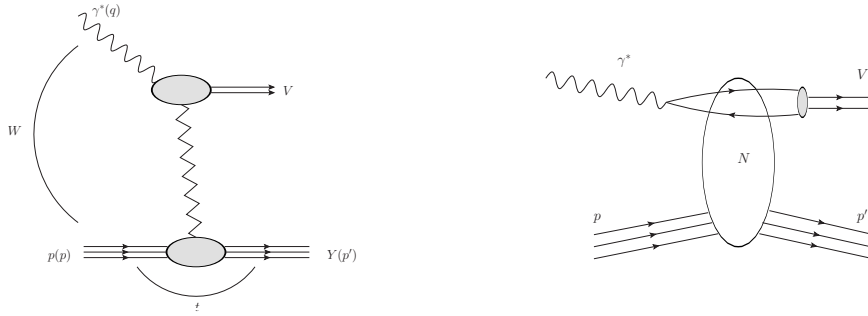


Figure 3.33: Left: diagram for the quasi-elastic production of the vector meson. Right: schematic illustration of the same process, quasi-elastic vector meson production, within the framework of the dipole picture. The initial virtual photon, fluctuates into a quark-antiquark pair which then scatters off the hadronic target and forms the vector meson. The details of the hadronic interaction of the dipole with the target are encoded in the dipole amplitude N .

$W(x, \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{b})$ is a 1+4 dimensional function. One can think of it as the mother or master parton distribution, from which lower-dimensional distributions can be obtained. In the definition of the Wigner function, \mathbf{k} is the transverse momentum of the parton and \mathbf{b} is the 2-dimensional impact parameter, which can be defined as a Fourier conjugate to the momentum transfer of the process. The other, lower dimensional parton distributions can be obtained by integrating out different variables. Thus, transverse momentum dependent (TMD) parton distributions (or unintegrated parton distribution functions) $f_{TMD}(x, \mathbf{k})$ can be obtained by integrating out the impact parameter \mathbf{b} in the Wigner function, while the generalized parton densities (GPD), $f_{GPD}(x, \mathbf{b})$, can be obtained from the Wigner function through the integration over the transverse momentum \mathbf{k} . In the regime of small x , or high energy, a suitable formalism is that of the dipole picture [193–198], where the fundamental quantity which contains the details of the partonic distribution is the dipole amplitude $N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b})$. This object contains the dependence on the impact parameter \mathbf{b} as well as another transverse size \mathbf{r} , the dipole size, which can be related to the transverse momentum of the parton \mathbf{k} through a Fourier transform. The important feature of the dipole amplitude is that it should obey the unitarity limit $N \leq 1$. The dipole amplitude N within this formalism can be roughly interpreted as a Wigner function in the high energy limit, as it contains information about the spatial distribution of the partons in addition to the dependence on the longitudinal momentum fraction x .

Detailed simulations of elastic J/ψ vector meson production were performed for the LHeC kinematic region and beyond [1], using the formalism of the dipole picture. This particular process is shown in Fig. 3.33, left plot. The proton is scattered elastically with momentum transfer t , and the vector meson is produced, which is separated from the final state proton by a rapidity gap. Of particular importance is the measurement of the t slope of this process, since it can be related directly to the impact parameter distribution and is thus sensitive to the transverse variation of the partonic density in the target. The first type of analysis like this, in the context of elastic scattering, was performed by Amaldi and Schubert [199], where it was demonstrated that the Fourier transform of the elastic cross section yields access to the impact parameter profile of the scattering amplitude. This method can be used in the context of vector

meson scattering in DIS, where the transverse distribution of partons, in the perturbative regime, can be extracted through the appropriate Fourier transform [200]. The additional advantage of studying diffractive vector meson production is the fact that the partonic distributions can be studied as a function of the hard scale in this process given by the mass of the vector meson M_V^2 in the photoproduction case or Q^2 (or more precisely a combination of Q^2 and M_V^2) in the case of the diffractive DIS production of vector mesons, as well as the energy W of the photon-proton system available in the process which is closely related to x .

The differential cross section for elastic vector meson production can be expressed in the following form:

$$\frac{d\sigma^{\gamma^* p \rightarrow J/\psi p}}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi} |\mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta)|^2, \quad (3.8)$$

where the amplitude for the process of elastic diffractive vector meson production in the high energy limit, in the dipole picture, is given by

$$\mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta) = \sum_{h\bar{h}} \int d^2\mathbf{r} \int dz \Psi_{h\bar{h}}^*(z, \mathbf{r}, Q) \mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta) \Psi_{h\bar{h}}^V(z, \mathbf{r}). \quad (3.9)$$

In the above formula, $\Psi_{h\bar{h}}^*(z, \mathbf{r}, Q)$ is the photon wave function which describes the splitting of the virtual photon γ^* into a $q\bar{q}$ pair. This wave function can be calculated in perturbative QCD. The function $\Psi_{h\bar{h}}^V(z, \mathbf{r})$ is the wave function of the vector meson. Finally, $\mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta)$ is the dipole amplitude which contains all the information about the interaction of the quark-antiquark dipole with the target. The formula (3.9) can be interpreted as the process of fluctuation of the virtual photon into a $q\bar{q}$ pair, which subsequently interacts with the target through the dipole amplitude \mathcal{N} and then forms the vector meson, given by the amplitude Ψ^V , see Fig. 3.33, right plot. The two integrals in the definition Eq. (3.9) are performed over the dipole size which is denoted by \mathbf{r} , and z which is the longitudinal momentum fraction of the photon carried by the quark. The scattering amplitude depends on the value of the momentum transfer Δ , which is related to the Mandelstam variable $t = -\Delta^2$. The sum is performed over the helicity states of the quark and antiquark.

The dipole amplitude $\mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta)$ can be related to the dipole amplitude in coordinate space through the appropriate Fourier transform

$$N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = \int d^2\Delta e^{i\Delta \cdot \mathbf{b}} \mathcal{N}(x, \mathbf{r}, \Delta). \quad (3.10)$$

We stress that \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{b} are two different transverse sizes here. The dipole size \mathbf{r} is conjugate to the transverse momentum of the partons \mathbf{k} , whereas the impact parameter is roughly the distance between the center of the scattering target to the centre-of-mass of the quark-antiquark dipole and is related to the Fourier conjugate variable, the momentum transfer Δ .

The dipole amplitude $N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b})$ contains rich information about the dynamics of the hadronic interaction. It is a 5-dimensional function and it depends on the longitudinal momentum fraction, and two two-dimensional coordinates. The dependence on the longitudinal momentum fraction is obviously related to the evolution with the centre-of-mass energy of the process, while the dependence on \mathbf{b} provides information about the spatial distribution of the partons in the target. The dipole amplitude is related to the distribution of gluons in impact parameter space. The dipole amplitude has a nice property that its value should be bounded from above by the unitarity requirement $N \leq 1$. The complicated dependence on energy, dipole size and impact parameter of this amplitude can provide a unique insight into the dynamics of QCD, and on the approach to the dense partonic regime. Besides, from Eqs. (3.8), (3.9) and (3.10) it

is evident that the information about the spatial distribution in impact parameter \mathbf{b} is related through the Fourier transform to the dependence of the cross section on the momentum transfer $t = -\Delta^2$.

To see how the details of the distribution, and in particular the approach to unitarity, can be studied through the VM elastic production, calculations based on the dipole model were performed [201], and extended to energies which can be reached at the LHeC as well as the FCC-eh. The parametrisations used in the calculation were the so-called IP-Sat [202,203] and b-CGC [204] models. In both cases the impact parameter dependence has to be modelled phenomenologically. In the IP-Sat model the dipole amplitude has the following form

$$N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = 1 - \exp\left[-\frac{\pi^2 r^2}{2N_c} \alpha_s(\mu^2) xg(x, \mu^2) T_G(b)\right], \quad (3.11)$$

where $xg(x, \mu^2)$ is the collinear gluon density, evolved using LO DGLAP (without quarks), from an initial scale μ_0^2 up to the scale μ^2 set by the dipole size $\mu^2 = \frac{4}{r^2} + \mu_0^2$. $\alpha_s(\mu^2)$ is the strong coupling. The parametrisation of the gluon density at the initial scale μ_0^2 is given by

$$xg(x, \mu_0^2) = A_g x^{-\lambda_g} (1-x)^{5.6}, \quad (3.12)$$

and the impact parameter profile for the gluon by

$$T_G(b) = \frac{1}{2\pi B_G} \exp(-b^2/2B_G). \quad (3.13)$$

An alternative parametrisation is given by the b-CGC model [204] which has the form

$$N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = \begin{cases} N_0 \left(\frac{rQ_s}{2}\right)^{2\gamma_{eff}} & \text{for } rQ_s \leq 2, \\ 1 - \exp(-\mathcal{A} \ln^2(\mathcal{B}rQ_s)) & \text{for } rQ_s > 2. \end{cases} \quad (3.14)$$

Here the effective anomalous dimension γ_{eff} and the saturation scale Q_s of the proton explicitly depend on the impact parameter and are defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_{eff} &= \gamma_s + \frac{1}{\kappa \lambda \ln 1/x} \ln\left(\frac{2}{rQ_s}\right), \\ Q_s(x, b) &= \left(\frac{x_0}{x}\right)^{\lambda/2} \exp\left[-\frac{b^2}{4\gamma_s B_{CGC}}\right] \text{ GeV}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.15)$$

where $\kappa = \chi''(\gamma_s)/\chi'(\gamma_s)$, with $\chi(\gamma)$ being the leading-logarithmic BFKL kernel eigenvalue function [140]. The parameters \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{B} in Eq.(3.14) are determined uniquely from the matching of the dipole amplitude and its logarithmic derivatives at the limiting value of $rQ_s = 2$. The b-CGC model is constructed by smoothly interpolating between two analytically known limiting cases [204], namely the solution of the BFKL equation in the vicinity of the saturation line for small dipole sizes $r < 2/Q_s$, and the solution of the BK equation deep inside the saturation region for large dipole sizes $r > 2/Q_s$.

The parameters μ_0, A_g, λ_g of the IP-Sat model and $N_0, \gamma_s, x_0 \lambda$ of the b-CGC model were fitted to obtain the best description of the inclusive data for the structure function F_2 at HERA. The slope parameters B_g and B_{CGC} , which control the b -dependence in both models, were fitted to obtain the best description of elastic diffractive J/ψ production, in particular its t -dependence, at small values of t .

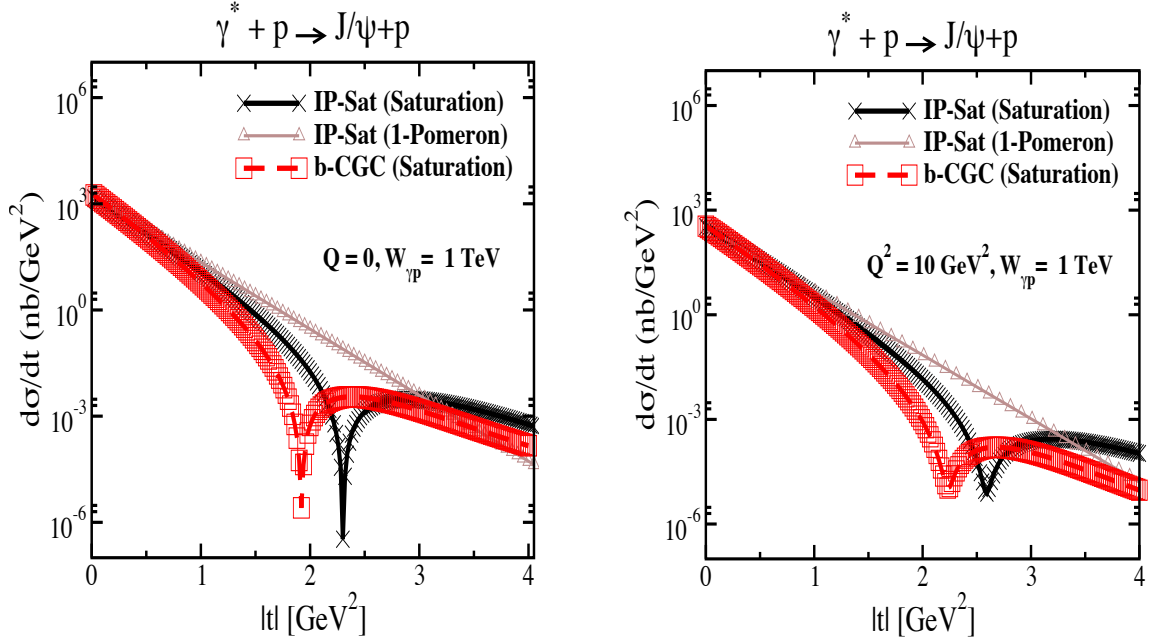


Figure 3.34: Differential cross section for the elastic J/ψ production as a function of $|t|$ within the IP-Sat (saturation), b-CGC and 1-Pomeron models at a fixed $W_{\gamma p} = 1$ TeV, which corresponds to the LHeC kinematics, and for two different values of photon virtuality $Q = 0$ and $Q^2 = 10$ GeV². The thickness of points includes the uncertainties associated with the freedom to choose different values for the charm quark mass within the range $m_c = 1.2 - 1.4$ GeV.

In Figs. 3.34 and 3.35 we show the simulated differential cross section $d\sigma/dt$ as a function of $|t|$ and study its variation with energy and virtuality, and its model dependence. First, in Fig. 3.34 we show the differential cross section as a function of t for fixed energy $W = 1$ TeV, in the case of the photoproduction of J/ψ (left plot) and for the case of DIS with $Q^2 = 10$ GeV² (right plot). The energy W corresponds to the LHeC kinematics. There are three different calculations in each plot, using the IP-sat model, the b-CGC model and the 1-Pomeron approximation. The last one is obtained by keeping just the first non-trivial term in the expansion of the eikonalized formula of the IP-Sat amplitude (3.11). First, let us observe that all three models coincide for very low values of t , where the dependence on t is exponential. This is because for low $|t|$, relatively large values of impact parameter are probed in Eq. (3.9) where the amplitude is small, and therefore the tail in impact parameter is Gaussian in all three cases. Since the Fourier transform of the Gaussian in b is an exponential in t , the result at low t follows. On the other hand, the three scenarios differ significantly for large values of $|t|$. In the case of the 1-Pomeron approximation the dependence is still exponential, without any dips, which is easily understood since the impact parameter profile is perfectly Gaussian in this case. For the two other scenarios, dips in $d\sigma/dt$ as a function in t emerge. They signal the departure from the Gaussian profile in b for small values of b where the system is dense. A similar pattern can be observed when performing the Fourier transform of the Wood-Saxon distribution, which is the typical distribution used for the description of the matter density in nuclei. When Q^2 is increased the pattern of dips also changes. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.34. It is seen that the dips move to higher values of $|t|$ for DIS than for photoproduction. This can be understood from the dipole formula Eq. (3.9) which contains the integral over the dipole size. Larger values of Q^2 select smaller values of dipole size r , where the amplitude is smaller and thus in the dilute regime, where the profile in b is again Gaussian. On the other hand, small scales select large dipole sizes for which the dipole amplitude is larger and thus the saturation effects more prominent, leading

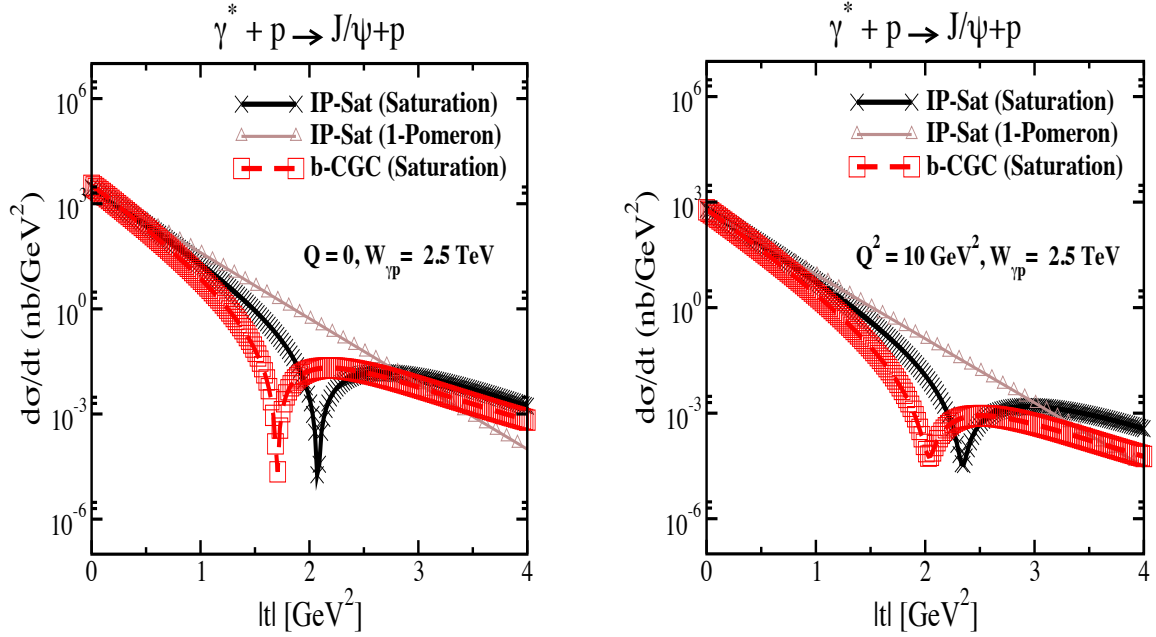


Figure 3.35: Differential cross section for elastic J/ψ production as a function of $|t|$ within the IP-Sat (saturation), b-CGC and 1-Pomeron models at a fixed $W_{\gamma p} = 2.5$ TeV, which corresponds to the region that can be explored by FCC-eh, and for two different values of photon virtuality $Q = 0$ (left plot) and $Q^2 = 10$ GeV² (right plot). The thickness of points includes the uncertainties associated with the freedom to choose different values for the charm quark mass within the range $m_c = 1.2 - 1.4$ GeV .

to the distortion of the impact parameter profile and therefore to the emergence of dips in the differential cross section $d\sigma/dt$ when studied as a function of t .

In the next Fig. 3.35 we show the same calculation but for higher energy $W = 2.5$ TeV, which could be explored in the FCC-eh. In this case we see that the dips move to lower values of $|t|$. This can be easily understood, as with increasing energy the dipole scattering amplitude increases, and thus the dilute-dense boundary shifts to larger values of b , meaning that the deviation from the exponential fall off occurs for smaller values of $|t|$. Similar studies [201] show also the change of the position of the dips with the mass of the vector meson: for lighter vector mesons like ρ, ω, ϕ the dips occur at smaller t than for the heavier vector mesons J/ψ or Υ . We note that, of course, the positions of the dips depend crucially on the details of the models, which are currently not constrained by the existing HERA data. We also note the sizeable uncertainties due to the charm quark mass (the fits to inclusive HERA data from which parameters of the models have been extracted are performed at each fixed value of the charm mass that is then used to compute exclusive J/ψ production).

We thus see that the precise measurement of the t -slope in the elastic production of vector mesons at the LHeC, and its variation with x and scales, provide a unique opportunity to explore the transition between the dilute and dense partonic regimes. As mentioned earlier, elastic diffractive production is one among several different measurements which can be performed to explore the 3D structure of the hadron. Another one is Deeply Virtual Compton Scattering which is a process sensitive to the spatial distribution of quarks inside the hadron. Previous preliminary analyses [1] indicate a huge potential of LHeC for the measurement of DVCS. Another example of a process that could be studied at the LHeC, is diffractive exclusive dijet production. It has been suggested [205] that this process is sensitive to the Wigner function, and that the transverse momentum and spatial distribution of partons can be extracted by measuring this

process. The transverse momentum of jets would be sensitive to the transverse momentum of the participating partons, whereas the momentum transfer of the elastically scattered proton would give a handle on the impact parameter distribution of the partons in the target [206–208], thus giving a possibility to extract information about the Wigner distribution.

So far we have referred to coherent diffraction, i.e., to a scenario in which the proton remains intact after the collision. There also exists incoherent diffraction, where the proton gets excited into some state with the quantum numbers of the proton and separated from the rest of the event by a large rapidity gap. In order to apply the dipole formalism to the incoherent case, see section 4.3.1 where the formulae applicable for both protons and nuclei are shown. Here one must consider a more involved structure of the proton (e.g. as composed by a fixed [209–212] or a growing number with $1/x$ of hot spots [213–215]). As discussed in section 4.3.1, coherent diffraction is sensitive to the gluon distribution in transverse space, while incoherent diffraction is particularly sensitive to fluctuations of the gluon distribution. A prediction of the model with a growing number of hot spots, both in models where this increasing number is implemented by hand [213–215] and in those where it is dynamically generated [212] from a fixed number at larger x , is that the ratio of incoherent to coherent diffraction will decrease with W , and that this decrease is sensitive to the details of the distribution of hot spots. Thus, to the fluctuations of the gluon distribution in transverse space. In order to check these ideas, both the experimental capability to separate coherent from incoherent diffraction and a large lever arm in W , as available at the LHeC, are required.

3.2.5 Inclusive diffraction

An important discovery of HERA was the observation of a large ($\sim 10\%$) fraction of diffractive events in DIS [216,217]. In these events the proton stays intact or dissociates into a state with the proton quantum numbers, despite undergoing a violent, highly energetic collision, and is separated from the rest of the produced particles by a large rapidity gap. In a series of ground-breaking papers (see [218] for a review), the HERA experiments determined the deep inelastic structure of the t -channel exchange in these events in the form of diffractive parton densities.

The precise measurement of diffraction in DIS is of great importance for our understanding of the strong interaction. First, the mechanism through which a composite strongly interacting object interacts perturbatively while keeping colour neutrality offers information about the confinement mechanism. Second, diffraction is known to be highly sensitive to the low- x partonic content of the proton and its evolution with energy and it therefore has considerable promise to reveal deviations from standard linear evolution through higher twist effects or, eventually, non-linear dynamics. Third, it allows checks of basic theory predictions such as the relation between diffraction in ep scattering and nuclear shadowing [219]. Finally, the accurate extraction of diffractive parton distribution functions facilitates tests of the range of validity of perturbative factorisation [220–222]. The potential studies of inclusive diffraction that would be possible at the LHeC are presented here (see [223] for further details). They substantially extend the kinematic coverage of the HERA analyses, leading to much more detailed tests of theoretical ideas than have been possible hitherto. Although we work here at NLO of QCD, it is worth noting that similar analyses in the HERA context have recently extended to NNLO [224].

In Fig. 3.36 we show a diagram depicting a neutral current diffractive deep inelastic event. Charged currents could also be considered and were measured at HERA [225] but with large statistical uncertainties and in a very restricted region of phase space. Although they could be measured at both the LHeC and the FCC-eh with larger statistics and more extended kinematics,

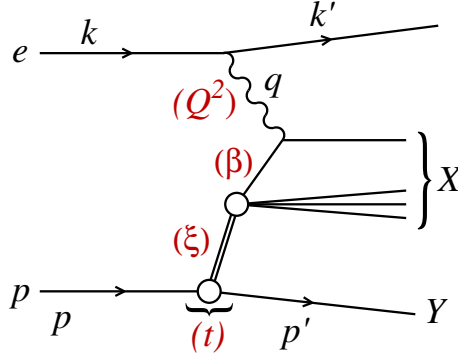


Figure 3.36: A diagram of a diffractive NC event in DIS together with the corresponding variables, in the one-photon exchange approximation. The large rapidity gap is between the system X and the scattered proton (or its low mass excitation) Y .

in this first study we limit ourselves to neutral currents. The incoming electron or positron, with four momentum k , scatters off the proton, with incoming four momentum p , and the interaction proceeds through the exchange of a virtual photon with four-momentum q . The kinematic variables for such an event include the standard deep inelastic variables

$$Q^2 = -q^2, \quad x = \frac{-q^2}{2p \cdot q}, \quad y = \frac{p \cdot q}{p \cdot k}, \quad (3.16)$$

where Q^2 describes the photon virtuality, x is the Bjorken variable and y the inelasticity of the process. In addition, the variables

$$s = (k + p)^2, \quad W^2 = (q + p)^2, \quad (3.17)$$

are the electron-proton centre-of-mass energy squared and the photon-proton centre-of-mass energy squared, respectively. A distinguishing feature of the diffractive event $ep \rightarrow eXY$ is the presence of the large rapidity gap between the diffractive system, characterised by the invariant mass M_X and the final proton (or its low-mass excitation) Y with four momentum p' . In addition to the standard DIS variables listed above, diffractive events are also characterised by an additional set of variables defined as

$$t = (p - p')^2, \quad \xi = \frac{Q^2 + M_X^2 - t}{Q^2 + W^2}, \quad \beta = \frac{Q^2}{Q^2 + M_X^2 - t}. \quad (3.18)$$

In the above t is the squared four-momentum transfer at the proton vertex, ξ (alternatively denoted by x_{IP}) can be interpreted as the momentum fraction of the ‘diffractive exchange’ with respect to the hadron, and β is the momentum fraction of the parton with respect to the diffractive exchange. The two momentum fractions combine to give Bjorken- x , $x = \beta\xi$.

The kinematic range in (β, Q^2, ξ) that we consider at the LHeC is restricted by the following cuts:

- $Q^2 \geq 1.8 \text{ GeV}^2$: due to the fact that the initial distribution for the DGLAP evolution is parametrized at $\mu_0^2 = 1.8 \text{ GeV}^2$. The renormalization and factorisation scales are taken to be equal to Q^2 .
- $\xi < 0.4$: constrained by physical and experimental limitations. This rather high ξ value is an experimental challenge and physically enters the phase-space region where the Pomeron contribution should become negligible compared with sub-leading exchanges. Within the

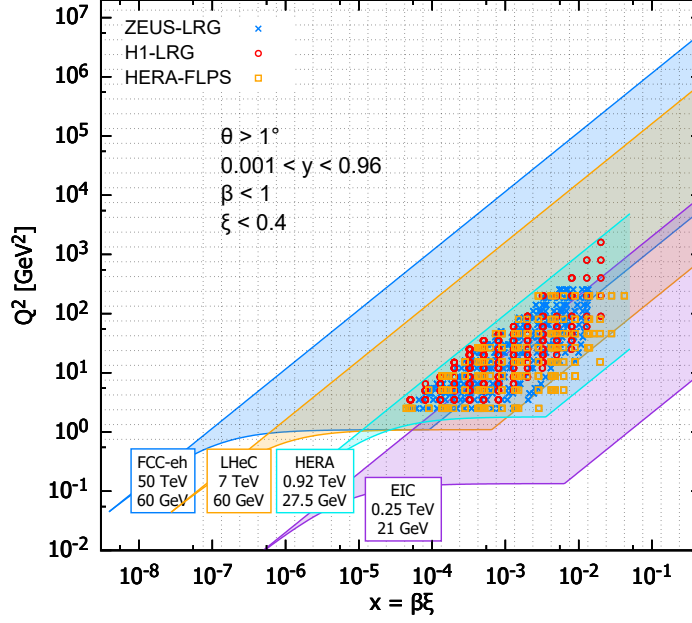


Figure 3.37: Kinematic phase space for inclusive diffraction in (x, Q^2) for the EIC (magenta region), the LHeC (orange region) and the FCC-eh (dark blue region) as compared with the HERA data (light blue region, ZEUS-LRG [226], H1-LRG [227], HERA-FLPS [228]). The acceptance limit for the electron in the detector design has been assumed to be 1° , and we take $\xi < 0.4$.

two-component model, see Eq. (3.23) below, at high ξ the cross-section is dominated by the secondary Reggeon contribution, which is poorly fixed by the HERA data. We present this high ξ (> 0.1) region for illustrative purpose and for the sake of discussion of the fit results below.

In Fig. 3.37 the accessible kinematic range in (x, Q^2) is shown for three machines: HERA, LHeC and FCC-eh. For the LHeC design the range in x is increased by a factor ~ 20 over HERA and the maximum available Q^2 by a factor ~ 100 . The FCC-eh machine would further increase this range with respect to LHeC by roughly one order of magnitude in both x and Q^2 . We also show the EIC kinematic region for comparison. The three different machines are clearly complementary in their kinematic coverage, with LHeC and EIC adding sensitivity at lower and higher x than HERA, respectively.

In Fig. 3.38 the phase space in (β, Q^2) is shown for fixed ξ for the LHeC. The LHeC machine probes very small values of ξ , reaching 10^{-4} with a wide range of β . Of course, the ranges in β and ξ are correlated since $x = \beta\xi$. Therefore, for small values of ξ only large values of β are accessible while for large ξ the range in β extends to very small values.

Diffractive cross sections in the neutral current case can be presented in the form of the reduced cross sections integrated over t [225]:

$$\frac{d^3\sigma^D}{d\xi d\beta dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha_{\text{em}}^2}{\beta Q^4} Y_+ \sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(3)}, \quad (3.19)$$

where $Y_+ = 1 + (1-y)^2$ and the reduced cross sections can be expressed in terms of two diffractive structure functions F_2^{D} and F_L^{D} . In the one-photon approximation, the relations are

$$\sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(3)} = F_2^{\text{D}(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2) - \frac{y^2}{Y_+} F_L^{\text{D}(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2). \quad (3.20)$$

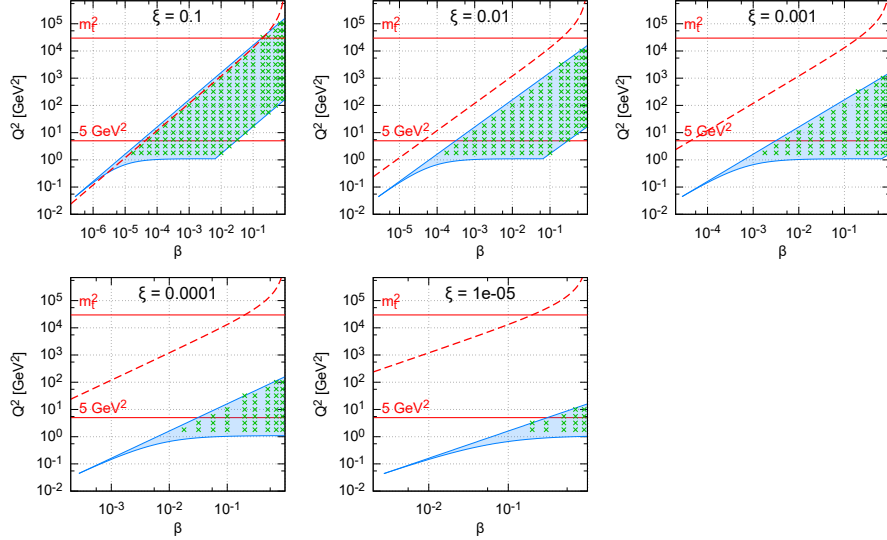


Figure 3.38: Kinematic phase space for inclusive diffraction in (β, Q^2) for fixed values of ξ for the LHeC design. The horizontal lines indicate correspondingly, $Q^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$, the lowest data value for the DGLAP fit performed in this study and m_t^2 the 6-flavour threshold. The dashed line marks the kinematic limit for $t\bar{t}$ production.

In this analysis we neglect Z^0 exchange, though it should be included in future studies.

Both $\sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(3)}$ and $\sigma_{\text{red}}^{\text{D}(4)}$ have been measured at the HERA collider [216, 217, 225–227, 229–232] and used to obtain QCD-inspired parametrisations.

The standard perturbative QCD approach to diffractive cross sections is based on collinear factorisation [220–222]. It was demonstrated that, similarly to the inclusive DIS cross section, the diffractive cross section can be written, up to terms of order $\mathcal{O}(\Lambda^2/Q^2)$, where Λ is the hadronic scale, in a factorized form

$$d\sigma^{ep \rightarrow eXY}(\beta, \xi, Q^2, t) = \sum_i \int_{\beta}^1 dz d\hat{\sigma}^{ei} \left(\frac{\beta}{z}, Q^2 \right) f_i^{\text{D}}(z, \xi, Q^2, t), \quad (3.21)$$

where the sum is performed over all parton flavours (gluon, d -quark, u -quark, etc.). The hard scattering partonic cross section $d\hat{\sigma}^{ei}$ can be computed perturbatively in QCD and is the same as in the inclusive deep inelastic scattering case. The long distance part f_i^{D} corresponds to the diffractive parton distribution functions, which can be interpreted as conditional probabilities for partons in the proton, provided the proton is scattered into the final state system Y with specified 4-momentum p' . They are evolved using the DGLAP evolution equations [233–236] similarly to the inclusive case. The analogous formula for the t -integrated structure functions reads

$$F_{2/\text{L}}^{\text{D}(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2) = \sum_i \int_{\beta}^1 \frac{dz}{z} C_{2/\text{L},i} \left(\frac{\beta}{z} \right) f_i^{\text{D}(3)}(z, \xi, Q^2), \quad (3.22)$$

where the coefficient functions $C_{2/\text{L},i}$ are the same as in inclusive DIS.

Fits to the diffractive structure functions usually [225, 231] parametrise the diffractive PDFs in a two component model, which is a sum of two diffractive exchange contributions, \mathbb{P} and \mathbb{R} :

$$f_i^{\text{D}(4)}(z, \xi, Q^2, t) = f_{\mathbb{P}}^p(\xi, t) f_i^{\mathbb{P}}(z, Q^2) + f_{\mathbb{R}}^p(\xi, t) f_i^{\mathbb{R}}(z, Q^2). \quad (3.23)$$

For both of these terms proton vertex factorisation is separately assumed, meaning that the diffractive exchange can be interpreted as colourless objects called a ‘Pomeron’ or a ‘Reggeon’ with parton distributions $f_i^{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}(\beta, Q^2)$. The flux factors $f_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}^p(\xi, t)$ represent the probability that a Pomeron/Reggeon with given values ξ, t couples to the proton. They are parametrised using the form motivated by Regge theory,

$$f_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}^p(\xi, t) = A_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}} \frac{e^{B_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}t}}{\xi^{2\alpha_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}(t)-1}}, \quad (3.24)$$

with a linear trajectory $\alpha_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}(t) = \alpha_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}(0) + \alpha'_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}t$. The diffractive PDFs relevant to the t -integrated cross-sections read

$$f_i^{\text{D}(3)}(z, \xi, Q^2) = \phi_{\mathbb{P}}^p(\xi) f_i^{\mathbb{P}}(z, Q^2) + \phi_{\mathbb{R}}^p(\xi) f_i^{\mathbb{R}}(z, Q^2), \quad (3.25)$$

with

$$\phi_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}^p(\xi) = \int dt f_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}^p(\xi, t). \quad (3.26)$$

Note that, the notions of ‘Pomeron’ and ‘Reggeon’ used here to model hard diffraction in DIS are, in principle, different from those describing the soft hadron-hadron interactions; in particular, the parameters of the fluxes may be different.

The diffractive parton distributions of the Pomeron at the initial scale $\mu_0^2 = 1.8 \text{ GeV}^2$ are parametrized as

$$z f_i^{\mathbb{P}}(z, \mu_0^2) = A_i z^{B_i} (1-z)^{C_i}, \quad (3.27)$$

where i is a gluon or a light quark and the momentum fraction $z = \beta$ in the case of quarks. In the diffractive parametrisations the contributions of all the light quarks (anti-quarks) are assumed to be equal. For the treatment of heavy flavours, a variable flavour number scheme (VFNS) is adopted, where the charm and bottom quark DPDFs are generated radiatively via DGLAP evolution, and no intrinsic heavy quark distributions are assumed. The structure functions are calculated in a General-Mass Variable Flavour Number scheme (GM-VFNS) [237, 238] which ensures a smooth transition of $F_{2,L}$ across the flavour thresholds by including $\mathcal{O}(m_h^2/Q^2)$ corrections. The parton distributions for the Reggeon component are taken from a parametrisation which was obtained from fits to the pion structure function [239, 240].

In Eq. (3.23) the normalisation factors of fluxes, $A_{\mathbb{P},\mathbb{R}}$ and of DPDFs, A_i enter in the product. To resolve the ambiguity we fix⁶ $A_{\mathbb{P}}$ and use $f_i^{\mathbb{R}}(z, Q^2)$ normalized to the pion structure function, which results in A_i and $A_{\mathbb{R}}$ being well defined free fit parameters. For full details, see [223].

Pseudodata for diffractive structure functions

The reduced cross sections are extrapolated using the ZEUS-SJ DPDFs. Following the scenario of the ZEUS fit [231] we work within the VFNS scheme at NLO accuracy. The transition scales for DGLAP evolution are fixed by the heavy quark masses, $\mu^2 = m_h^2$ and the structure functions are calculated in the Thorne–Roberts GM-VFNS [241]. The Reggeon PDFs are taken from the GRV pion set [240], the numerical parameters are taken from Tables 1 and 3 of Ref. [231], the heavy quark masses are $m_c = 1.35 \text{ GeV}$, $m_b = 4.3 \text{ GeV}$, and $\alpha_s(M_Z^2) = 0.118$.

The pseudodata were generated using the extrapolation of the fit to HERA data, which provides the central values, amended with a random Gaussian smearing with standard deviation

⁶Here, as in the HERA fits, $A_{\mathbb{P}}$ is fixed by normalizing $\phi_{\mathbb{P}}^p(0.003) = 1$.

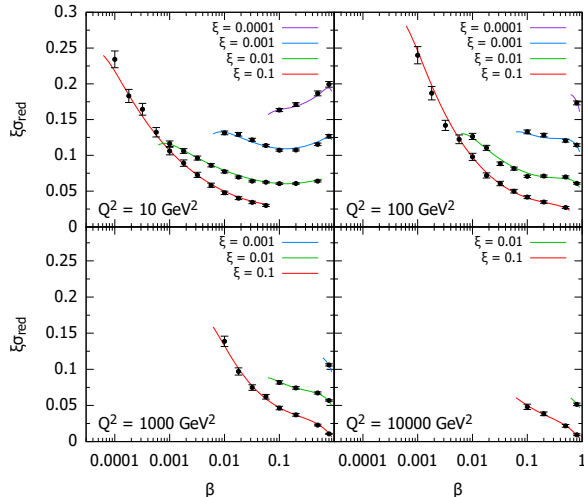


Figure 3.39: Selected subset of the simulated data for the diffractive reduced cross section as a function of β in bins of ξ and Q^2 for ep collisions at the LHeC. The curves for $\xi = 0.01, 0.001, 0.0001$ are shifted up by 0.04, 0.08, 0.12, respectively.

corresponding to the relative error δ . An uncorrelated 5% systematic error was assumed giving a total uncertainty

$$\delta = \sqrt{\delta_{sys}^2 + \delta_{stat}^2}. \quad (3.28)$$

The statistical error was computed assuming a very modest integrated luminosity of 2 fb^{-1} , see [32,33]. For the binning adopted in this study, the statistical uncertainties have a very small effect on the uncertainties in the extracted DPDFs. Obviously, a much larger luminosity would allow a denser binning that would result in smaller DPDF uncertainties.

In Fig. 3.39 we show a subset of the simulated data for the diffractive reduced cross section $\xi\sigma_{red}$ as a function of β in selected bins of ξ and Q^2 for the LHeC. For the most part the errors are very small, and are dominated by the systematics. The breaking of Regge factorisation evident at large ξ comes from the large Reggeon contribution in that region, whose validity could be further investigated at the LHeC.

Potential for constraining diffractive PDFs at the LHeC and FCC-eh

With the aim of establishing the experimental precision with which DPDFs could be extracted when LHeC data become available, we generate the central values of the pseudodata using the central set of the ZEUS-SJ fit that are distributed according to a Gaussian with experimental width given by Eq. (3.28), that also provides the uncertainty in the pseudodata. We then include the pseudodata in a fit alongside the existing HERA data using the same functional form and, as expected, obtain a $\chi^2/\text{ndf} \sim 1$, which demonstrates the consistency of the approach.

To evaluate the experimental precision with which the DPDFs can be determined, several pseudodata sets, corresponding to independent random error samples, were generated. Each pseudodata set was fitted separately. The minimal value of Q^2 for the data considered in the fits was set to $Q_{min}^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$. The reason for this cut-off is to show the feasibility of the fits including just the range in which standard twist-2 DGLAP evolution is expected to be trustable. At HERA, the Q_{min}^2 values giving acceptable DGLAP (twist-2) fits were 8 GeV^2 [225] and 5 GeV^2 [226] for H1 and ZEUS, respectively. The maximum value of ξ was set by default to $\xi_{max} = 0.1$, above

which the cross-section starts to be dominated by the Reggeon exchange. The binning adopted in this study corresponds roughly to 4 bins per order of magnitude in each of ξ, β, Q^2 . For $Q_{min}^2 = 5 \text{ GeV}^2$, $\xi_{max} = 0.1$ and below the top threshold this results in 1229 and 1735 pseudodata points for the LHeC and FCC-eh, respectively. The top-quark region adds 17 points for the LHeC and 255 for FCC-eh. Lowering Q_{min}^2 down to 1.8 GeV^2 we get 1589 and 2171 pseudodata points, while increasing ξ up to 0.32 adds around 180 points for both proposed machines.

The potential for determination of the gluon DPDF was investigated by fitting the inclusive diffractive DIS pseudodata with two models with different numbers of parameters, named S and C (see [223]) with $\alpha_{IP,IR}(0)$ fixed, in order to focus on the shape of the Pomeron's PDFs. At HERA, both S and C fits provide equally good descriptions of the data with $\chi^2/\text{ndf} = 1.19$ and 1.18, respectively, despite different gluon DPDF shapes. The LHeC pseudodata are much more sensitive to gluons, resulting in χ^2/ndf values of 1.05 and 1.4 for the S and C fits, respectively. This motivates the use of the larger number of parameters in the fit-S model, which we employ in the following studies. It also shows clearly the potential of the LHeC and the FCC-eh to better constrain the low- x gluon and, therefore, unravel eventual departures from standard linear evolution.

In Fig. 3.40 the diffractive gluon and quark distributions are shown for the LHeC and FCC-eh, respectively, as a function of momentum fraction z for fixed scales $\mu^2 = 6, 20, 60, 200 \text{ GeV}^2$. The bands labelled A, B, C denote fits to three statistically independent pseudodata replicas, obtained from the same central values and statistical and systematic uncertainties. Hereafter the uncertainty bands shown correspond to $\Delta\chi^2 = 2.7$ (90% CL). Also the extrapolated ZEUS-SJ DPDFs are shown with error bands marked by the '/' hatched area. Note that the depicted uncertainty bands come solely from experimental errors, neglecting theoretical sources, such as fixed input parameters and parametrisation biases. The extrapolation beyond the reach of LHeC/FCC-eh is marked in grey and the HERA kinematic limit is marked with the vertical dotted line. The stability of the results with respect to the independent pseudodata replicas used for the analysis is evident, so in the following only one will be employed. The low x DPDF determination accuracy improves with respect to HERA by a factor of 5–7 for the LHeC and 10–15 for the FCC-eh and completely new kinematic regimes are accessed.

For a better illustration of the precision, in Fig. 3.41 the relative uncertainties are shown for parton distributions at different scales. The different bands show the variation with the upper cut on the available ξ range, from 0.01 to 0.32. In the best constrained region of $z \simeq 0.1$, the precision reaches the 1% level. We observe only a modest improvement in the achievable accuracy of the extracted DPDFs with the change of ξ by an order of magnitude from 0.01 to 0.1. An almost negligible effect is observed when further extending the ξ range up to 0.32. This is encouraging, since the measurement for the very large values of ξ is challenging. It reflects the dominance of the secondary Reggeon in this region. We stress again that only experimental errors are included in our uncertainty bands. Neither theoretical uncertainties nor the parametrisation biases are considered. For a detailed discussion of this and other aspects of the fits, see [223].

Factorisation tests using Hadronic Final States in Diffractive DIS

The factorisation properties of diffractive DIS were a major topic of study at HERA [218] and are highly relevant to the interpretation of diffractive processes at the LHC [242]. A general theoretical framework is provided by the proof [220] of a hard scattering collinear QCD factorisation theorem for semi-inclusive DIS scattering processes such as $ep \rightarrow epX$. This implies that the

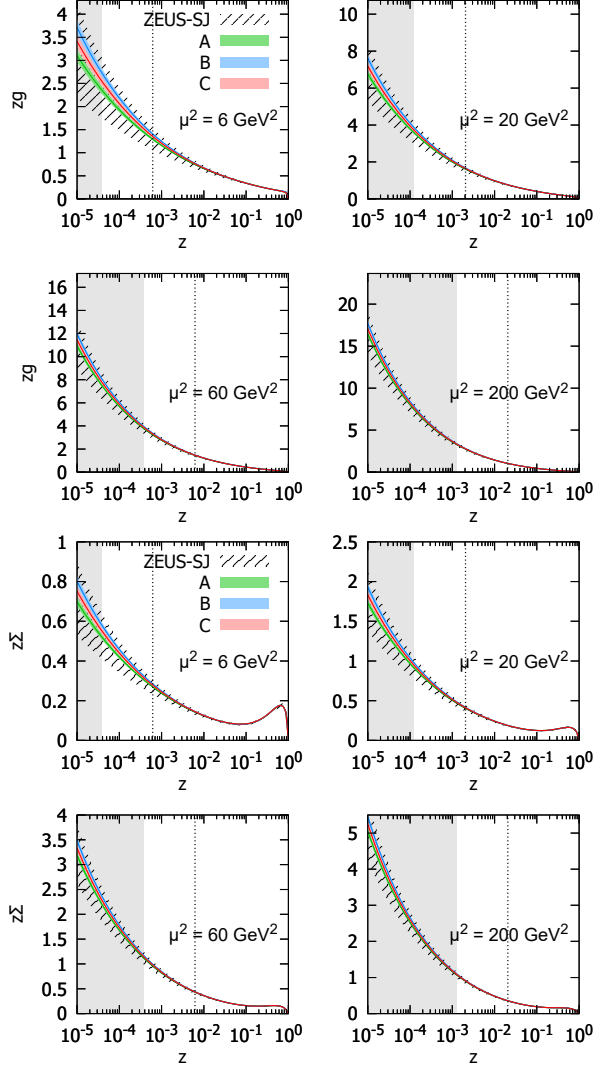


Figure 3.40: Diffractive PDFs for gluon and quark in the LHeC kinematics as a function of momentum fraction z for fixed values of scale μ^2 . Results of fits to three (A,B,C) pseudodata replicas are shown together with the experimental error bands. For comparison, the extrapolated ZEUS-SJ fit is also shown (black) with error bands marked with the hatched pattern. The vertical dotted lines indicate the HERA kinematic limit. The bands indicate only the experimental uncertainties, see the text.

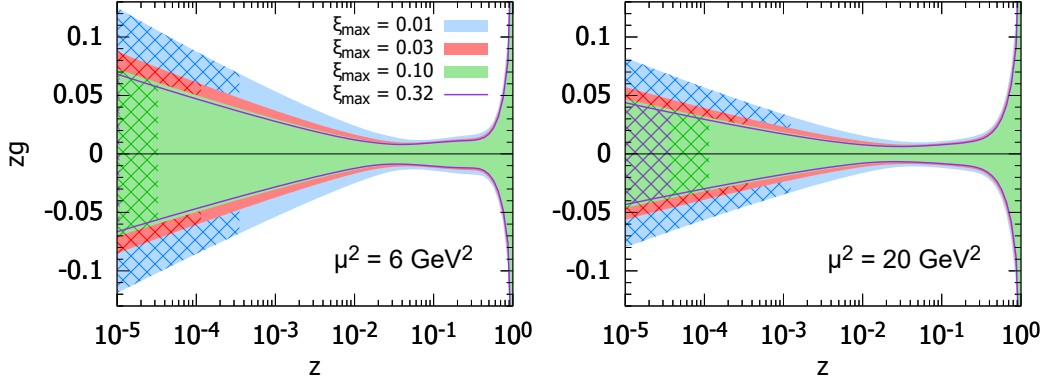


Figure 3.41: Relative uncertainties on the diffractive gluon PDFs for the LHeC kinematics. Two different choices of scales are considered $\mu^2 = 6$ and $\mu^2 = 20$ GeV^2 . The blue, red, green bands and magenta line correspond to different maximal values of $\xi = 0.01, 0.03, 0.1, 0.32$, respectively. The cross-hatched areas show kinematically excluded regions. The bands indicate only the experimental uncertainties, see the text.

DPDFs extracted in fits to inclusive diffractive DIS may be used to predict perturbative cross sections for hadronic final state observables such as heavy flavour or jet production. Testing this factorisation pushes at the boundaries of applicability of perturbative QCD and will be a major topic of study at the LHeC.

Tests of diffractive factorisation at HERA are strongly limited by the kinematics. The mass of the dissociation system X is limited to approximately $M_X < 30$ GeV , which implies for example that jet transverse momenta cannot be larger than about 15 GeV and more generally leaves very little phase space for any studies at perturbative scales. As well as restricting the kinematic range of studies, this restriction also implied large hadronisation and scale uncertainties in theoretical predictions, which in turn limit the precision with which tests can be made.

The higher centre-of-mass energy of the LHeC opens up a completely new regime for diffractive hadronic final state observables in which masses and transverse momenta are larger and theoretical uncertainties are correspondingly reduced. For example, M_X values in excess of 250 GeV are accessible, whilst remaining in the region $\xi < 0.05$ where the leading diffractive (pomeron) exchange dominates. The precision of tests is also improved by the development of techniques for NNLO calculations for diffractive jets [243].

Fig. 3.42 shows a simulation of the expected diffractive jet cross section at the LHeC, assuming DPDFs extrapolated from H1 at HERA [225], using the NLOJET++ framework [244]. An integrated luminosity of 100 fb^{-1} is assumed and the kinematic range considered is $Q^2 > 2 \text{ GeV}^2$, $0.1 < y < 0.7$ and scattered electron angles larger than 1° . Jets are reconstructed using the k_T algorithm with $R = 1$. The statistical precision remains excellent up to jet transverse momenta of almost 50 GeV and the theoretical scale uncertainties (shaded bands) are substantially reduced compared with HERA measurements. Comparing a measurement of this sort of quality with predictions refined using DPDFs from inclusive LHeC data would clearly provide an exacting test of diffractive factorisation.

Further interesting hadronic final state observables that were studied at HERA and could be extended at the LHeC include open charm production, thrust and other event shapes, charged particle multiplicities and energy flows. In addition, the LHeC opens up completely new channels, notably diffractive beauty, W and Z production, the latter giving complementary sensitivity to the quark densities to that offered by inclusive diffraction.

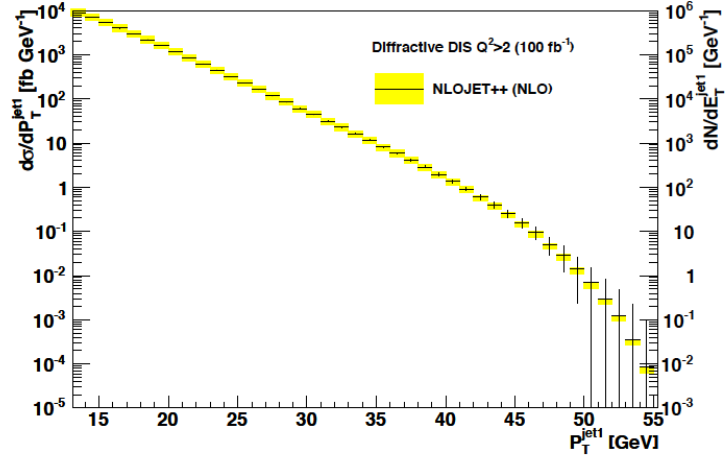


Figure 3.42: Simulated diffractive dijet cross section as a function of leading jet transverse momentum in the kinematic range $Q^2 > 2 \text{ GeV}^2$ and $0.1 < y < 0.7$, with scattered electron angles in excess of 1° . The error bars indicate predicted statistical uncertainties for a luminosity of 100 fb^{-1} . The coloured bands correspond to theoretical uncertainties when varying the renormalisation and factorisation scales by factors of 2.

3.2.6 Light-Front Holography and Superconformal Algebra

The LHeC has the potential of probing the high mass spectrum of QCD, such as the spectroscopy and structure of hadrons consisting of heavy quarks. Insights into this new domain of hadron physics can now be derived by new non-perturbative color-confining methods based on light-front (LF) holography. A remarkable feature is universal Regge trajectories with universal slopes in both the principal quantum number n and internal orbital angular momentum L . A key feature is di-quark clustering and supersymmetric relations between the masses of meson, baryons, and tetraquarks. In addition the running coupling is determined at all scales, including the soft domain relevant to rescattering corrections to LHeC processes. The combination of lightfront holography with superconformal algebra leads to the novel prediction that hadron physics has supersymmetric properties in both spectroscopy and dynamics.

Light-front holography and recent theoretical advances

Five-dimensional AdS_5 space provides a geometrical representation of the conformal group. Remarkably, AdS_5 is holographically dual to $3 + 1$ spacetime at fixed LF time τ [245]. A color-confining LF equation for mesons of arbitrary spin J can be derived from the holographic mapping of the “soft-wall model” modification of AdS_5 space for the specific dilaton profile $e^{+\kappa^2 z^2}$, where z is the fifth dimension variable of the five-dimensional AdS_5 space. A holographic dictionary maps the fifth dimension z to the LF radial variable ζ , with $\zeta^2 = b_\perp^2(1 - x)$. The same physics transformation maps the AdS_5 and $(3 + 1)$ LF expressions for electromagnetic and gravitational form factors to each other [246].

A key tool is the remarkable dAFF principle [247] which shows how a mass scale can appear in a Hamiltonian and its equations of motion while retaining the conformal symmetry of the action. When applying it to LF holography, a mass scale κ appears which determines universal Regge slopes, and the hadron masses. The resulting “LF Schrödinger Equation” incorporates color confinement and other essential spectroscopic and dynamical features of hadron physics, including Regge theory [?], the Veneziano formula [248], a massless pion for zero quark mass and

linear Regge trajectories with the universal slope in the radial quantum number n and the internal orbital angular momentum L . The combination of LF dynamics, its holographic mapping to AdS₅ space, and the dAFF procedure provides new insight into the physics underlying color confinement, the nonperturbative QCD coupling, and the QCD mass scale. The $q\bar{q}$ mesons and their valence LFWFs are the eigensolutions of the frame-independent a relativistic bound-state LF Schrödinger equation.

The mesonic $q\bar{q}$ bound-state eigenvalues for massless quarks are $M^2(n, L, S) = 4\kappa^2(n + L + S/2)$. This equation predicts that the pion eigenstate $n = L = S = 0$ is massless for zero quark mass. When quark masses are included in the LF kinetic energy $\sum_i \frac{k_{\perp i}^2 + m^2}{x_i}$, the spectroscopy of mesons are predicted correctly, with equal slope in the principal quantum number n and the internal orbital angular momentum L . A comprehensive review is given in Ref. [245].

The QCD Running Coupling at all Scales from Light-Front Holography

The QCD running coupling $\alpha_s(Q^2)$ sets the strength of the interactions of quarks and gluons as a function of the momentum transfer Q (see section 3.2.1). The dependence of the coupling Q^2 is needed to describe hadronic interactions at both long and short distances [249]. It can be defined [250] at all momentum scales from a perturbatively calculable observable, such as the coupling $\alpha_s^{g_1}(Q^2)$, which is defined using the Bjorken sum rule [251], and determined from the sum rule prediction at high Q^2 and, below, from its measurements [252–254]. At high Q^2 , such “effective charges” satisfy asymptotic freedom, obey the usual pQCD renormalisation group equations, and can be related to each other without scale ambiguity by commensurate scale relations [255].

The high Q^2 dependence of $\alpha_s^{g_1}(Q^2)$ is predicted by pQCD. In the small Q^2 domain its functional behavior can be predicted by the dilaton $e^{+\kappa^2 z^2}$ soft-wall modification of the AdS₅ metric, together with LF holography [256], as $\alpha_s^{g_1}(Q^2) = \pi e^{-Q^2/4\kappa^2}$. The parameter κ determines the mass scale of hadrons and Regge slopes in the zero quark mass limit, and it was shown that it can be connected to the mass scale Λ_s , which controls the evolution of the pQCD coupling [256–258]. Measurements of $\alpha_s^{g_1}(Q^2)$ [259,260] are remarkably consistent with this predicted Gaussian form, and a fit gives $\kappa = 0.513 \pm 0.007$ GeV, see Fig. 3.43.

The matching of the high and low Q^2 regimes of $\alpha_s^{g_1}(Q^2)$ determines a scale Q_0 , which sets the interface between perturbative and non-perturbative hadron dynamics. This connection can be done for any choice of renormalisation scheme and one obtains an effective QCD coupling at all momenta. In the $\overline{\text{MS}}$ scheme one gets $Q_0 = 0.87 \pm 0.08$ GeV [261]. The corresponding value of $\Lambda_{\overline{\text{MS}}}$ agrees well with the measured world average value and its value allows to compute hadron masses using the AdS/QCD superconformal predictions for hadron spectroscopy. The value of Q_0 can further be used to set the factorization scale for DGLAP evolution [234–236] or the ERBL evolution of distribution amplitudes [262,263]. The use of the scale Q_0 to resolve the factorization scale uncertainty in structure functions and fragmentation functions, in combination with the scheme-independent *principle of maximum conformality* (PMC) [98] for setting renormalization scales, can greatly improve the precision of pQCD predictions for collider phenomenology at LHeC and HL-LHC.

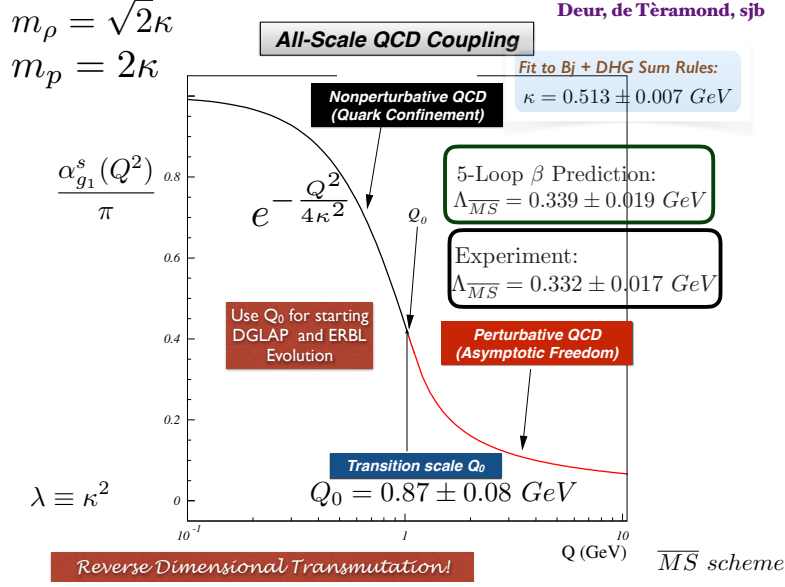


Figure 3.43: Prediction for the running coupling $\alpha_{g_1}^s(Q^2)$ at all scales. At lower Q^2 predictions are obtained from LF Holography and at higher Q^2 from perturbative QCD. The magnitude and derivative of the perturbative and non-perturbative coupling are matched at the scale Q_0 . This matching connects the perturbative scale $\Lambda_{\overline{MS}}$ to the non-perturbative scale κ which underlies the hadron mass scale.

Superconformal Algebra and Hadron Physics with LHeC data

If one generalises LF holography using *superconformal algebra* the resulting LF eigensolutions yield a unified Regge spectroscopy of mesons, baryons and tetraquarks, including remarkable supersymmetric relations between the masses of mesons and baryons of the same parity⁷ [264, 265]. This generalisation further predicts hadron dynamics, including vector meson electroproduction, hadronic LFWFs, distribution amplitudes, form factors, and valence structure functions [266, 267]. Applications to the deuteron elastic form factors and structure functions are given in Refs. [268, 269]

The eigensolutions of superconformal algebra predict the Regge spectroscopy of mesons, baryons, and tetraquarks of the same parity and twist as equal-mass members of the same 4-plet representation with a universal Regge slope. [270–272]. A comparison with experiment is shown in Fig. 3.44. The $q\bar{q}$ mesons with orbital angular momentum $L_M = L_B + 1$ have the same mass as their baryonic partners with orbital angular momentum L_B [270, 273].

The predictions from LF holography and superconformal algebra can also be extended to mesons, baryons, and tetraquarks with strange, charm and bottom quarks. Although conformal symmetry is strongly broken by the heavy quark masses, the basic underlying supersymmetric mechanism, which transforms mesons to baryons (and baryons to tetraquarks), still holds and gives remarkable mass degeneracy across the entire spectrum of light, heavy-light and double-heavy hadrons.

The 4-plet symmetry of quark-antiquark mesons, quark-diquark baryons, and diquark-antidiquark tetraquarks are important predictions by superconformal algebra [261, 264]. Recently the AnDY

⁷ QCD is not supersymmetrical in the usual sense, since the QCD Lagrangian is based on quark and gluonic fields, not squarks or gluinos. However, its hadronic eigensolutions conform to a representation of superconformal algebra, reflecting the underlying conformal symmetry of chiral QCD and its Pauli matrix representation.

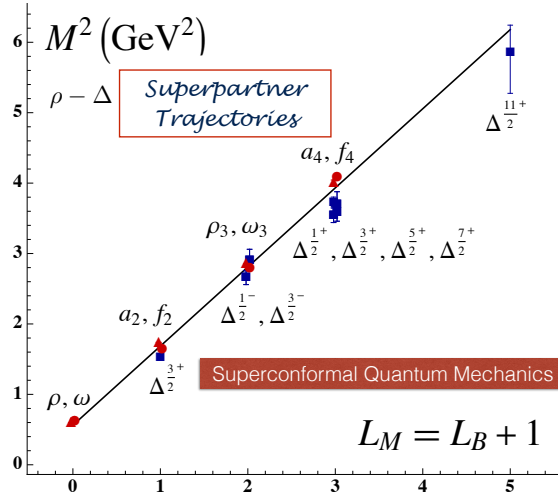


Figure 3.44: Comparison of the ρ/ω meson Regge trajectory with the $J = 3/2$ Δ baryon trajectory. Superconformal algebra predicts the mass degeneracy of the meson and baryon trajectories if one identifies a meson with internal orbital angular momentum L_M with its superpartner baryon with $L_M = L_B + 1$. See Refs. [270, 273].

experiment at RHIC has reported the observation of a state at 18 GeV which can be identified with the $[bb][\bar{b}\bar{b}]$ tetraquark [274]. The states with heavy quarks such as the $[bb][\bar{b}\bar{b}]$ tetraquark can be produced at the LHeC, especially at high x_F along the proton beam direction. New measurements at the LHeC are therefore inevitable to manifest the superconformal nature of hadronic bound states.

3.2.7 Disentangling non-linear QCD dynamics at the LHeC

The LHeC will extend the kinematic reach of HERA at small- x by one order of magnitude in the perturbative regime $Q \gtrsim 1$ GeV [1]. This extension will allow unprecedented tests of the strong interaction in this extreme region, where deviations from the linear DGLAP evolution are expected to appear. In particular, it has been argued that the strong growth of the gluon PDF at small- x should eventually lead to gluon recombination [275] to avoid violating the unitary bounds. The onset of such non-linear dynamics, also known as saturation, has been extensively searched but so far there is no conclusive evidence of its presence, at least within the HERA inclusive structure function measurements. In this context, the extended kinematic range of the LHeC provides unique avenues to explore the possible onset of non-linear QCD dynamics at small- x . The discovery of saturation, a radically new regime of QCD, would then represent an important milestone in our understanding of the strong interactions.

The main challenge in disentangling saturation lies in the fact that non-linear corrections are expected to be moderate even at the LHeC, since they are small (if present at all) in the region covered by HERA. Therefore, great care needs to be employed in order to separate such effects from those of standard DGLAP linear evolution. Indeed, it is well known that HERA data at small- x in the perturbative region can be equally well described, at least at the qualitative level, both by PDF fits based on the DGLAP framework as well as by saturation-inspired models. However, rapid progress both in theory calculations and methodological developments have

pushed QCD fits to a new level of sophistication, and recently it has been shown that subtle but clear evidence of BFKL resummation at small- x is present in HERA data, both for inclusive and for heavy quark structure functions [41, 42]. Such studies highlight how it should be possible to tell apart non-linear from linear dynamics using state-of-the-art fitting methods even if these are moderate, provided that they are within the LHeC reach.

Here we want to assess the sensitivity of the LHeC to detect the possible onset of non-linear saturation dynamics. This study will be carried out by generalizing a recent analysis [35] that quantified the impact of LHeC inclusive and semi-inclusive measurements on the PDF4LHC15 PDFs [36, 276] by means of Hessian profiling [37]. There, the LHeC pseudo-data was generated assuming that linear DGLAP evolution was valid in the entire LHeC kinematic range using the PDF4LHC15 set as input. To ascertain the possibility of pinning down saturation at the LHeC, here we have revisited this study but now generating the LHeC pseudo-data by means of a saturation-inspired calculation. By monitoring the statistical significance of the tension that will be introduced (by construction) between the saturation pseudo-data and the DGLAP theory assumed in the PDF fit, we aim to determine the likelihood of disentangling non-linear from linear evolution effects at the LHeC. See also [277] for previous related studies along the same direction.

Analysis settings

In this study we adopt the settings of [34, 35], to which we refer the interested reader for further details. In [35] the impact on the proton PDFs of inclusive and semi-inclusive neutral-current (NC) and charged current (CC) DIS structure functions from the LHeC was quantified. These results were then compared with the corresponding projections for the PDF sensitivity of the High-Luminosity upgrade of the LHC (HL-LHC). In the left panel of Fig. 3.45 we display the kinematic range in the (x, Q^2) plane of the LHeC pseudo-data employed in that analysis, which illustrated how the LHeC can provide unique constraints on the behaviour of the quark and gluon PDFs in the very small- x region.

Since non-linear dynamics are known to become sizable only at small- x , for the present analysis it is sufficient to consider the NC e^-p inclusive scattering cross-sections from proton beam energies of $E_p = 7$ TeV and $E_p = 1$ TeV. In the right panel in Fig. 3.45 we show the bins in (x, Q^2) for which LHeC pseudo-data for inclusive structure functions has been generated according to a saturation-based calculation. Specifically, we have adopted here the DGLAP-improved saturation model of Ref. [278], in which the scattering matrix is modeled through eikonal iteration of two gluon exchanges. This model was further extended to include heavy flavour in [279]. The specific parameters that we use were taken from Fit 2 in [280], where parametrisations are provided that can be used for $x < 0.01$ and $Q^2 < 700$ GeV². These parameters were extracted from a fit to the HERA legacy inclusive structure function measurements [90] restricted to $x < 0.01$ and $0.045 < Q^2 < 650$ GeV². In contrast to other saturation models, the one we assume here [280] provides a reasonable description for large Q^2 in the small x region, where it ensure a smooth transition to standard fixed-order perturbative results.

Note that the above discussion refers only to the generated LHeC pseudo-data: all other aspects of the QCD analysis of [35] are left unchanged. In particular, the PDF profiling will be carried out using theory calculations obtained by means of DGLAP evolution with the NNLO PDF4LHC15 set (see also [281]), with heavy quark structure functions evaluated by means of the FONLL-B general-mass variable flavour number scheme [282]. In order to ensure consistency with the PDF4LHC15 prior, here we will replace the DGLAP pseudo-data by the saturation calculation

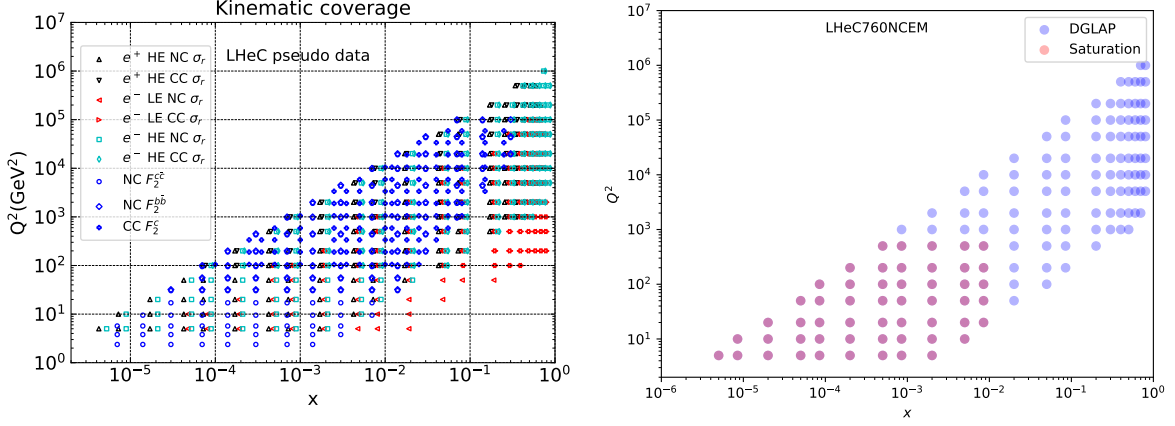


Figure 3.45: Left plot: the kinematic range in the (x, Q^2) plane of the LHeC pseudo-data on inclusive and semi-inclusive DIS structure functions used in the PDF projections of [35]. Right plot: the kinematic coverage of the NC e^-p scattering pseudo-data at the LHeC, where the blue (red) points indicate those bins for which DGLAP (saturation) predictions are available.

only in the kinematic region for $x \lesssim 10^{-4}$, rather than for all the bins indicated in red in Fig. 3.45. The reason for this choice is that PDF4LHC15 already includes HERA data down to $x \simeq 10^{-4}$ which is successfully described via the DGLAP framework, and therefore if we assume departures from DGLAP in the LHeC pseudo-data this should only be done for smaller values of x .

Results and discussion

Using the analysis settings described above, we have carried out the profiling of PDF4LHC15 with the LHeC inclusive structure function pseudo-data, which for $x \leq 10^{-4}$ ($x > 10^{-4}$) has been generated using the GBW saturation (DGLAP) calculations, and compare them with the results of the profiling where the pseudo-data follows the DGLAP prediction. We have generated $N_{exp} = 500$ independent sets LHeC pseudo-data, each one characterised by different random fluctuations (determined by the experimental uncertainties) around the underlying central value.

To begin with, it is instructive to compare the data versus theory agreement, χ^2/n_{dat} , between the pre-fit and post-fit calculations, in order to assess the differences between the DGLAP and saturation cases. In the upper plots of Fig. 3.46 we show the distributions of pre-fit and post-fit values of χ^2/n_{dat} for the $N_{exp} = 500$ sets of generated LHeC pseudo-data. We compare the results of the profiling of the LHeC pseudo-data based on DGLAP calculations in the entire range of x with those where the pseudo-data is based on the saturation model in the region $x < 10^{-4}$. Then in the bottom plot we compare of the post-fit χ^2 distributions between the two scenarios. Note that in these three plots the ranges in the x axes are different.

From this comparison we can observe that for the case where the pseudo-data is generated using a consistent DGLAP framework (PDF4LHC15) as the one adopted for the theory calculations used in the fit, as expected the agreement is already good at the pre-fit level, and it is further improved at the post-fit level. However the situation is rather different in the case where a subset of the LHeC pseudo-data is generated using a saturation model: at the pre-fit level the agreement between theory and pseudo-data is poor, with $\chi^2/n_{dat} \simeq 7$. The situation markedly improves at the post-fit level, where now the χ^2/n_{dat} distributions peaks around 1.3. This result

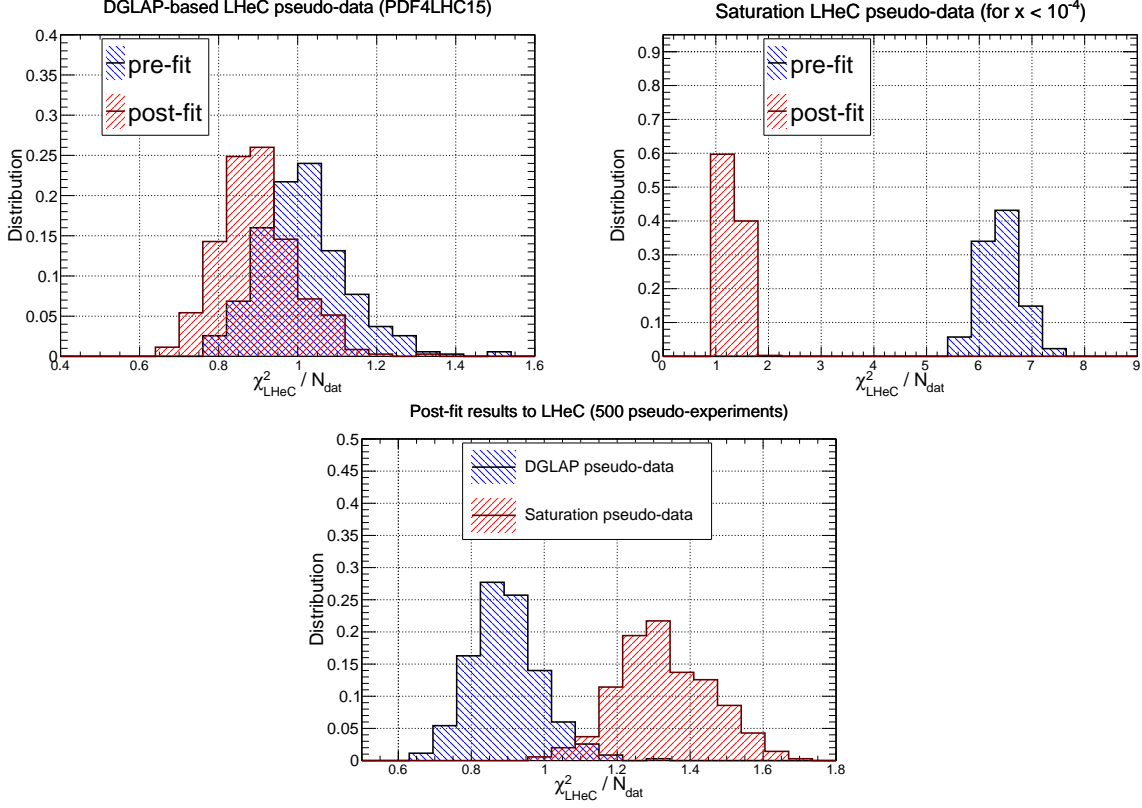


Figure 3.46: Upper plots: the distribution of pre-fit and post-fit values of χ^2/n_{dat} for the $N_{exp} = 500$ sets of generated LHeC pseudo-data. We compare the results of the profiling of the LHeC pseudo-data based on DGLAP calculations in the entire range of x (left) with those where the pseudo-data is based on the saturation model in the region $x < 10^{-4}$ (right plot). Bottom plot: comparison of the post-fit χ^2/n_{dat} distributions between these two scenarios for the pseudo-data generation.

implies that the DGLAP fit manages to absorb most of the differences in theory present in the saturation pseudo-data. This said, the DGLAP fit cannot entirely “fit away” the non-linear corrections: as shown in the lower plot of Fig. 3.46, even at the post-fit level one can still tell apart the χ^2/n_{dat} distributions between the two cases, with the DGLAP (saturation) pseudo-data peaking at around 0.9 (1.3). This comparison highlights that it is not possible for the DGLAP fit to completely absorb the saturation effects into a PDF redefinition.

In order to identify the origin of the worse agreement between theory predictions and LHeC pseudo-data in the saturation case, it is illustrative to take a closer look at the pulls defined as

$$P(x, Q^2) = \frac{\mathcal{F}_{fit}(x, Q^2) - \mathcal{F}_{dat}(x, Q^2)}{\delta_{exp}\mathcal{F}(x, Q^2)}, \quad (3.29)$$

where \mathcal{F}_{fit} is the central value of the profiled results for the observable \mathcal{F} (in this case the reduced neutral current DIS cross-section), \mathcal{F}_{dat} is the corresponding central value of the pseudo-data, and $\delta_{exp}\mathcal{F}$ represents the associated total experimental uncertainty. In Fig. 3.47 we display the pulls between the post-fit prediction and the central value of the LHeC pseudo-data for different bins in Q^2 . We compare the cases where the pseudo-data has been generated using a consistent theory calculation (DGLAP) with that based on the GBW saturation model.

The comparisons in Fig. 3.47 show first of all that in the DGLAP case the pulls are $\mathcal{O}(1)$ in the entire kinematical range. This is of course expected, given that the LHeC pseudo-data is

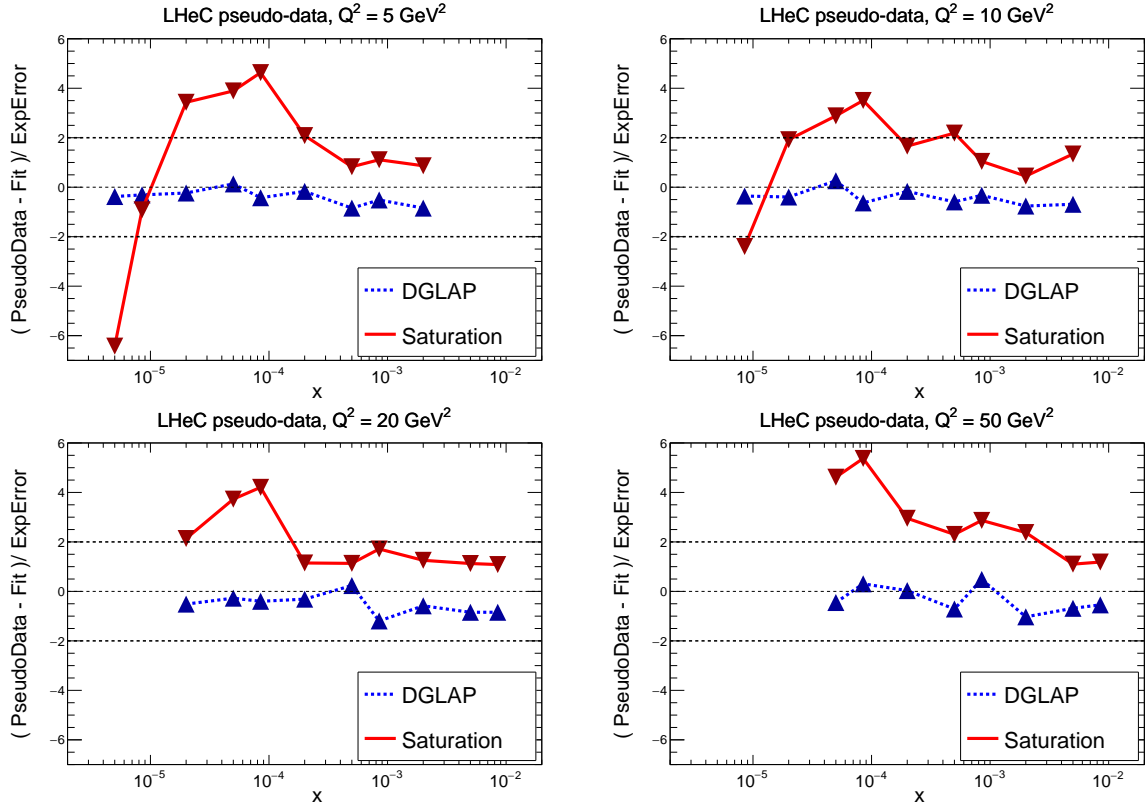


Figure 3.47: The pulls between the post-fit prediction and the central value of the LHeC pseudo-data, Eq. (3.29), for four different bins in Q^2 . We compare the results of the profiling where the LHeC pseudo-data has been generated using a consistent DGLAP theory with that partially based on the saturation calculations.

generated using the same theory as the one subsequently used for the fit. In the case where the pseudo-data has been partially generated with the saturation calculation, on the other hand, one finds a systematic tension between the theory used for the fit (DGLAP) and the one used to generate the pseudo-data (saturation). Indeed, we find that at the smallest values of x the theory prediction undershoots the data by a significant amount, while at higher x the opposite behaviour takes place. One can also see that in the region $10^{-4} \lesssim x \lesssim 10^{-3}$ the fit overshoots the pseudo-data by a large amount.

These comparisons highlight how a QCD fit to the saturation pseudo-data is obtained as a compromise between opposite trends: the theory wants to overshoot the data at very small x and overshoot it at larger values of x . These tensions result in a distorted fit, explaining the larger χ^2/n_{dat} values as compared to the DGLAP case. Such a behaviour can be partially traced back by the different scaling in Q^2 between DGLAP and GBW shown in Fig. ???: while a difference x dependence could eventually be absorbed into a change of the PDFs at the parametrisation scale Q_0 , this is not possible with a Q^2 dependence.

The pull analysis of Fig. 3.47 highlights how in order to tell apart linear from non-linear QCD evolution effects at small- x it would be crucial to ensure a lever arm in Q^2 as large as possible in the perturbative region. This way it becomes possible to disentangle the different scaling in Q^2 for the two cases. The lack of a sufficiently large lever arm in Q^2 at HERA at small x could explain in part why both frameworks are able to describe the same structure function measurements at the qualitative level. Furthermore, we find that amplifying the significance

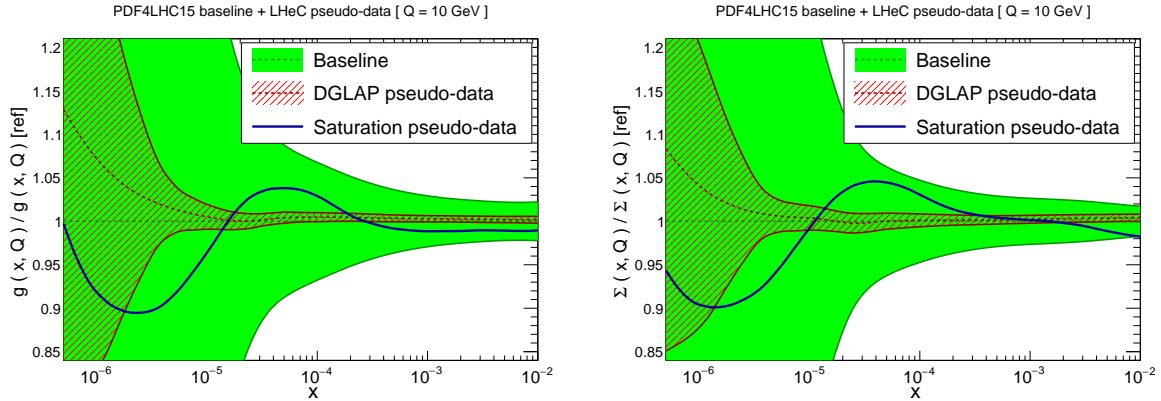


Figure 3.48: Comparison between the PDF4LHC15 baseline (green band) with the results of the profiling of the LHeC pseudo-data for the gluon (left) and quark singlet (right) for $Q = 10$ GeV. We show the cases where the pseudo-data is generated using DGLAP calculations (red hatched band) and where it is partially based on the GBW saturation model (blue curve).

of these subtle effects can be achieved by monitoring the χ^2 behaviour in the Q^2 bins more affected by the saturation corrections. The reason is that the total χ^2 , such as that reported in Fig. 3.46, is somewhat less informative since the deviations at small- Q are washed out by the good agreement between theory and pseudo-data in the rest of the kinematical range of the LHeC summarised in Fig. 3.45.

To conclude this analysis, in Fig. 3.48 we display the comparison between the PDF4LHC15 baseline with the results of the PDF profiling of the LHeC pseudo-data for the gluon (left) and quark singlet (right) for $Q = 10$ GeV. We show the cases where the pseudo-data is generated using DGLAP calculations and where it is partially based on the GBW saturation model (for $x \lesssim 10^{-4}$). We find that the distortion induced by the mismatch between theory and pseudo-data in the saturation case is typically larger than the PDF uncertainties expected once the LHeC constraints are taken into account. While of course in a realistic situation such a comparison would not be possible, the results of Fig. 3.48 show that saturation-induced effects are expected to be larger than the typical PDF errors in the LHeC era, and thus that it should be possible to tell them apart using for example tools such as the pull analysis of Fig. 3.47 or other statistical methods.

Summary

Here we have assessed the feasibility of disentangling DGLAP evolution from non-linear effects at the LHeC. By means of a QCD analysis where LHeC pseudo-data is generated using a saturation model, we have demonstrated that the LHeC should be possible to identify non-linear effects with large statistical significance, provided their size is the one predicted by current calculations such as the that of [280] that have been tuned to HERA data. A more refined analysis would require to study whether or not small- x BFKL resummation effects can partially mask the impact of non-linear dynamics, though this is unlikely since the main difference arises in their Q^2 scaling. The discovery of non-linear dynamics would represent an important milestone for the physics program of the LHeC, demonstrating the onset of a new gluon-dominated regime of the strong interactions and paving the way for detailed studies of the properties of this new state of matter. Such discovery would have also implications outside nuclear and particle physics, for instance it would affect the theory predictions for the scattering of ultra-high energy neutrinos

with matter [283].

3.3 Electroweak Physics

With the discovery of the Standard Model (SM) Higgs boson at the CERN LHC experiments and subsequent measurement of its properties, all fundamental parameters of the SM have now been measured directly and with remarkable precision. To further establish the validity of the theory of electroweak interactions [23, 284–287], validate the mechanism of electroweak symmetry breaking and the nature of the Higgs sector [288–290], new electroweak measurements have to be performed at highest precision. Such high-precision measurements can be considered as a portal to new physics, since non-SM contributions, as for instance loop-insertions, may cause significant deviations for some precisely measurable and calculable observables. At the LHeC, the greatly enlarged kinematic reach to higher mass scales in comparison to HERA [291–293] and the large targeted luminosity will enable electroweak measurements in ep scattering with higher precision than ever before.

3.3.1 Electroweak effects in inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections

Electroweak NC interactions in inclusive $e^\pm p$ DIS are mediated by exchange of a virtual photon (γ) or a Z boson in the t -channel, while CC DIS is mediated exclusively by W -boson exchange as a purely *weak* process. Inclusive NC DIS cross sections are expressed in terms of generalised structure functions \tilde{F}_2^\pm , $x\tilde{F}_3^\pm$ and \tilde{F}_L^\pm at EW leading order (LO) as

$$\frac{d^2\sigma^{\text{NC}}(e^\pm p)}{dx dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha^2}{xQ^4} \left[Y_+ \tilde{F}_2^\pm(x, Q^2) \mp Y_- x\tilde{F}_3^\pm(x, Q^2) - y^2 \tilde{F}_L^\pm(x, Q^2) \right], \quad (3.30)$$

where α denotes the fine structure constant. The terms $Y_\pm = 1 \pm (1-y)^2$, with $y = Q^2/sx$, describe the helicity dependence of the process. The generalised structure functions are separated into contributions from pure γ - and Z -exchange and their interference [57, 294]:

$$\tilde{F}_2^\pm = F_2 - (g_V^e \pm P_e g_A^e) \varkappa_Z F_2^{\gamma Z} + [(g_V^e g_V^e + g_A^e g_A^e) \pm 2P_e g_V^e g_A^e] \varkappa_Z^2 F_2^Z, \quad (3.31)$$

$$\tilde{F}_3^\pm = -(g_A^e \pm P_e g_V^e) \varkappa_Z F_3^{\gamma Z} + [2g_V^e g_A^e \pm P_e (g_V^e g_V^e + g_A^e g_A^e)] \varkappa_Z^2 F_3^Z. \quad (3.32)$$

Similar expressions hold for \tilde{F}_L . In the naive quark-parton model, which corresponds to the LO QCD approximation, the structure functions are calculated as

$$\left[F_2, F_2^{\gamma Z}, F_2^Z \right] = x \sum_q \left[Q_q^2, 2Q_q g_V^q, g_V^q g_V^q + g_A^q g_A^q \right] \{q + \bar{q}\}, \quad (3.33)$$

$$x \left[F_3^{\gamma Z}, F_3^Z \right] = x \sum_q \left[2Q_q g_A^q, 2g_V^q g_A^q \right] \{q - \bar{q}\}, \quad (3.34)$$

representing two independent combinations of the quark and anti-quark momentum distributions, xq and $x\bar{q}$. In Eq. (3.32), the quantities g_V^f and g_A^f stand for the vector and axial-vector couplings of a fermion ($f = e$ or $f = q$ for electron or quark) to the Z boson, and the coefficient \varkappa_Z accounts for the Z -boson propagator including the normalisation of the weak couplings. Both parameters are fully calculable from the electroweak theory. The (effective) coupling parameters depend on the electric charge, Q_f and the third component of the weak-isospin, $I_{L,f}^3$. Using $\sin^2\theta_W = 1 - \frac{M_W^2}{M_Z^2}$, one can write

$$g_V^f = \sqrt{\rho_{\text{NC},f}} \left(I_{L,f}^3 - 2Q_f \kappa_{\text{NC},f} \sin^2\theta_W \right), \quad \text{and} \quad (3.35)$$

$$g_A^f = \sqrt{\rho_{\text{NC},f}} I_{L,f}^3 \quad \text{with } f = (e, u, d). \quad (3.36)$$

The parameters $\rho_{\text{NC},f}$ and $\kappa_{\text{NC},f}$ are calculated as real parts of complex form factors which include the higher-order loop corrections [295–297]. They contain non-leading flavour-specific components.

Predictions for CC DIS are written in terms of the CC structure functions W_2 , xW_3 and W_L and higher-order electroweak effects are collected in two form factors $\rho_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}}$ and $\rho_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}}$ [298, 299].

In this study, the on-shell scheme is adopted for the calculation of higher-order corrections. This means that the independent parameters are chosen as the fine structure constant α and the masses of the weak bosons, the Higgs boson and the fermions. The weak mixing angle is then fixed and G_F is a prediction, whose higher-order corrections are included in the well-known correction factor Δr [300–302] (see discussion of further contributions in Ref. [57]).

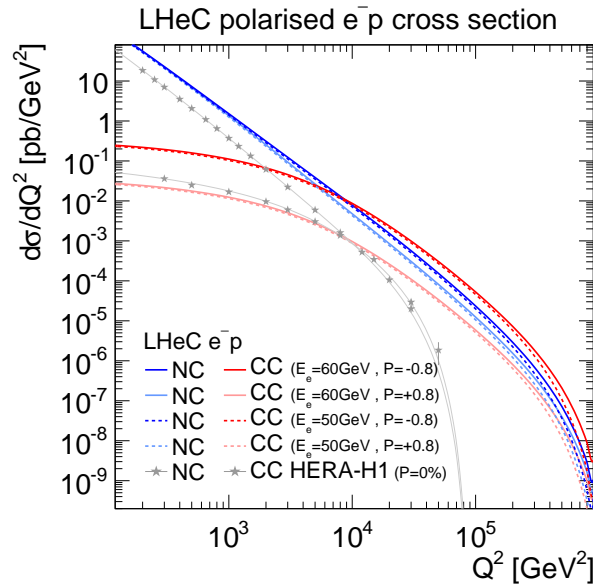


Figure 3.49: Single differential cross sections for polarised e^-p NC and CC DIS at LHeC for two different electron beam energies (E_e). Cross sections for longitudinal electron beam polarisations of $P_e = -0.8$ and $+0.8$ are displayed. For comparison also measurements at center-of-mass energies of $\sqrt{s} = 920$ GeV by H1 at HERA for unpolarised ($P = 0\%$) electron beams are displayed [303].

The predicted single-differential inclusive NC and CC DIS cross sections for polarised e^-p scattering as a function of Q^2 are displayed in Fig. 3.49. For NC DIS and at higher Q^2 , electroweak effects are important through γZ interference and pure Z -exchange terms and the polarisation of the LHeC electron beam of $P_e = \pm 0.8$ will considerably alter the cross sections. For CC DIS, the cross section scales linearly with P_e . Two different electron beam energies are displayed in Fig. 3.49, and albeit the impact of a reduction from $E_e = 60$ to $E_e = 50$ GeV appears to be small, a significantly increased electron beam energy would yield higher precision for the measurement of electroweak parameters, since these are predominantly sensitive to the cross sections at highest scales, as will be shown in the following.

3.3.2 Methodology of a combined EW and QCD fit

A complete electroweak analysis of DIS data has to consider PDFs together with electroweak parameters [304]. In this study, the uncertainties of electroweak parameters are obtained in a combined fit of electroweak parameters and the PDFs, and the inclusive NC and CC DIS

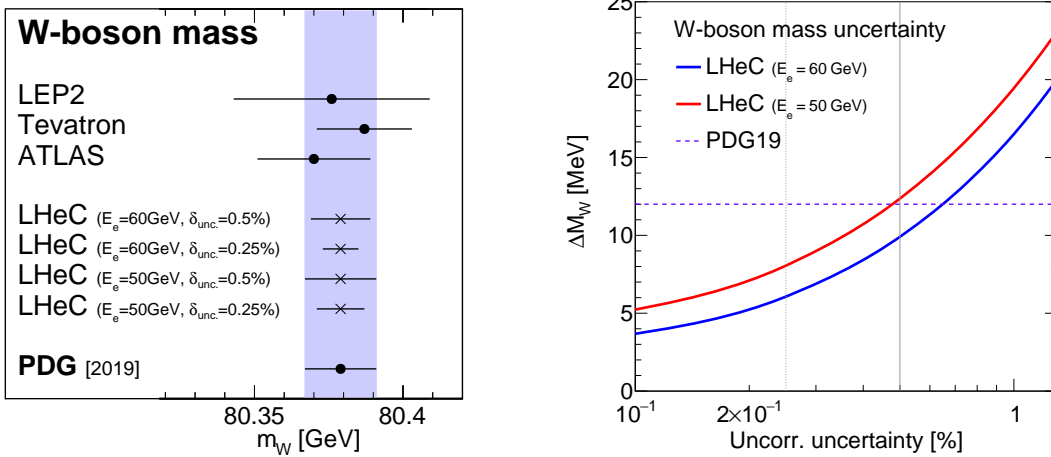


Figure 3.50: Left: Measurements of the W -boson mass assuming fixed values for the top-quark and Z -boson masses at the LHeC for different scenarios in comparison with today’s measurements [309–311] and the world average value (PDG19) [108]. For LHeC, prospects for $E_e = 60$ GeV and 50 GeV are displayed, as well as results for the two scenarios with 0.5 % or 0.25 % uncorrelated uncertainty (see text). Right: Comparison of the precision for M_W for different assumptions of the uncorrelated uncertainty of the pseudo-data. The uncertainty of the world average value is displayed as horizontal line. The nominal (and alternative) size of the uncorrelated uncertainty of the inclusive NC/CC DIS pseudo-data is indicated by the vertical line (see text),

pseudo-data (see section ??) are explored as input data. The PDFs are parameterised with 13 parameters at a starting scale Q_0^2 and NNLO DGLAP evolution is applied [305, 306]. In this way, uncertainties from the PDFs are taken into account, which is very reasonable, since the PDFs will predominantly be determined from those LHeC data in the future. The details of the PDF fit are altogether fairly similar to the PDF fits outlined in section ?. Noteworthy differences are that additionally EW effects are included into the calculation by considering the full set of 1-loop electroweak corrections [307], and the χ^2 quantity [69], which is input to the minimisation and error propagation, is based on normal-distributed relative uncertainties. In this way, a dependence on the actual size of the simulated cross sections is avoided. The size of the pseudo-data are therefore set equivalent to the predictions [308].

3.3.3 Weak boson masses M_W and M_Z

The expected uncertainties for a determination of the weak boson masses, M_W and M_Z , are determined in the PDF+EW-fit, where one of the masses is determined together with the PDFs, while the other mass parameter is taken as external input. The expected uncertainties for M_W are

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-60}) &= \pm 5_{(exp)} \pm 8_{(PDF)} \text{ MeV} = 10_{(tot)} \text{ MeV} \quad \text{and} \\ \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-50}) &= \pm 8_{(exp)} \pm 9_{(PDF)} \text{ MeV} = 12_{(tot)} \text{ MeV} \end{aligned} \quad (3.37)$$

for LHeC with $E_e = 60$ GeV or 50 GeV, respectively. The breakdown into experimental and PDF uncertainties is obtained by repeating the fit with PDF parameters fixed. These uncertainties are displayed in Fig. 3.50 and compared to the values obtained by LEP2 [310], Tevatron [309], ATLAS [311] and the PDG value [108]. The LHeC measurement will become the most precise measurement from one single experiment and will greatly improve over the best measurement

achieved by H1, which was $M_W(\text{H1}) = 80.520 \pm 0.115 \text{ GeV}$ [293]. If the dominating uncorrelated uncertainties can be reduced from the prospected 0.5 % to 0.25 %⁸, a precision for M_W of up to

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-60}) &= \pm 3_{(exp)} \pm 5_{(PDF)} \text{ MeV} = 6_{(tot)} \text{ MeV} \quad \text{and} \\ \Delta M_W(\text{LHeC-50}) &= \pm 6_{(exp)} \pm 6_{(PDF)} \text{ MeV} = 8_{(tot)} \text{ MeV}\end{aligned}\tag{3.38}$$

for LHeC-60 and LHeC-50 may be achieved, respectively. A complete dependence of the expected total experimental uncertainty ΔM_W on the size of the uncorrelated uncertainty component is displayed in Fig. 3.50, and with a more optimistic scenario an uncertainty of up to $\Delta M_W \approx 5 \text{ MeV}$ can be achieved. In view of such a high accuracy, it will be important to study carefully theoretical uncertainties. For instance the parametric uncertainty due to the dependence on the top-quark mass of 0.5 GeV will yield an additional error of $\Delta M_W = 2.5 \text{ MeV}$. Also higher-order corrections, at least the dominating 2-loop corrections will have to be studied and kept under control. Then, the prospected determination of the W -boson mass from LHeC data will be among the most precise determinations and significantly improve the world average value of M_W . It will also become competitive with its prediction from global EW fits with present uncertainties of about $\Delta M_W = 7 \text{ MeV}$ [108, 312, 313].

While the determination of M_W from LHeC data is competitive with other measurements, the experimental uncertainties of a determination of M_Z are estimated to be about 11 MeV and 13 MeV for LHeC-60 and LHeC-50, respectively. Therefore, the precision of M_Z cannot compete with the precise measurements at the Z -pole by LEP+SLD and future e^+e^- colliders may even improve on that.

A simultaneous determination of M_W and M_Z is displayed in Fig. 3.51 (left). Although the precision of these two mass parameters is only moderate, a meaningful test of the high-energy behaviour of electroweak theory is obtained by using G_F as additional input: The high precision of the G_F measurement [314] yields a very shallow error ellipse and a precise test of the SM can be performed with only NC and CC DIS cross sections alone. Such a fit determines and simultaneously tests the high-energy behaviour of electroweak theory, while using only low-energy parameters α and G_F as input (plus values for masses like M_t and M_H needed for loop corrections).

3.3.4 Further mass determinations

Inclusive DIS data are sensitive to the top-quark mass M_t indirectly through radiative corrections. M_t -dependent terms are dominantly due to corrections from the gauge boson self-energy corrections. They are contained in the ρ and κ parameters and in the correction factor Δr . The leading contributions are proportional to M_t^2 . This allows for an indirect determination of the top-quark mass using LHeC inclusive DIS data, and a determination of M_t will yield an uncertainty of $\Delta M_t = 1.8 \text{ GeV}$ to 2.2 GeV . Assuming an uncorrelated uncertainty of the DIS data of 0.25 % the uncertainty of M_t becomes as small as

$$\Delta M_t = 1.1 \text{ to } 1.4 \text{ GeV}\tag{3.39}$$

for 60 and 50 GeV electron beams, respectively. This would represent a very precise indirect determination of the top-quark mass from purely electroweak corrections and thus being fully

⁸Due to performance reasons, the pseudo-data are generated for a rather coarse grid. With a binning which is closely related to the resolution of the LHeC detector, much finer grids in x and Q^2 are feasible. Already such a change would alter the uncertainties of the fit parameters. However, such an effect can be reflected by a changed uncorrelated uncertainty, and a value of 0.25 % appears like an optimistic, but achievable, alternative scenario.

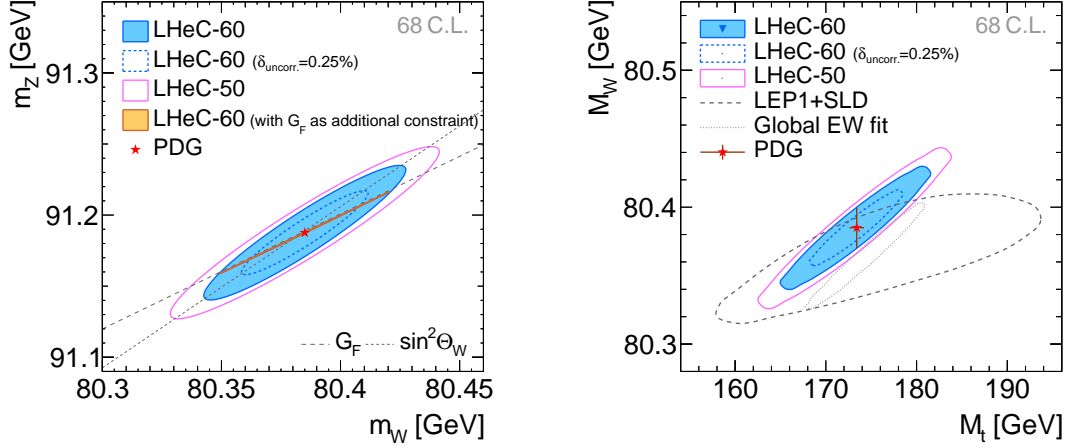


Figure 3.51: Simultaneous determination of the top-quark mass M_t and W -boson mass M_W from LHeC-60 or LHeC-50 data (left). Simultaneous determination of the W -boson and Z -boson masses from LHeC-60 or LHeC-50 data (right).

complementary to measurements based on real t -quark production, which often suffer from sizeable QCD corrections. The precision achievable this way will be competitive with indirect determinations from global EW fits after the HL-LHC [315].

More generally, and to some extent depending on the choice of the renormalisation scheme, the leading self-energy corrections are proportional to $\frac{M_t^2}{M_W^2}$ and thus a simultaneous determination of M_t and M_W is desirable. The prospects for a simultaneous determination of M_t and M_W is displayed in Fig. 3.51 (right). It is remarkable that the precision of the LHeC is superior to that of the LEP+SLD combination [316]. In an optimistic scenario an uncertainty similar to the global electroweak fit [313] can be achieved. In a fit without PDF parameters similar uncertainties are found (not shown), which illustrates that the determination of EW parameters is to a large extent independent of the QCD phenomenology and the PDFs.

The subleading contributions to self-energy corrections have a Higgs-boson mass dependence and are proportional to $\log \frac{M_H^2}{M_W^2}$. When fixing all other EW parameters the Higgs boson mass could be constrained indirectly through these loop corrections with an experimental uncertainty of $\Delta m_H = {}^{+29}_{-23}$ to ${}^{+24}_{-20}$ GeV for different LHeC scenarios, which is again similar to the indirect constraints from a global electroweak fit [313].

3.3.5 Weak Neutral Current Couplings

The vector and axial-vector couplings of up-type and down-type quarks to the Z , g_V^q and g_A^q , see Eq. (3.36), are determined in a fit of the four coupling parameters together with the PDFs.

The resulting uncertainties are collected in Tab. 3.2. The two-dimensional uncertainty contours at 68 % confidence level obtained from LHeC data with $E_e = 50$ GeV are displayed in Fig. 3.52 for the two quark families and compared with available measurements. While all the current determinations from e^+e^- , ep or $p\bar{p}$ data have a similar precision, the future LHeC data will greatly improve the precision of the weak neutral-current couplings and expected uncertainties are an order of magnitude smaller than the currently most precise ones [108]. An increased electron beam energy of $E_e = 60$ GeV or improved experimental uncertainties would further

Coupling parameter	PDG value	Expected uncertainties		
		LHeC-60	LHeC-60 ($\delta_{\text{uncor.}}=0.25\%$)	LHeC-50
g_A^u	0.50 $^{+0.04}_{-0.05}$	0.0022	0.0015	0.0035
g_A^d	-0.514 $^{+0.050}_{-0.029}$	0.0055	0.0034	0.0083
g_V^u	0.18 ± 0.05	0.0015	0.0010	0.0028
g_V^d	-0.35 $^{+0.05}_{-0.06}$	0.0046	0.0027	0.0067

Table 3.2: Light-quark weak NC couplings ($g_A^u, g_A^d, g_V^u, g_V^d$) and their currently most precise values from the PDG [108] compared with the prospected uncertainties for different LHeC scenarios. The LHeC prospects are obtained in a simultaneous fit of the PDF parameters and all four coupling parameters determined at a time.

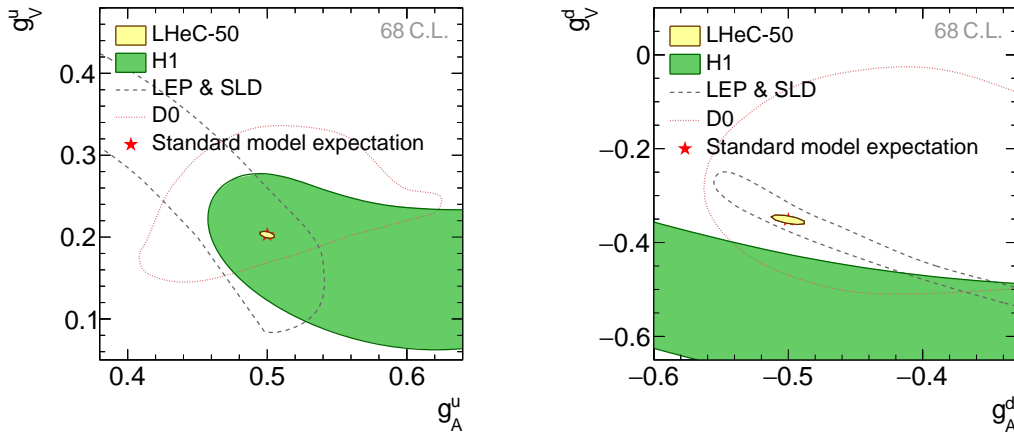


Figure 3.52: Weak NC vector and axial-vector couplings of u -type (left) and d -type quarks (right) at 68% confidence level (C.L.) for simulated LHeC data with $E_e = 50$ GeV. The LHeC expectation is compared with results from the combined LEP+SLD experiments [316], a single measurement from D0 [317] and one from H1 [293]. The standard model expectations are displayed by a red star.

improve this measurement.

The determination of the couplings of the electron to the Z boson, g_V^e and g_A^e , can be determined at the LHeC with uncertainties of up to $\Delta g_V^e = 0.0013$ and $\Delta g_A^e = \pm 0.0009$, which is similar to the results of a single LEP experiment and about a factor three larger than the LEP+SLD combination [316].

3.3.6 The neutral-current ρ_{NC} and κ_{NC} parameters

Beyond Born approximation, the weak couplings are subject to higher-order loop corrections. These corrections are commonly parameterised by quantities called ρ_{NC} , κ_{NC} and ρ_{CC} . They are sensitive to contributions beyond the SM and the structure of the Higgs sector. It is important to keep in mind that these effective coupling parameters depend on the momentum transfer and are, indeed, form factors, rather than constants. It is particularly interesting to investigate the so-called effective weak mixing angle defined as $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff}} = \kappa_{\text{NC}} \sin^2 \theta_W$. At the Z -pole it is well accessible through asymmetry measurements in e^+e^- collisions. In DIS at the LHeC, the scale dependence of the effective weak mixing angle is not negligible. It can be determined only together with the ρ parameter due to the Q^2 dependence and the presence of the photon exchange terms. Therefore, we introduce (multiplicative) anomalous contributions to these

factors, denoted as $\rho'_{NC,CC}$ and κ'_{NC} , and test their agreement with unity (for more details see Ref. [293]), and uncertainties of these parameters are obtained in a fit together with the PDFs. The two-dimensional uncertainty contours of the anomalous form factors $\rho'_{NC,f}$ and $\kappa'_{NC,f}$ are

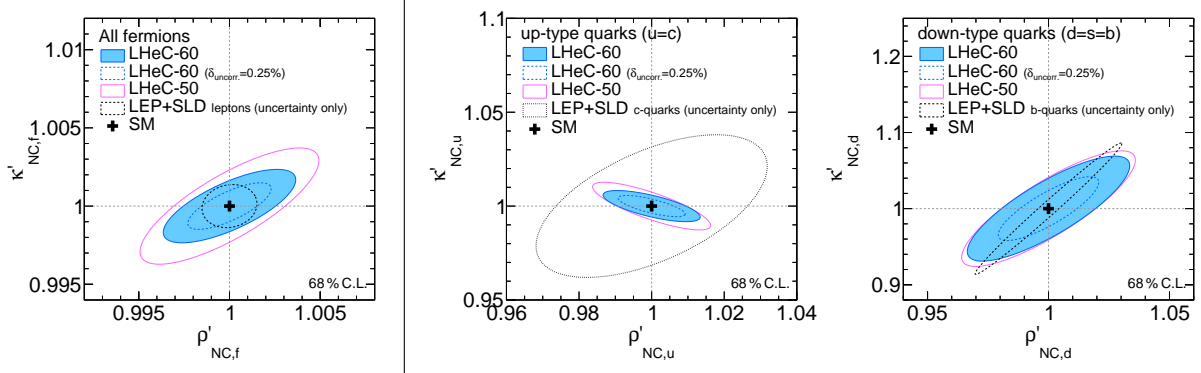


Figure 3.53: Expectations at 68 % confidence level for the determination of the ρ'_{NC} and κ'_{NC} parameters assuming a single anomalous factor equal for all fermions (left). The results for three different LHeC scenarios are compared with the achieved uncertainties from the LEP+SLD combination [316] for the determination the respective leptonic quantities. Right: uncertainties for the simultaneous determination of the anomalous form factors for u and d -type quarks, assuming known values for the electron parameters. The values are compared with uncertainties reported by LEP+SLD for the determination of the values $\rho_{NC,(c,b)}$ and $\sin\theta_W^{\text{eff},(c,b)}$ for charm or bottom quarks, respectively.

displayed for three different LHeC scenarios in Fig. 3.53 (left), and compared with uncertainties from the LEP+SLD combination⁹ [316]. It is found that these parameters can be determined with very high experimental precision.

Assuming the couplings of the electron are given by the SM, the anomalous form factors for the two quark families can be determined and results are displayed in Fig. 3.53 (right). Since these measurements represent unique determinations of parameters sensitive to the light-quark couplings, we can compare only with nowadays measurements of the parameters for heavy-quarks of the same charge and it is found that the LHeC will provide high-precision determinations of the ρ'_{NC} and κ'_{NC} parameters.

A meaningful test of the SM can be performed by determining the effective coupling parameters as a function of the momentum transfer. In case of κ'_{NC} , this is equivalent to measuring the running of the effective weak mixing angle, $\sin\theta_W^{\text{eff}}(\mu)$ (see also section 3.3.7). However, DIS is quite complementary to other measurements since the process is mediated by space-like momentum transfer, i.e. $q^2 = -Q^2 < 0$ with q being the boson four-momentum. Prospects for a determination of ρ'_{NC} or κ'_{NC} at different Q^2 values are displayed in Fig. 3.54 and compared to results obtained by H1. The value of $\kappa'_{NC}(\mu)$ can be easily translated to a measurement of $\sin\theta_W^{\text{eff}}(\mu)$. From Fig. 3.54 one can conclude that this quantity can be determined with a precision of up to 0.1 % and better than 1 % over a wide kinematic range of about $25 < \sqrt{Q^2} < 700$ GeV.

⁹Since in the LEP+SLD analysis the values of ρ_{NC} and $\kappa_{NC}\sin^2\theta_W$ are determined, we compare only the size of the uncertainties in these figures. Furthermore it shall be noted, that LEP is mainly sensitive to the parameters of leptons or heavy quarks, while LHeC data is more sensitive to light quarks (u,d,s), and thus the LHeC measurements are highly complementary.

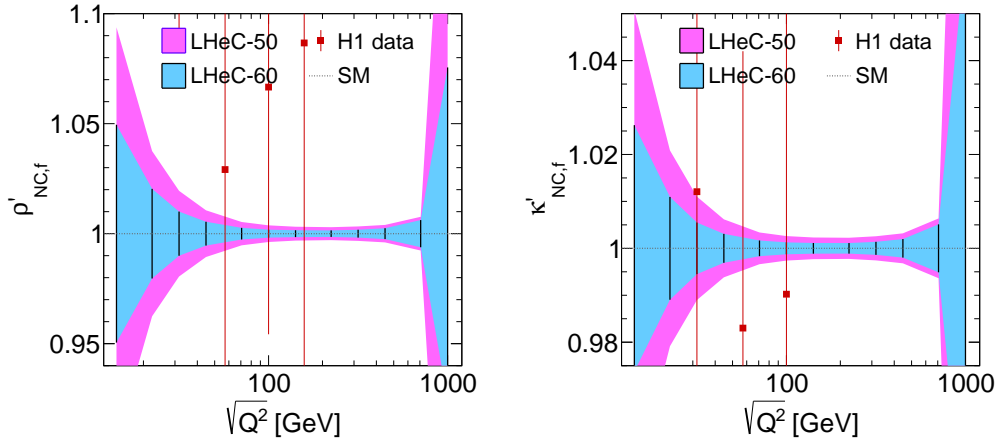


Figure 3.54: Test of the scale dependence of the anomalous ρ and κ parameters for two different LHeC scenarios. For the case of LHeC-60, i.e. $E_e = 60$ GeV, we assume an uncorrelated uncertainty of 0.25%. The uncertainties of the parameter $\kappa'_{NC,f}$ can be interpreted as sensitivity to the scale-dependence of the weak mixing angle, $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff}}(\mu)$.

3.3.7 The effective weak mixing angle $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$

The leptonic effective weak mixing angle is defined as $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(\mu^2) = \kappa_{NC,\ell}(\mu^2) \sin^2 \theta_W$. Due to its high sensitivity to loop corrections it represents an ideal quantity for precision tests of the Standard Model. Its value is scheme dependent and it exhibits a scale dependence. Near the Z pole, $\mu^2 = M_Z^2$, its value was precisely measured at LEP and at SLD. Those analyses were based on the measurement of asymmetries and their interpretation in terms of the leptonic weak mixing angle was simplified by the fact that many non-leptonic corrections and contributions from box graphs cancel or can be taken into account by subtracting their SM predictions. The highest sensitivity to $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z)$ to date arises from a measurement of $A_{\text{fb}}^{0,b}$ [316], where the non-universal flavour-specific corrections to the quark couplings are taken from the SM and consequently these measurements are interpreted to be sensitive only to the universal, i.e. flavour-independent¹⁰, non-SM contributions to κ_{NC} . Applying this assumption also to the DIS cross sections, the determination of $\kappa'_{NC,f}$ can directly be interpreted as a sensitivity study of the leptonic effective weak mixing angle $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$.

The prospects for a determination of $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$ are listed in Tab. 3.3. Two fits have been studied: one with a fixed parameter ρ'_{NC} and one where $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}$ is determined together with ρ'_{NC} (see Fig. 3.53 (left)). At the LHeC, it will be possible to determine the value of $\sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ with an experimental uncertainty of up to

$$\Delta \sin^2 \theta_W^{\text{eff},\ell} = \pm 0.00015, \quad (3.40)$$

where PDF uncertainties are already included. If the PDF parameters are artificially kept fixed, the uncertainties are of very similar size, which demonstrates that these measurements are fairly insensitive to the QCD effects and the PDFs. The uncertainties are compared¹¹ to

¹⁰Flavour-specific tests have been discussed to some extent in the previous section.

¹¹ It shall be noted, that in order to compare the LHeC measurements with the Z -pole measurements at $\mu^2 = M_Z^2$ in a conclusive way, one has to assume the validity of the SM framework. In particular the scale-dependence of $\kappa_{NC,\ell}$ must be known in addition to the flavour-specific corrections. On the other hand, the scale dependence can be tested itself with the LHeC data which cover a large range of space-like Q^2 . In this aspect, DIS provides

Fit parameters	Parameter of interest	SM value	Expected uncertainties			
			LHeC-50 ($\delta_{\text{uncor.}} = 0.50\%$)	LHeC-60	LHeC-50 ($\delta_{\text{uncor.}} = 0.25\%$)	LHeC-60
$\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$, PDFs	$\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$	0.23154	0.00033	0.00025	0.00022	0.00015
$\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}, \rho'_{\text{NC},f}$, PDFs	$\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$	0.23154	0.00071	0.00036	0.00056	0.00023
$\kappa'_{\text{NC},e}$, PDFs	$\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},e}(M_Z^2)$	0.23154	0.00059	0.00047	0.00038	0.00028
$\kappa'_{\text{NC},e}, \kappa'_{\text{NC},u}, \kappa'_{\text{NC},d}$, PDFs	$\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},e}(M_Z^2)$	0.23154	0.00111	0.00095	0.00069	0.00056
$\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$	$\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$	0.23154	0.00028	0.00023	0.00017	0.00014

Table 3.3: Determination of $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ with inclusive DIS data at the LHeC for different scenarios. Since the value of the effective weak mixing angle at the Z pole cannot be determined directly in DIS, a fit of the $\kappa'_{\text{NC},f}$ parameter is performed instead and its uncertainty is translated to $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$. Different assumptions on the fit parameters are studied, and results include uncertainties from the PDFs. Only the last line shows results where the PDF parameters are kept fixed. See text for more details.

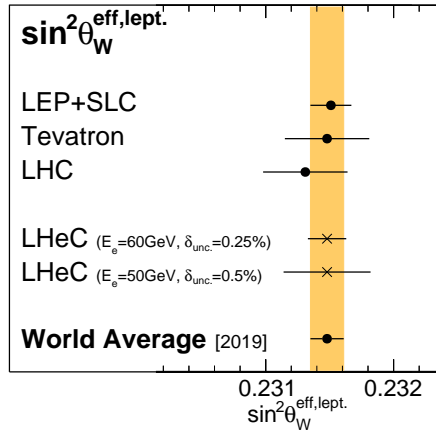


Figure 3.55: Comparison of the determination of $\sin^2 \theta_{\text{W}}^{\text{eff},\ell}(M_Z^2)$ from LHeC inclusive DIS data with recent averaged values. Results from LEP+SLC [316], Tevatron [318], LHC [319–322] and the world average value [322] are all obtained from a combination of various separate measurements (not shown individually) (see also Ref. [323] for additional discussion). For LHeC, the experimental and PDF uncertainties are displayed.

recent average values in Fig. 3.55. One can see that the LHeC measurement has the potential to become the most precise single measurement in the future with a significant impact to the world average value. It is obvious that a conclusive interpretation of experimental results with such a high precision will require correspondingly precise theoretical predictions, and the investigation of two-loop corrections for DIS will become important.

This LHeC measurement will become competitive with measurements at the HL-LHC [112]. Since in pp collisions one of the dominant uncertainty is from the PDFs, future improvements can (only) be achieved with a common analysis of LHeC and HL-LHC data. Such a study will yield highest experimental precision and the challenging theoretical and experimental aspects for a complete understanding of such an analysis will deepen our understanding of the electroweak sector.

a unique opportunity for precision measurements in the space-like regime ($\mu^2 < 0$) as has been discussed in the previous section, see Fig. 3.54 (right).

It may be further of interest, to determine the value of the effective weak mixing angle of the electron separately in order to compare with measurements in pp and test furthermore lepton-specific contributions to $\kappa_{\text{NC,lept.}}$. Such fits are summarised in Table 3.3 and a reasonable precision is achieved with LHeC.

3.3.8 Electroweak effects in charged-current scattering

The charged-current sector of the SM can be uniquely measured at high scales over many orders of magnitude in Q^2 at the LHeC, due to the excellent tracking detectors, calorimetry, and high-bandwidth triggers. Similarly as in the NC case, the form factors of the effective couplings of the fermions to the W boson can be measured. In the SM formalism, only two of these form factors are present, $\rho_{\text{CC},eq}$ and $\rho_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}}$. We thus introduce two anomalous modifications to them, $\rho_{\text{CC},(eq/e\bar{q})} \rightarrow \rho'_{\text{CC},(eq/e\bar{q})}\rho_{\text{CC},(eq/e\bar{q})}$ (see Ref. [293]). The prospects for the determination of these parameters are displayed in Fig. 3.56, and it is found, that with the LHeC these parameters can be determined with a precision up to 0.2–0.3%. Also their Q^2 dependence can be uniquely studied with high precision up to $\sqrt{Q^2}$ values of about 400 GeV.

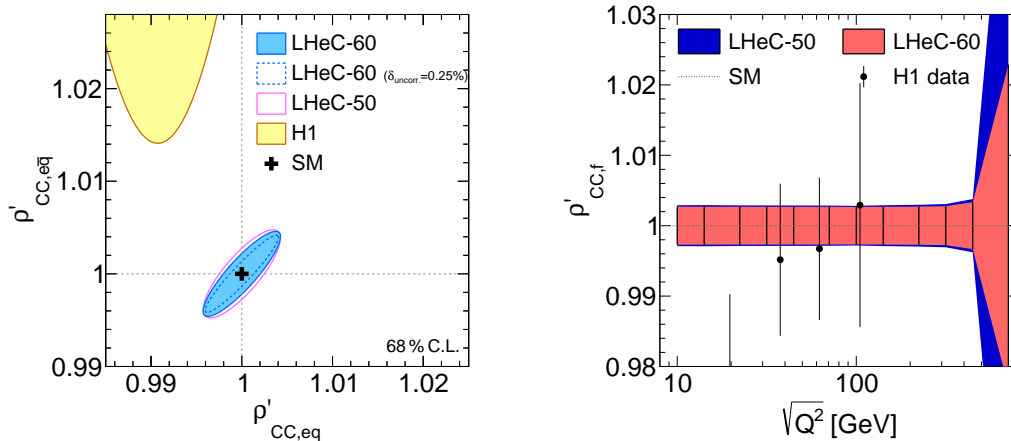


Figure 3.56: Left: anomalous modifications of the charged current form factors $\rho'_{\text{CC},eq}$ and $\rho'_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}}$ for different LHeC scenarios in comparison with the H1 measurement [293]. Right: scale dependent measurement of the anomalous modification of the charged current form factor $\rho'_{\text{CC}}(Q^2)$, assuming $\rho'_{\text{CC},eq} = \rho'_{\text{CC},e\bar{q}} = \rho'_{\text{CC}}$.

3.3.9 Direct W and Z production and Anomalous Triple Gauge Couplings

The direct single W and Z boson production as a crucial signal at the LHeC provides a promising channel to EW precision measurement. The W/Z production can be classified into five processes

$$\begin{aligned} e^-p &\rightarrow e^-W^+j, & e^-p &\rightarrow e^-W^-j, \\ e^-p &\rightarrow \nu_e^-W^-j, & e^-p &\rightarrow \nu_e^-Zj \end{aligned} \quad (3.41)$$

and

$$e^-p \rightarrow e^-Zj, \quad (3.42)$$

where j denotes the forward jet in the final states. According to the above classification, all the processes in Eq. (3.41) can be used to study Triple Gauge Couplings (TGCs), e.g. $WW\gamma$

and WWZ , whereas the process shown in Eq. (3.42) do not contains any TGC vertice involved with it. The Standard Model cross section of the above processes are shown in Tab. 3.4, under two different electron beam energy scenarios. The cross section will increase when a smaller transverse momentum of final forward electron can be tagged. We find the largest production process at the LHeC is the single W^+ boson production and expect it is the optimal channel of both the SM measurement and new physics probes in the EW sector.

Process	$E_e = 50 \text{ GeV}, E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ $p_T^e > 10 \text{ GeV}$	$E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}, E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ $p_T^e > 10 \text{ GeV}$	$E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}, E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ $p_T^e > 5 \text{ GeV}$
$e^- W^+ j$	1.00 pb	1.18 pb	1.60 pb
$e^- W^- j$	0.930 pb	1.11 pb	1.41 pb
$\nu_e^- W^- j$	0.796 pb	0.956 pb	0.956 pb
$\nu_e^- Z j$	0.412 pb	0.502 pb	0.502 pb
$e^- Z j$	0.177 pb	0.204 pb	0.242 pb

Table 3.4: SM predictions (and measurements) of different direct W and Z production cross sections are presented, varying with different collider beam energy assumptions and final state forward electron transverse momentum cut. MadGraph5.v2.4.2 [324] is used for matrix element calculation and events generation. The other basic cuts are $p_T^j > 20 \text{ GeV}$, $|\eta_{e,j}| < 5$ and $\Delta R_{ej} < 0.4$. The PDF used in the calculation is NNPDF23_nlo_as.0119_qed [325].

The triple gauge boson vertex can be precisely measured in gauge boson production processes through Vector Boson Fusion (VBF) at the LHeC. The measurement is sensitive to new physics contributions in anomalous Tripe Gauge Couplings (aTGC). The LHeC has advantages of a higher center of mass energy and easier kinematic analysis in the measurement of aTGCs.

In the effective field theory language, aTGCs in the Lagrangian are generally parametrized as

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_{TGC}/g_{WWV} &= ig_{1,V}(W_{\mu\nu}^+ W_\mu^- V_\nu - W_{\mu\nu}^- W_\mu^+ V_\nu) + i\kappa_V W_\mu^+ W_\nu^- V_{\mu\nu} + \frac{i\lambda_V}{M_W^2} W_{\mu\nu}^+ W_{\nu\rho}^- V_{\rho\mu} \\
&+ g_5^V \epsilon_{\mu\nu\rho\sigma} (W_\mu^+ \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\rho W_\nu^-) V_\sigma - g_4^V W_\mu^+ W_\nu^- (\partial_\mu V_\nu + \partial_\nu V_\mu) \\
&+ i\tilde{\kappa}_V W_\mu^+ W_\nu^- \tilde{V}_{\mu\nu} + \frac{i\tilde{\lambda}_V}{M_W^2} W_{\lambda\mu}^+ W_{\mu\nu}^- \tilde{V}_{\nu\lambda},
\end{aligned} \tag{3.43}$$

where $V = \gamma, Z$. The gauge couplings $g_{WW\gamma} = -e$, $g_{WWZ} = -e \cot \theta_W$ and the weak mixing angle θ_W are from the SM. $\tilde{V}_{\mu\nu}$ and $A \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\mu B$ are defined as $\tilde{V}_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{\mu\nu\rho\sigma} V_{\rho\sigma}$, $A \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\mu B = A(\partial_\mu B) - (\partial_\mu A)B$, respectively. There are five aTGCs ($g_{1,Z}$, κ_V , and λ_V) conserving the C and CP condition with electromagnetic gauge symmetry requires $g_{1,\gamma} = 1$. Only three of them are independent because $\lambda_Z = \lambda_\gamma$ and $\Delta\kappa_Z = \Delta g_{1,Z} - \tan^2 \theta_W \Delta\kappa_\gamma$ [326–328]. The LHeC can set future constrains on $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ and λ_γ .

In the direct Z/γ production process, the anomalous WWZ and $WW\gamma$ couplings can be separately measured without being influenced by their interference [329, 330]. In the direct W production process, both the deviation in signal cross section and the kinematic distributions can effectively constrain the $WW\gamma$ aTGC, while anomalous WWZ contribution in this channel is insensitive as a result of the suppression from Z boson mass [331–336].

The W decay into muon channel is the expected optimal measurement for the anomalous $WW\gamma$ coupling because of the discrimination of final states and mistagging efficiencies [334]. Fig. 3.57 shows the cross section of single W^+ production process followed by $W^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ \nu_\mu$ decay, with different λ_γ and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ values. Large anomalous coupling leads to measurable deviation to the

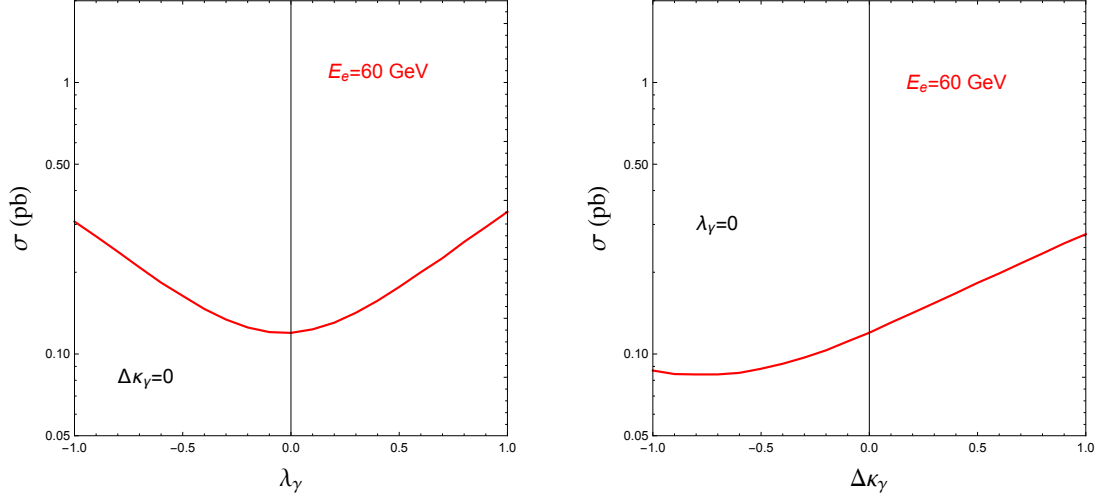


Figure 3.57: Total cross sections of the $e^-p \rightarrow e^- \mu^+ \nu_\mu j$ process with varying λ_γ (left plot) and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ (right plot).

SM prediction. The cross section increases monotonically with $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ and the absolute value of λ_γ within the region of $-1.0 \leq \lambda_\gamma/\Delta\kappa_\gamma \leq 1.0$.

Kinematic analysis is necessary for the precise aTGC measurement. At LHeC, the $e^-p \rightarrow e^-W^\pm j$ process with leptonic W boson decay can be fully reconstructed because the undetected neutrino information is reconstructed either with energy-momentum conservation or the recoil mass method. This allows angular correlation observables sensitive to the W boson polarization to be used. Helicity amplitude calculation indicates λ_γ leads to a significant enhancement in the transverse polarization fraction of the W boson in the $e^-p \rightarrow e^-W^+ j$ process, while $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ leads to enhancement in the longitudinal component fraction [331]. The $\theta_{\ell W}$ angle is defined as the angle between the decay product lepton ℓ in the W rest frame and W moving direction in the collision rest frame. Making use of the energetic final states in the forward direction, a second useful angle $\Delta\phi_{ej}$ is defined as the separation of final state jet and electron on the azimuthal plane. In the optimized analysis with 1 ab^{-1} integrated luminosity, the $\Delta\phi_{ej}$ observable can impose stringent constraints on both λ_γ and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ to be within $[-0.007, 0.0056]$ and $[-0.0043, 0.0054]$ respectively. The $\cos\theta_{\mu W}$ observable is also sensitive to $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ at the same order, but fails to constrain λ_γ . The analysis is detailed in [334].

Fig. 3.58 shows the two-parameter aTGC constraint on the λ_γ - $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ plane based on a χ^2 analysis of $\Delta\phi_{ej}$ with default $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}$ at parton-level. Compare with the current LHC (blue and green) and LEP (red) bounds, the LHeC has significant improvement in constraining the $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ parameter. The polarized electron beam is found to improve the aTGC measurement [330, 336]. In consideration of the “realistic” analysis at detector-level, one expects $2\text{-}3 \text{ ab}^{-1}$ integrated luminosity to achieve same results. One uncertainty in the aTGC measurement comes from the PDF uncertainty. Future LHeC PDF measurement will improve the precision of aTGC measurement in the $x \simeq \mathcal{O}(10^{-2})$ region.

3.3.10 Conclusion

With LHeC inclusive NC and CC DIS data, unique measurements of electroweak parameters can be performed with highest precision. Since inclusive DIS is mediated through space-like momentum transfer (t -channel exchange) the results are often complementary to other experiments,

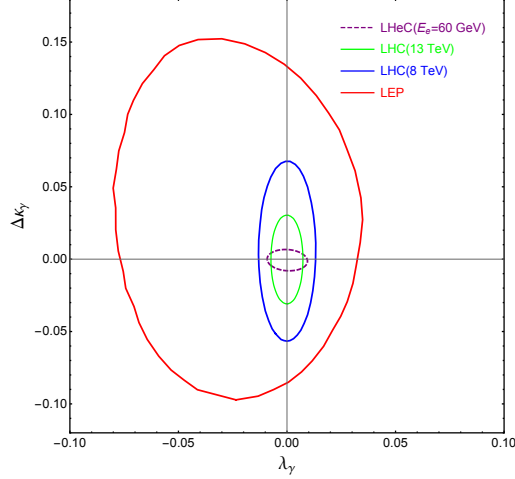


Figure 3.58: The 95% C.L. exclusion limit on the $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ - λ_γ plane. The purple dashed contour is the projected LHeC exclusion limit with 1 ab^{-1} integrated luminosity [334]. The blue, green and red contours are current bounds from LHC [337, 338] and LEP [339].

such as pp or e^+e^- collider experiments, where measurements are performed in the time-like regime and most often at the Z peak. Among many other quantities, measurements of the weak couplings of the light quarks, u and d , or their anomalous form factors $\rho'_{\text{NC},u/d}$ and $\kappa'_{\text{NC},u/d}$, can be performed uniquely due to the important contributions of valence quarks in the initial state. Also scale dependent measurements of weak interactions can be performed over a large range in $\sqrt{Q^2}$, which provides an interesting portal to BSM physics. The W boson mass can be determined with very small experimental uncertainties, such that theoretical uncertainties are expected to become more important than experimental uncertainties. While the parameters of the PDFs are determined together with the EW parameters in the present study, it is found that the PDFs do not induce a limitation of the uncertainties. Considering the dominating top-quark mass dependence of higher-order electroweak effects, one can realize that the LHeC will be competitive with the global electroweak fit after the HL-LHC era [112, 315].

Besides proving its own remarkable prospect on high-precision electroweak physics, the LHeC will further significantly improve the electroweak measurements in pp collisions at the LHC by reducing the presently sizeable influence of PDF and α_s uncertainties. This is discussed in section ??.

3.4 Top Quark Physics

SM top quark production at a future ep collider is dominated by single top quark production, mainly via CC DIS production. An example graph is shown in Fig. 3.59 (left). The total cross section is 1.89 pb at the LHeC [340] and with an electron beam energy of 60 GeV, and an LHC proton beam of 7 TeV, leading to a center-of-mass energy of 1.3 TeV, respectively. The other important top quark production mode is $t\bar{t}$ photoproduction with a total cross section of 0.05 pb at the LHeC [341]. An example graph is shown in Fig. 3.59 (right). This makes a future LHeC a top quark factory and an ideal tool to study top quarks with a high precision, and to analyze in particular their electroweak interaction. Selected highlights in top quark physics are summarized here.

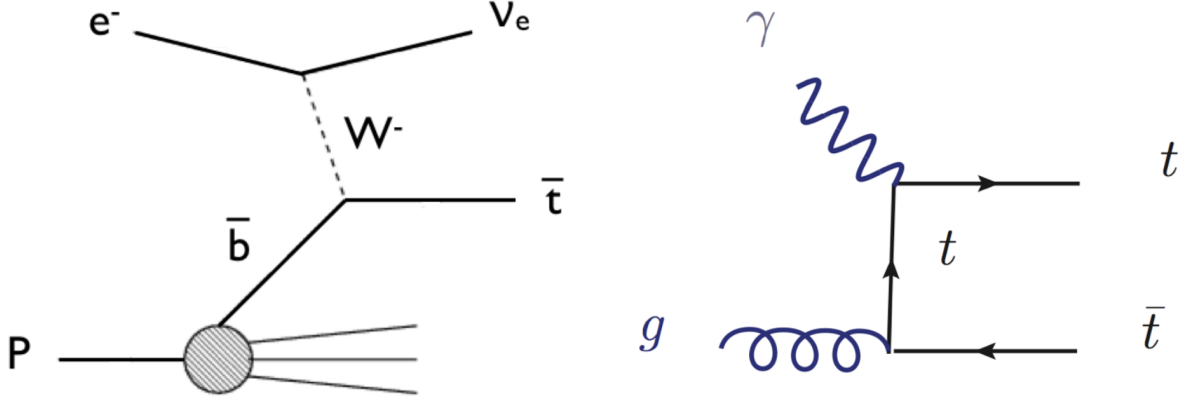


Figure 3.59: Example graphs for CC DIS top quark production (left) and top quark photoproduction (right).

3.4.1 Wtq Couplings

One flagship measurement is the direct measurement of the CKM matrix element $|V_{tb}|$, i.e. without making any model assumptions such as on the unitarity of the CKM matrix or the number of quark generations. An elaborate analysis of the single top quark CC DIS process at the LHeC including a detailed detector simulation using the DELPHES package [342] shows that already at 100 fb^{-1} of integrated luminosity an uncertainty of 1% can be expected. This compares to a total uncertainty of 4.1% of the currently most accurate result at the LHC Run-I performed by the CMS experiment [343].

The same analysis [340] can also be used to search for anomalous left- and right-handed Wtb vector (f_1^L, f_1^R) and tensor (f_2^L, f_2^R) couplings analyzing the following effective Lagrangian:

$$L = -\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}} \bar{b} \gamma^\mu V_{tb} (f_1^L P_L - f_1^R P_R) t W_\mu^- - \frac{g}{\sqrt{2}} \bar{b} \frac{i\sigma^{\mu\nu} q_\nu}{M_W} (f_2^L P_L - f_2^R P_R) t W_\mu^- + h.c. \quad (3.44)$$

In the SM $f_1^L = 1$ and $f_1^R = f_2^L = f_2^R = 0$. The effect of anomalous Wtb couplings is consistently evaluated in the production and the decay of the antitop quark, cf. Fig. 3.59 (left). Using hadronic top quark decays only, the expected accuracies in a measurement of these couplings as a function of the integrated luminosity are presented in Fig. 3.60 (upper left), derived from expected 95% C.L. limits on the cross section yields. The couplings can be measured with accuracies of 1% for the SM f_1^L coupling determining $|V_{tb}|$ (as discussed above) and of 4% for f_2^L , 9% for f_2^R , and 14% for f_1^R at 1 ab^{-1} .

Similarly, the CKM matrix elements $|V_{tx}|$ ($x = d, s$) can be extracted using a parameterization of deviations from their SM values with very high precision through W boson and bottom (light) quark associated production channels, where the W boson and b -jet (light jet $j = d, s$) final states can be produced via s-channel single top quark decay or t-channel top quark exchange as outlined in [344]. As an example, analyzing the processes

$$\text{Signal 1: } pe^- \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t} \rightarrow \nu_e W^- \bar{b} \rightarrow \nu_e \ell^- \nu_\ell \bar{b}$$

$$\text{Signal 2: } pe^- \rightarrow \nu_e W^- b \rightarrow \nu_e \ell^- \nu_\ell b$$

$$\text{Signal 3: } pe^- \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t} \rightarrow \nu_e W^- j \rightarrow \nu_e \ell^- \nu_\ell j$$

in an elaborate analysis including a detailed detector simulation using the DELPHES package [342], the expected accuracies on $|V_{td}|$ and $|V_{ts}|$ at the 2σ confidence level (C.L.) are shown as a function of the integrated luminosity in Fig. 3.60 (upper right, middle left). At 1 ab^{-1} of integrated luminosity and an electron polarization of 80%, the 2σ limits improve on existing limits from the LHC [345] (interpreted by [346]) by a factor of ≈ 3.5 . Analyzing Signal 3 alone, and even more when combining Signals 1, 2 and 3, will allow for the first time to achieve an accuracy of the order of the actual SM value of $|V_{ts}^{SM}| = 0.04108_{-0.0057}^{+0.0030}$ as derived from an indirect global CKM matrix fit [347], and will therefore represent a direct high precision measurement of this important top quark property. In these studies, upper limits at the 2σ level down to $|V_{ts}| < 0.06$, and $|V_{td}| < 0.06$ can be achieved.

3.4.2 FCNC Top Quark Couplings

Single top quark NC DIS production can be used to search for Flavor Changing Neutral Current (FCNC) $tu\gamma$, $tc\gamma$, tuZ , and tcZ couplings [348, 349] as represented by the Lagrangian

$$L = \sum_{q=u,c} \left(\frac{g_e}{2m_t} \bar{t}\sigma^{\mu\nu} (\lambda_q^L P_L + \lambda_q^R P_R) q A_{\mu\nu} + \frac{g_W}{4c_W m_Z} \bar{t}\sigma^{\mu\nu} (\kappa_q^L P_L + \kappa_q^R P_R) q Z_{\mu\nu} \right) + h.c. , \quad (3.45)$$

where g_e (g_W) is the electromagnetic (weak) coupling constant, c_W is the cosine of the weak mixing angle, $\lambda_q^{L,R}$ and $\kappa_q^{L,R}$ are the strengths of the anomalous top FCNC couplings (the values of these couplings vanish at the lowest order in the SM). In an elaborate analysis events including at least one electron and three jets (hadronic top quark decay) with high transverse momentum and within the pseudorapidity acceptance range of the detector are selected. The distributions of the invariant mass of two jets (reconstructed W boson mass) and an additional jet tagged as b -jet (reconstructed top quark mass) are used to further enhance signal over background events, mainly given by W + jets production. Signal and background interference effects are included. A detector simulation with DELPHES [342] is applied.

The expected limits on the branching ratios $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow q\gamma)$ and $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow qZ)$ as a function of the integrated luminosity at the 2σ C.L. are presented in Fig. 3.60 (middle right). Assuming an integrated luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} , limits of $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow q\gamma) < 1 \cdot 10^{-5}$ and $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow qZ) < 4 \cdot 10^{-5}$ are expected. This level of precision is close to actual predictions of concrete new phenomena models, such as SUSY, little Higgs, and technicolor, that have the potential to produce FCNC top quark couplings. This will improve on existing limits from the LHC by one order of magnitude [12]. Fig. 3.60 (lower left) shows how this sensitivity on $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow q\gamma)$ and $\text{BR}(t \rightarrow qZ)$ changes as a function of center-of-mass energy. At a future FCC-ep [12] with, for example, an electron beam energy of 60 GeV, and a proton beam energy of 50 TeV, leading to a center-of-mass energy of 3.5 TeV, the sensitivity on FCNC $tq\gamma$ couplings even exceed expected sensitivities from the High Luminosity-LHC (HL-LHC) with 300 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 14\text{ TeV}$, and from the International Linear Collider (ILC) with 500 fb^{-1} at $\sqrt{s} = 250\text{ GeV}$ [351, 352].

Another example for a sensitive search for anomalous top quark couplings is the one for FCNC tHq couplings as defined in

$$L = \kappa_{tuH} \bar{t}uH + \kappa_{tcH} \bar{t}cH + h.c. \quad (3.46)$$

This can be studied in CC DIS production, where singly produced top anti-quarks could decay via such couplings into a light anti-quark and a Higgs boson decaying into a bottom quark-antiquark pair, $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t} \rightarrow \nu_e H \bar{q} \rightarrow \nu_e b \bar{b} \bar{q}$ [350]. Another signal involves the FCNC tHq coupling in the production vertex, i.e. a light quark from the proton interacts via t-channel top

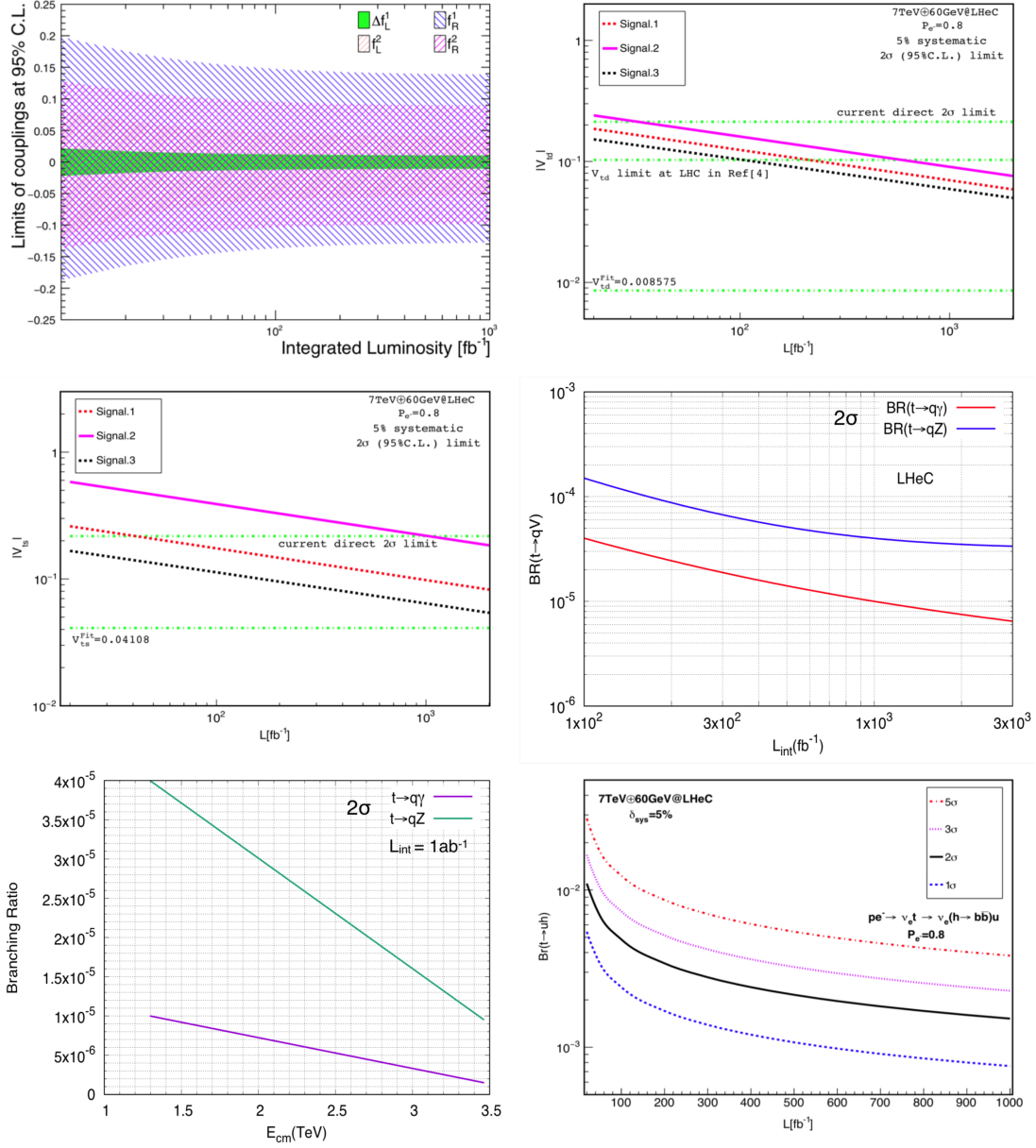


Figure 3.60: Expected sensitivities as a function of the integrated luminosity on the SM and anomalous Wtb couplings [340] (upper left), on $|V_{td}|$ (upper right) and $|V_{ts}|$ (middle left) [344], on FCNC $t \rightarrow qV$ branching ratios (middle right) [348, 349], and on FCNC $t \rightarrow uH$ branching ratios [350] (lower left). The expected upper limits on FCNC $t \rightarrow qV$ branching ratios are also shown as a function of the center-of-mass-energy (lower right).

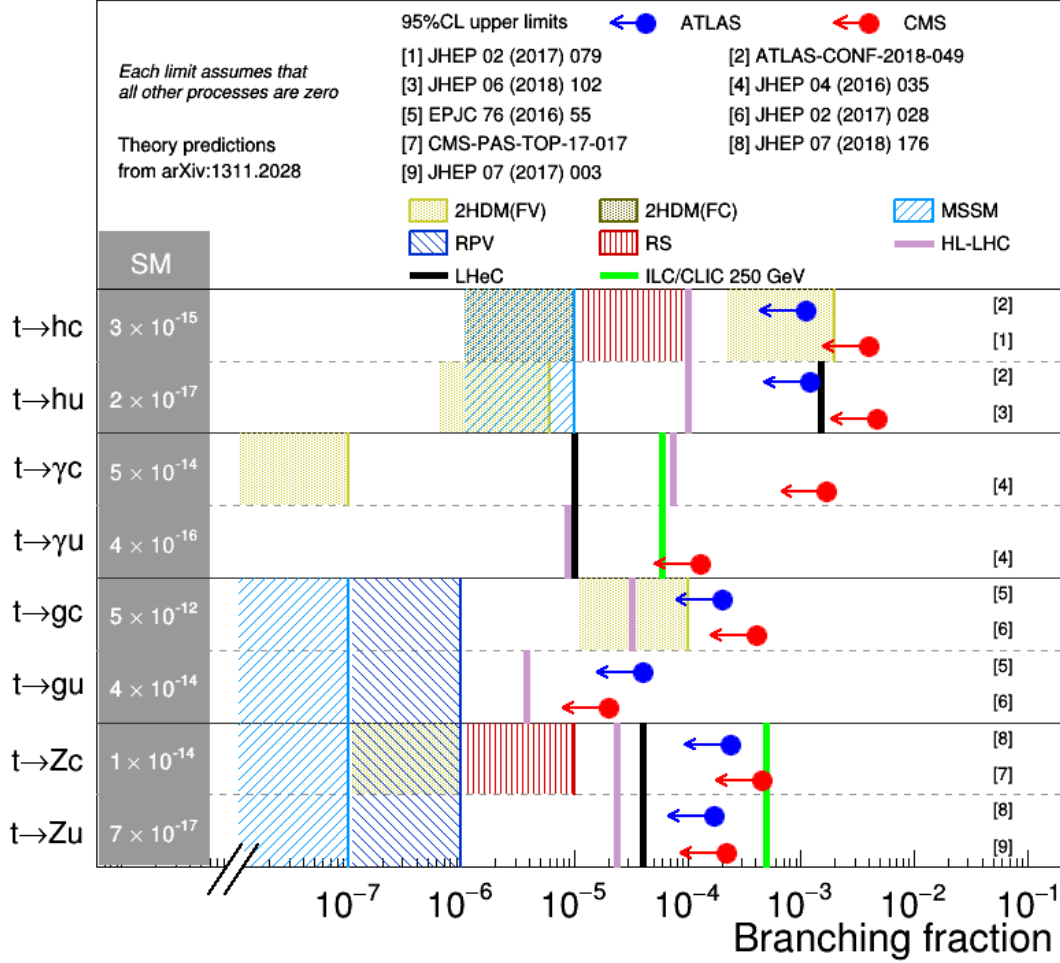


Figure 3.61: Comparison of top quark FCNC branching ratio limits at the LHC, HL-LHC, LHeC, and ILC/CLIC colliders.

quark exchange with a W boson radiated from the initial electron producing a b quark and a Higgs boson decaying into a bottom quark-antiquark pair, $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e H b \rightarrow \nu_e b \bar{b} b$ [350]. This channel is superior in sensitivity to the previous one due to the clean experimental environment when requiring three identified b -jets. Largest backgrounds are given by $Z \rightarrow b \bar{b}$, SM $H \rightarrow b \bar{b}$, and single top quark production with hadronic top quark decays. A 5% systematic uncertainty for the background yields is added. Furthermore, the analysis assumes parameterized resolutions for electrons, photons, muons, jets and unclustered energy using typical parameters taken from the ATLAS experiment. Furthermore, a b -tag rate of 60%, a c -jet fake rate of 10%, and a light-jet fake rate of 1% is assumed. The selection is optimized for the different signal contributions separately. Fig. 3.60 (lower right), shows the expected upper limit on the branching ratio $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow Hu)$ with 1σ , 2σ , 3σ , and 5σ C.L. as a function of the integrated luminosity for the $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e H b \rightarrow \nu_e b \bar{b} b$ signal process. For an integrated luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} , upper limits of $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow Hu) < 0.15 \cdot 10^{-3}$ are expected at the 2σ C.L.

In Fig. 3.61 the different expected limits on various flavor-changing neutral current (FCNC) top quark couplings from the LHeC are summarized, and compared to results from the LHC and the HL-LHC. This clearly shows the competitiveness of the LHeC results, and documents the complementarity of the results gained at different colliders.

3.4.3 Other Top Quark Property Measurements and Searches for New Physics

Other exciting results not presented here involve, for example, the study of the CP-nature in $t\bar{t}H$ production [353], searches for anomalous $t\bar{t}\gamma$ and $t\bar{t}Z$ chromoelectric and chromomagnetic dipole moments in $t\bar{t}$ production [341], the study of top quark spin and polarisation [354], and the investigation of the top quark structure function inside the proton [1, 355].

3.4.4 Summary Top Quark Physics

Top quark physics at the LHeC represents a very rich and diverse field of research involving high precision measurements of top quark properties, and sensitive searches for new physics. Only a few highlights involving Wtq and FCNC top quark couplings are presented here. One particular highlight is the expected direct measurement of the CKM matrix element $|V_{tb}|$ with a precision of less than 1%. Furthermore, FCNC top quark couplings can be studied with a precision high enough to explore those couplings in a regime that might be affected by actual new phenomena models, such as SUSY, little Higgs, and technicolor.

It has been shown [12], that results from future e^+e^- -colliders, eh -colliders, and hh -colliders deliver complementary information and will therefore give us a more complete understanding of the properties of the heaviest elementary particle known to date, and of the top quark sector in general.

3.5 Novel QCD phenomena at the LHeC

Section needs to be polished and parts to be integrated into other places.

Intrinsic Heavy Quark Phenomena One of the most interesting nonperturbative quantum field theoretic aspect of hadron light front wavefunctions in QCD are the intrinsic heavy-quark Fock states [356–358]. Consider a heavy-quark loop insertion to the proton’s self-energy. The heavy-quark loop can be attached by gluons to just one valence quark. The cut of such diagrams yields the standard DGLAP gluon splitting contribution to the proton’s heavy quark structure function. In this case, the heavy quarks are produced at very small x . However, the heavy quark loop can also be attached to two or more valence quarks in the proton self-energy. In the case of QED this corresponds to the light-by-light lepton loop insertion in an atomic wavefunction. In the case of QCD, the heavy quark loop can be attached by three gluons to two or three valence quarks in the proton self-energy. This is a non-Abelian insertion to the hadron’s self-energy. The cut of such diagrams gives the “intrinsic” heavy-quark contribution to the proton’s light-front wavefunction. In the case of QCD, the probability for an intrinsic heavy $Q\bar{Q}$ pair scales as $\frac{1}{M_Q^2}$; this is in contrast to heavy $\ell\bar{\ell}$ lepton pairs in QED where the probability for heavy lepton pairs in an atomic wavefunction scales as $\frac{1}{M_\ell^4}$. This difference in heavy-particle scaling in mass distinguishes Abelian from non-Abelian theories.

A basic property of hadronic light-front wavefunctions is that they have strong fall-off with the invariant mass of the Fock state. For example, the LFWFs of the color-confining AdS/QCD models [359] $\mathcal{M}^2 = [\sum_i k_i^\mu]^2$ of the Fock state constituents. This means that the probability is maximized when the constituents have equal true rapidity; i.e., $x_i \propto \sqrt{(\vec{k}_{\perp i}^2 + m_i^2)}$. Thus the heavy quarks carry most of the momentum in an intrinsic heavy quark Fock state. For example,

the charm quark in the intrinsic charm Fock state $|uudc\bar{c}\rangle$ of a proton carries about 40% of the proton's momentum: $x_c \sim 0.4$. After a high energy collision, the co-moving constituents can then recombine to form the final state hadrons. along the proton. Thus in a ep collision, the comoving udc quarks from the $|uudc\bar{c}\rangle$ intrinsic 5-quark Fock state can recombine to a Λ_c , where $x_{\Lambda_c} = x_c + x_u + x_d \sim 0.5$. Similarly, the comoving dcc in the $|uudc\bar{c}\bar{c}\rangle$ intrinsic 7-quark Fock state can recombine to a $\Xi(ccd)^+$, with $x_{\Xi(ccd)} = x_c + x_c + x_d \sim 0.9$.

Thus, In the intrinsic heavy quark model, the wavefunction of a hadron in QCD can be represented as a superposition of Fock state fluctuations, *e.g.* $|n_V\rangle$, $|n_V g\rangle$, $|n_V Q\bar{Q}\rangle$, \dots components where $n_V \equiv dds$ for Σ^- , uud for proton, $\bar{u}d$ for π^- and $u\bar{d}$ for π^+ . Charm hadrons can be produced by coalescence in the wavefunctions of the moving hadron. Doubly-charmed hadrons require fluctuations such as $|n_V c\bar{c}c\bar{c}\rangle$. The probability for these Fock state fluctuations to come on mass shell is inversely proportional to the square of the quark mass, $\mathcal{O}(m_Q^{-2n})$ where n is the number of $Q\bar{Q}$ pairs in the hadron. Thus the natural domain for heavy hadrons produced from heavy quark Fock states is $k_{\perp Q}^2 \sim m_Q^2$ and high light-front momentum fraction x_Q [356, 357, 357, 358]. For example, the rapidity regime for double-charm hadron production $y_{cd} \sim 3$ at low energies is well within the kinematic experiment domain of a fixed target experiment such as SELEX at the Tevatron [360]. Note that the intrinsic heavy-quark mechanism can account for many previous observations of forward heavy hadron production single and double J/ψ production by pions observed at high $x_F > 0.4$ in the low energy fixed target NA3 experiment, the high x_F production of $pp \rightarrow \Lambda_c + X$ and $pp \rightarrow \Lambda_b + X$ observed at the ISR; single and double $\Upsilon(b\bar{b})$ production, as well as *quadra-bottom* tetraquark $[bb\bar{b}\bar{b}]$ production observed recently by the AnDY experiment at RHIC [274]. In addition the EMC collaboration observed that the charm quark distribution in the proton at $x_{bj} = 0.42$ and $Q^2 = 75 \text{ GeV}^2$ is 30 times larger than expected from DGLAP evolution. All of these experimental observations are naturally explained by the intrinsic heavy quark mechanism. The SELEX observation [360] of double charm baryons at high x_F reflects production from double intrinsic heavy quark Fock states of the baryon projectile. Similarly, the high x_F domain – which would be accessible in the forward high x_F domain – is the natural production domain for heavy hadron production at the LHeC.

The production of heavy hadrons based on intrinsic heavy quark Fock states is thus remarkable efficient and greatly extends the kinematic domain of the LHeC; *e.g.*, for processes such as $\gamma^* b \rightarrow Z^0 b$. This is in contrast with the standard production cross sections based on gluon splitting, where only a small fraction of the incident momentum is effective in creating heavy hadrons.

Radiation Amplitude Zero @To be integrated elsewhere, *e.g.* merge with electroweak, or charm in CC, or BSM. The LHeC is ideal for testing a novel feature of the Standard Model: the “radiation amplitude zero” [361–364] of the amplitude $\gamma W^- \rightarrow c\bar{b}$ and related amplitudes. See Fig. 3.62. The Born amplitude is predicted to vanish and change sign at $\cos\theta_{CM} = \frac{e_{\bar{b}}}{e_W} = -1/3$. This LHeC measurement tests W compositeness and its zero anomalous magnetic moment at leading order: $g_W = 2, \kappa_W = 1$, as well as $g_q = 2$ for quarks.. One can also test the radiation amplitude zero for the top quark from $\gamma b \rightarrow W^- t$.

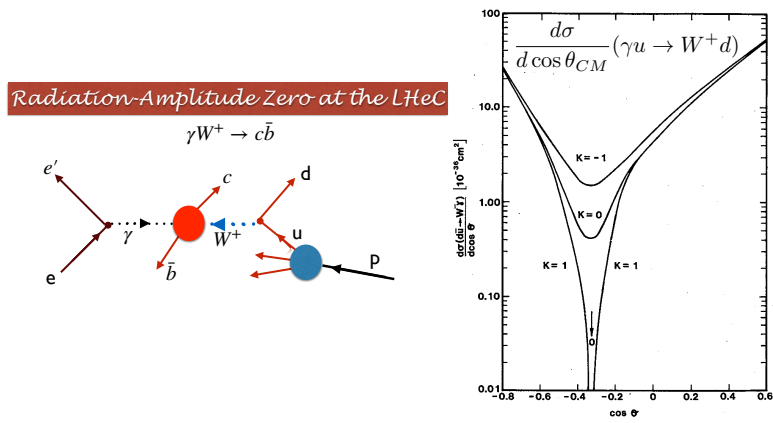


Figure 3.62: The radiation amplitude zero of the Standard Model in $\gamma W^+ \rightarrow c\bar{b}$ and $\gamma u \rightarrow W^+ d$. The prediction for the angular distribution $\frac{d\sigma}{d\cos(\theta_{CM})}(\gamma u \rightarrow W^+ d)$ is from ref. [364].

Chapter 4

Nuclear Particle Physics with Electron-Ion Scattering at the LHeC

4.1 Introduction

The LHeC accelerator, in addition to being a powerful machine for exploring proton structure, will allow for the first time studies of DIS off nuclei in a collider mode. The nuclear structure has been previously studied in fixed target experiments with charged lepton and neutrino beams, see [365–377] and references therein. Due to the energy limitations of the machines operating in this mode, the kinematic range covered by these experiments is rather narrow, mostly limited to relatively large values of $x \geq 0.01$ and low to moderate Q^2 , in the range $Q^2 < 100 \text{ GeV}^2$. The precise kinematic range covered by experiments is shown in Fig. 4.1, where the DIS experiments overlap to a large degree with the data from hadronic collisions using the Drell-Yan (DY) process. These fixed target DIS and DY data dominate the data sets used in the fits for the nuclear parton distribution functions. In addition, in some analyses of nuclear PDFs, data on inclusive single hadron production $d\text{Au}$ at RHIC and EW bosons and dijets in $p\text{Pb}$ at the LHC are included.

As is clear from Fig. 4.1 the LHeC will be able to cover a very large range in (x, Q^2) in eA , previously unexplored in experiments. It will extend the range in x down to $\sim 10^{-7}$ and have a huge lever arm in Q^2 from very low values up to 10^6 GeV^2 . It will also be complementary to the EIC [191] machine, extending the range in x by two orders of magnitude and in Q^2 by about 2.5 orders of magnitude with respect to it.

Due to large statistics and modern, specialised detectors, it will be possible to study nuclear structure at the LHeC with unprecedented precision in a kinematical range far wider than previously possible and with the controlled systematics of one single experiment. There are a large number of important physics topics that can be addressed in eA collisions at the LHeC:

- A precise determination of nuclear parton densities for a single nucleus (lead, and eventually lighter ions) will be possible. In particular, the current huge uncertainties in nuclear gluon and sea quark densities at low x will be dramatically improved using the data from the LHeC. In analogy to the proton PDF extraction described in previous sections, full flavour decomposition in the nuclear case could be achieved using both NC and CC data with heavy flavour identification.
- Precision measurement of semi-inclusive and exclusive processes will enable an exploration of new details of the nuclear structure. Similarly to the proton case, DVCS and exclusive

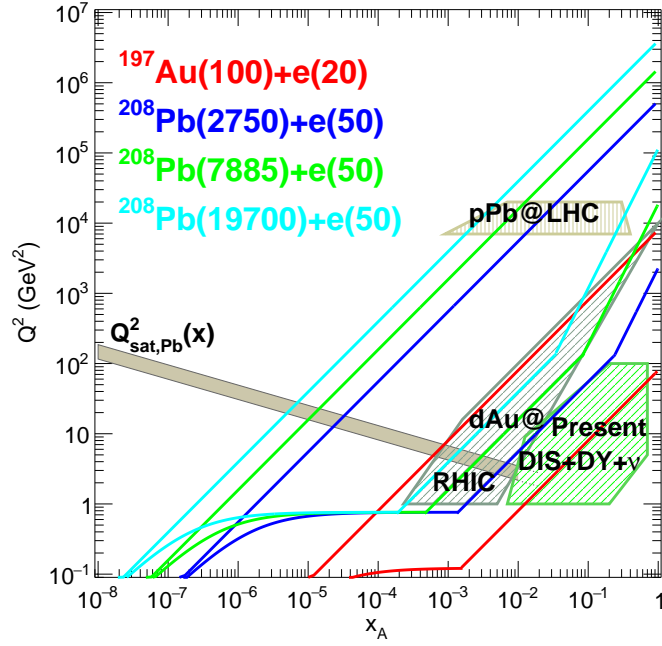


Figure 4.1: Kinematic regions in the $x - Q^2$ plane explored by different data sets (charged lepton and neutrino DIS, DY, dAu at RHIC and pPb at the LHC) used in present nPDF analyses [378], compared to the ones achievable at the EIC (red), the LHeC (ERL against the HL-LHC beams, dark blue) and two FCC-eh versions (with Pb beams corresponding to proton energies $E_p = 20$ TeV - green and $E_p = 50$ TeV - light blue). Acceptance of the detector for the electrons is taken to be $1^\circ < \theta < 179^\circ$, and $0.01(0.001) < y < 1$ for the EIC (all other colliders). The saturation scale Q_{sat} shown here for indicative purposes only, see also [379], has been drawn for a Pb nucleus considering an uncertainty ~ 2 and a behaviour with energy following the model in [380]. Note that it only indicates a region where saturation effects are expected to be important but there is no sharp transition between the linear and non-linear regimes.

vector-meson production will provide unique insight into 3D nuclear structure.

- The LHeC will offer unprecedented opportunities to extract diffractive parton densities in nuclei for the first time. A first detailed analysis [223] indicates that the achievable precision on diffractive PDFs in nuclei will be comparable to that possible in the proton case. The measurements of diffraction on protons and nuclei as well as the inclusive structure functions in the nuclear case will allow us to explore the very important relation between nuclear shadowing and diffraction [381].
- The LHeC will be able to test and establish or exclude the phenomenon of parton saturation at low x in protons and nuclei. According to the Color Glass Condensate framework [382, 383], parton saturation is a density effect that can be achieved in two ways, either by decreasing the value of x or by increasing the size of the target by increasing A . The LHeC will be a unique machine to address both of their variations, such that the ideas of saturation could be precisely tested. It will be possible to search for parton saturation in a variety of ways which include, among others, the search for tensions in DGLAP fits, the study of the diffraction, in particular the ratios of diffractive to inclusive cross sections, and the study of particle azimuthal de-correlations.
- Finally, the LHeC machine in eA mode will have a huge impact onto physics explored in

pA and AA collisions, see Sec. 7.4, where it will provide vital input and constraints on the ‘baseline’ initial state in nuclear collisions, measurements of the impact of a cold nuclear medium on hard probes and effects of hadronisation. It will also explore the initial state correlations on the final state observables relevant for understanding collectivity in small systems explored in pp or pA collisions.

As commented below, these aims will require an experimental apparatus with large rapidity coverage and associated forward and backward electron, photons, hadron and nuclear detectors. In addition the detector design should allow to precisely measure diffractive events in eA and allow the clean separation of radiative events, most important for the case of DVCS and exclusive diffraction.

In this Chapter we do not address issues on the nuclear modification on jet yields and fragmentation that are expected to show dramatic effects and to be of great importance for heavy-ion collisions. All these aspects were previously discussed in [1].

4.2 Nuclear Parton Densities

PDFs are essential ingredients in our understanding of the dynamics of the strong interaction. First, they encode important information about the structure of hadrons [384,385]. Second, they are indispensable for the description of hadronic collisions within standard collinear factorisation [386]. Concerning nuclei, it has been known for more than 40 years that structure functions are strongly affected by the nuclear environment [376,377] so that they cannot be interpreted as a simple superposition of structure functions of free nucleons. In the standard approach, within collinear factorization, the nuclear modification is included in the parametrisation of the parton densities. This means that the parton densities in a bound nucleon are different from those in a free nucleon, and the difference is encoded in the non-perturbative initial conditions of the parton densities at some low, initial scale Q_0^2 . The present status of nuclear parton densities (nPDFs), see for example [387,388], can be summarised as follows:

- Modern analyses [378,389–391] are performed at next-to-leading order (NLO) and next-to-next-to-leading order (NNLO) [45,392]. Differences between the different groups mainly arise from the different sets of data included in the analyses¹ and from the different functional forms employed for the initial conditions.
- Many sets of data are presented as ratios of cross section for a given nucleus over that in deuterium, which is loosely bound and isoscalar. Therefore, it has become customary to work in terms of ratios of nPDFs:

$$R_i(x, Q^2) = \frac{f_i^A(x, Q^2)}{A f_i^P(x, Q^2)}, \quad i = u, d, s, c, b, g, \dots, \quad (4.1)$$

with $f_i^{p(A)}(x, Q^2)$ the corresponding parton density in a free proton p or in nucleus A . These nuclear modification factors are parametrised at initial scale Q_0^2 (assuming isospin symmetry to hold). The nPDFs are then obtained multiplying the nuclear modification factors by some given set of free proton PDFs.

¹The main difference lies in the use or not of neutrino-Pb cross sections (whose usage has been controversial [393–395], particularly the NuTeV data [366] from the Fe nucleus) from CHORUS and $\pi^{0,\pm}$ transverse momentum spectra from dAu collisions at the Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider (RHIC).

- The available data come from a large variety of nuclei and the number of data points for any of them individually is very small compared to the proton analyses. In particular, for the Pb nucleus there are less than 50 points coming from the fixed target DIS and DY experiments and from particle production data in $p\text{Pb}$ collisions at the Large Hadron Collider (LHC). The fit for a single nucleus is therefore impossible and the modelling of the A -dependence of the parameters in the initial conditions becomes mandatory [378, 391]. The most up to date analyses include between 1000 and 2000 data points for 14 nuclei.
- The kinematic coverage in Q^2 and x with existing data is very small compared to that of present hadronic colliders. The ultimate precision and large coverage of the kinematic plane for nPDFs can only be provided by a high energy electron-ion collider. Meanwhile, the only experimental collision system where nPDFs can be currently constrained are hadronic and ultraperipheral collisions (UPCs). It is important to stress that extracting PDFs from these collisions presents many theoretical challenges. These are related to the question of applicability of collinear factorization for nuclear collisions, higher twist effects, scale choices and other theoretical uncertainties.

All parton species are very weakly constrained at small $x < 10^{-2}$ [396], gluons are poorly known at large $x > 0.2$, and the flavour decomposition is largely unknown - a natural fact for u and d due to the approximate isospin symmetry in nuclei². The impact of presently available LHC data, studied using reweighting [37, 397] in [398, 399] and included in the fit in [378], is quite modest with some constraints on the gluon and the strange quark in the region $0.01 < x < 0.3$. On the other hand, theoretical predictions for nuclear shadowing of quark and gluon PDFs based on s -channel unitarity and diffractive nucleon PDFs are available down to $x \sim 10^{-4} - 10^{-5}$ [381, 400, 401]. Predictions on the flavour dependence of nuclear effects in the antishadowing region [402] cannot be confirmed with present data.

Future runs at the LHC will offer some further possibilities for improving our knowledge on nPDFs [403]. However, the ideal place to determine parton densities is DIS, either at the Electron Ion Collider (EIC) [191] in the USA or, in a much larger kinematic domain (see Fig. 4.1), at the LHeC. DIS measurements in such configurations offer unprecedented possibilities to enlarge our knowledge of parton densities through a complete unfolding of all flavours.

In the following, we show the possibilities for constraining the PDFs for a Pb nucleus at the LHeC. In the next subsection, Subsec. 4.2.1, we discuss the corresponding pseudodata for the inclusive cross section in electron-nucleus scattering. Next, in Subsec. 4.2.2 we discuss how the pseudodata will be introduced in a global nPDF fit. Finally, in Subsec. 4.2.3 it is demonstrated how the PDFs of Pb can be extracted with a very good precision from the LHeC data only, without requiring any other set of data.

4.2.1 Pseudodata

The LHeC provides measurements of eA scattering cross sections in the deep inelastic scattering region $Q^2 > 1 \text{ GeV}^2$ reaching values of Q^2 up to about $5 \cdot 10^5 \text{ GeV}^2$ and corresponding x values between a few times 10^{-6} and near to $x = 1$. This enables the determination of a complete set of nPDFs in $e\text{Pb}$ scattering at the LHeC from the inclusive neutral and charged current cross sections with a clean separation of up and down valence and sea quark distributions. The very high Q^2 region which reaches much beyond the W mass squared makes the CC measurements extremely valuable for the separation of different flavours when taken together with the

²The u - d difference is suppressed by a factor $2Z/A - 1$.

NC, from photon and Z boson exchange. Charm tagging in CC determines the anti-strange quark distribution in a wide kinematic range to typically 10 – 20 % precision, while charm and beauty tagging in NC provide high precision determinations of xc and xb from nuclei. Using coherent data from just this one experiment the uncertainties of these nPDFs will follow from a straightforward $\Delta\chi^2 = 1$ criterion.

The QCD analyses of pseudo LHeC cross section data illustrated subsequently employ sets of simulated NC and CC measurements under assumptions on precision which are summarised in Table 4.1, see [404]. The cross section simulation was done numerically employing derivative formulae from [187] and found to compare well to a detailed Monte Carlo simulation when tested for the conditions of the H1 experiment. The assumptions made are all reasonable when comparing with the H1 achievements, allowing for further improvements owing to new detector techniques and higher statistics. The control of radiative corrections in eA scattering is a special challenge as these grow $\propto Z^2$. The LHeC detector thus needs to be equipped with reliable photon detectors and the exploitation of the energy-momentum conservation, via the $E - p_z$ cut, should further reduce the effect of photon radiation to a few per cent level. It is also to be noted that the semi-inclusive measurements of the s , c and b quark distributions carry additional uncertainties for tagging, acceptance and background influences.

Source of uncertainty	Error on the source or cross section
Scattered electron energy scale	0.1 %
Scattered electron polar angle	0.1 mrad
Hadronic energy scale	0.5 %
Calorimeter noise ($y < 0.01$)	1–3 %
Radiative corrections	1–2 %
Photoproduction background	1 %
Global efficiency error	0.7 %

Table 4.1: Summary of assumed systematic uncertainties for future inclusive cross section measurements at the LHeC.

Fig. 4.2 illustrates the kinematic reach of the NC+CC pseudodata at the LHeC and the FCC-eh, in ep and ePb collisions. In addition to inclusive data, semi-inclusive measurements with flavour sensitivity are also included. They will allow us to determine the strange, charm and beauty (also the top) PDFs. The principal technique is charm tagging (in CC for xs , in NC for xc) and beauty tagging (in NC for xb). The beam spot of the LHeC has a transverse extension of about $(7\mu\text{m})^2$. Modern Si detectors have a resolution of a few microns to be compared with typical decay lengths of charm and beauty particles of hundreds of μm . The experimental challenges then are the beam pipe radius, coping at the LHeC with strong synchrotron radiation effects, and the forward tagging acceptance, similar to the HL-LHC challenges.

A study was made of the possible measurements of the anti-strange density in nuclei (Fig. 4.3 top) using impact parameter tagging in eA CC scattering, and of the charm and beauty structure functions in NC (Figs. 4.3 middle and 4.3 bottom, respectively). Following experience on heavy flavour tagging at HERA and ATLAS, assumptions were made on the charm and beauty tagging efficiencies, to be 10 % and 60 %, respectively. The light quark background in the charm analysis is assumed to be controllable to per cent level, while the charm background in the beauty tagging sample is assumed to be 10 %. The tagging efficiencies and background contaminations affect the statistical error. Moreover, an additional systematic error is assumed in the simulated NC (CC) measurements of 3 (5) %. These result in very promising measurements of the heavier quark distributions: to about 10 – 20 % total uncertainty on the strange and 3 – 5 % on the

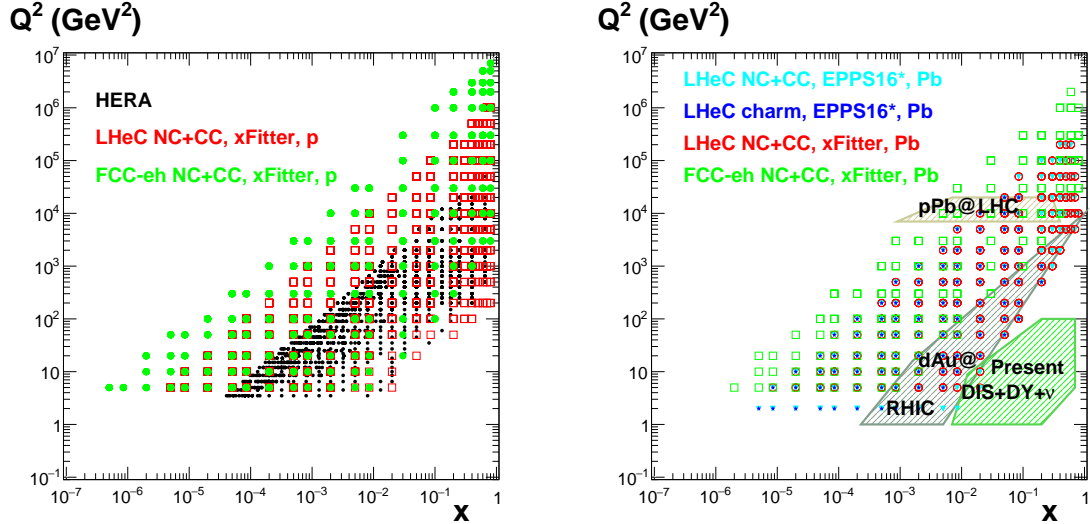


Figure 4.2: Left: kinematic $x - Q^2$ plot of the NC+CC pseudodata on a proton at the LHeC (red symbols) and the FCC-eh (green symbols) used in the xFitter analysis in section 4.2.3; data used in analysis at HERA (black symbols) are shown for comparison. Right: kinematic $x - Q^2$ plot of the pseudodata on Pb used in the EPPS16 analysis at the LHeC (NC+CC, light blue symbols, and charm, dark blue symbols) in section 4.2.2, and in the xFitter analysis in Subsec. 4.2.3 (at the LHeC, red symbols, and the FCC-eh, green symbols); the regions explored by currently available data sets (charged lepton and neutrino DIS, DY, dAu at RHIC and pPb at the LHC) used in present nPDF analyses [378] are shown for comparison.

charm and beauty measurements, for typically x between 10^{-4} and 0.1 and Q^2 extending from below threshold m_Q^2 up to a few times 10^4 GeV^2 . The knowledge of the heavy quark densities is of prime relevance for understanding nuclear structure and the development of QCD as has often been emphasised.

4.2.2 Nuclear gluon PDFs in a global-fit context

To illustrate the impact of the LHeC ePb pseudodata in the global context, they have been added [405] into the EPPS16 global analysis of nuclear PDFs [378]. The EPPS16 strategy is to parametrize the nuclear modification ratios $R_i(x, Q^2)$ between the bound-proton PDFs $f_i^{p/Pb}$ and proton PDFs f_i^p ,

$$R_i(x, Q^2) \equiv \frac{f_i^{p/Pb}(x, Q^2)}{f_i^p(x, Q^2)}, \quad (4.2)$$

at the charm mass threshold $Q^2 = m_{charm}^2 = (1.3 \text{ GeV})^2$. At higher Q^2 the nuclear PDFs are obtained by solving the standard DGLAP evolution equations at next-to-leading order in QCD. As the LHeC pseudodata reach to significantly lower x than the data that were used in the EPPS16 analysis, an extended small- x parametrisation was used for gluons, see Figure 4.4. The framework is almost identical to that in Ref. [406]. The introduced functional form allows for rather wild – arguably unphysical – behaviour at small- x where e.g. significant enhancement is allowed. This is contrary to the theoretical expectations from the saturation conjecture and looks also to be an improbable scenario given the recent LHCb D and B meson measurements [407, 408] which impressively indicate [409] gluon shadowing down to $x \sim 10^{-5}$ at interaction scales as low as $Q^2 \sim m_{charm}^2$. On the other hand, given that there are no prior DIS measurements in this kinematic range for nuclei other than the proton, and that the D and B meson production in

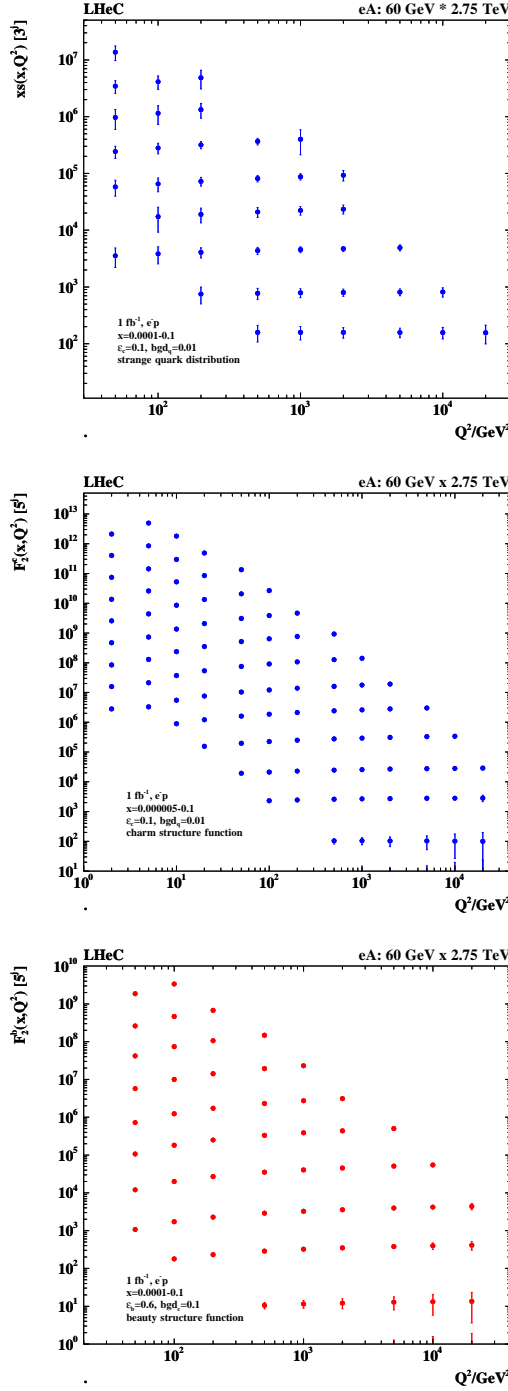


Figure 4.3: Top: Simulation of the measurement of the (anti)-strange quark distribution $x\bar{s}(x, Q^2)$ in charged current eA scattering through the t -channel reaction $W^- \bar{s} \rightarrow c$; *Middle:* Simulation of the measurement of the charm quark distribution expressed as $F_2^c = e_c^2 x(c + \bar{c})$ in neutral current eA scattering; *Bottom:* Simulation of the measurement of the bottom quark distribution expressed as $F_2^b = e_b^2 x(b + \bar{b})$ in neutral current eA scattering. The data are plotted with full systematic and statistical errors added in quadrature.

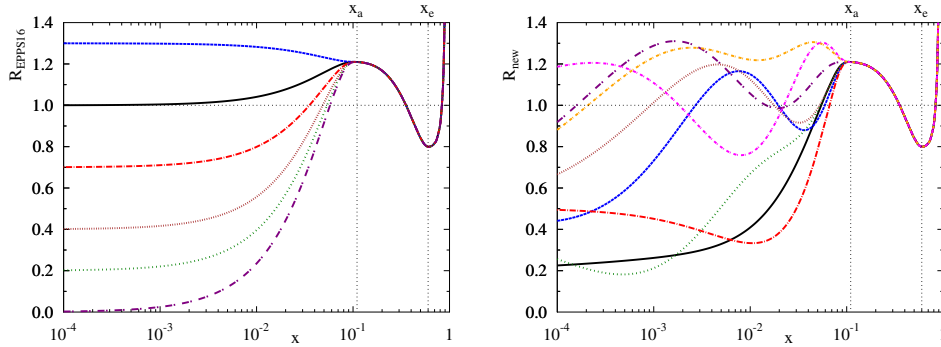


Figure 4.4: Left: Illustration of the functional behaviours allowed at small x in the EPPS16 analysis. Right: Illustration of the possible functional variations at small x in the extended parametrisation.

p Pb collisions could be affected by strong final-state effects (which could eventually be resolved by e.g. measurements of forward prompt photons [410] in p Pb), we hypothesize that any kind of behaviour is possible at this stage. Anyway, with the extended parametrisation – called here EPPS16* – the uncertainties in the small- x regime get significantly larger than in the standard EPPS16 set. This is reflected as significantly larger PDF error bands in comparison to the projected LHeC pseudodata. It is shown in Figure 4.5 where EPPS16* predictions are compared with the LHeC pseudodata for inclusive NC and CC reactions, as well as charm production in neutral-current scattering. The uncertainties are estimated using the Hessian method [411] and the same overall tolerance $\Delta\chi^2 = 52$ as in the EPPS16 analysis has been used when defining the error bands. Because there are no small- x data constraints for gluons, the gluon uncertainty is enormous and the Hessian method used for estimating the uncertainties is not particularly accurate, i.e. the true $\Delta\chi^2 = 52$ error bands are likely to be even larger. At some point the downward uncertainty will be limited by positivity constraints e.g. for F_L , but will depend strongly on which Q^2 is used to set the positivity constraints (e.g. in the EPPS16 analysis F_L is required to remain positive at $Q^2 = m_{charm}^2$).

Upon including the LHeC e Pb pseudodata in the fit, the new nPDFs adapt to reproduce the pseudodata and their uncertainties are greatly reduced, as shown in Figure 4.6. The overall tolerance has been kept fixed to the default value $\Delta\chi^2 = 52$. The impact on the nuclear modification of the gluon PDF is illustrated in Figure 4.7 at two values of Q^2 : $Q^2 = 1.69 \text{ GeV}^2$ (the parametrisation scale) and $Q^2 = 10 \text{ GeV}^2$. Already the inclusive pseudodata are able to reduce the small- x gluon uncertainty quite significantly, and the addition of the charm data promises an even more dramatic reduction in the errors. The analysis indicates that the LHeC will nail the nuclear gluon PDF to a high precision down to x of at least 10^{-5} .

4.2.3 nPDFs from DIS on a single nucleus

Another approach that becomes possible with the large kinematic coverage and volume of data for a single nucleus, Pb, at the LHeC and FCC-eh, is to perform a fit to only Pb data in order to extract the Pb PDFs, removing the need to interpolate between different nuclei. Then the corresponding ratios or nuclear modification factors for each parton species can be obtained using either a proton PDF set from a global fit or, as we do here (see [12, 412, 413]), from a fit to proton LHeC and FCC-eh pseudodata. In this way, there will be no need to introduce a nuclear size dependence in the parameters for the initial condition for DGLAP evolution. Such nPDFs can then be used for comparing to those obtained from global fits and for precision tests

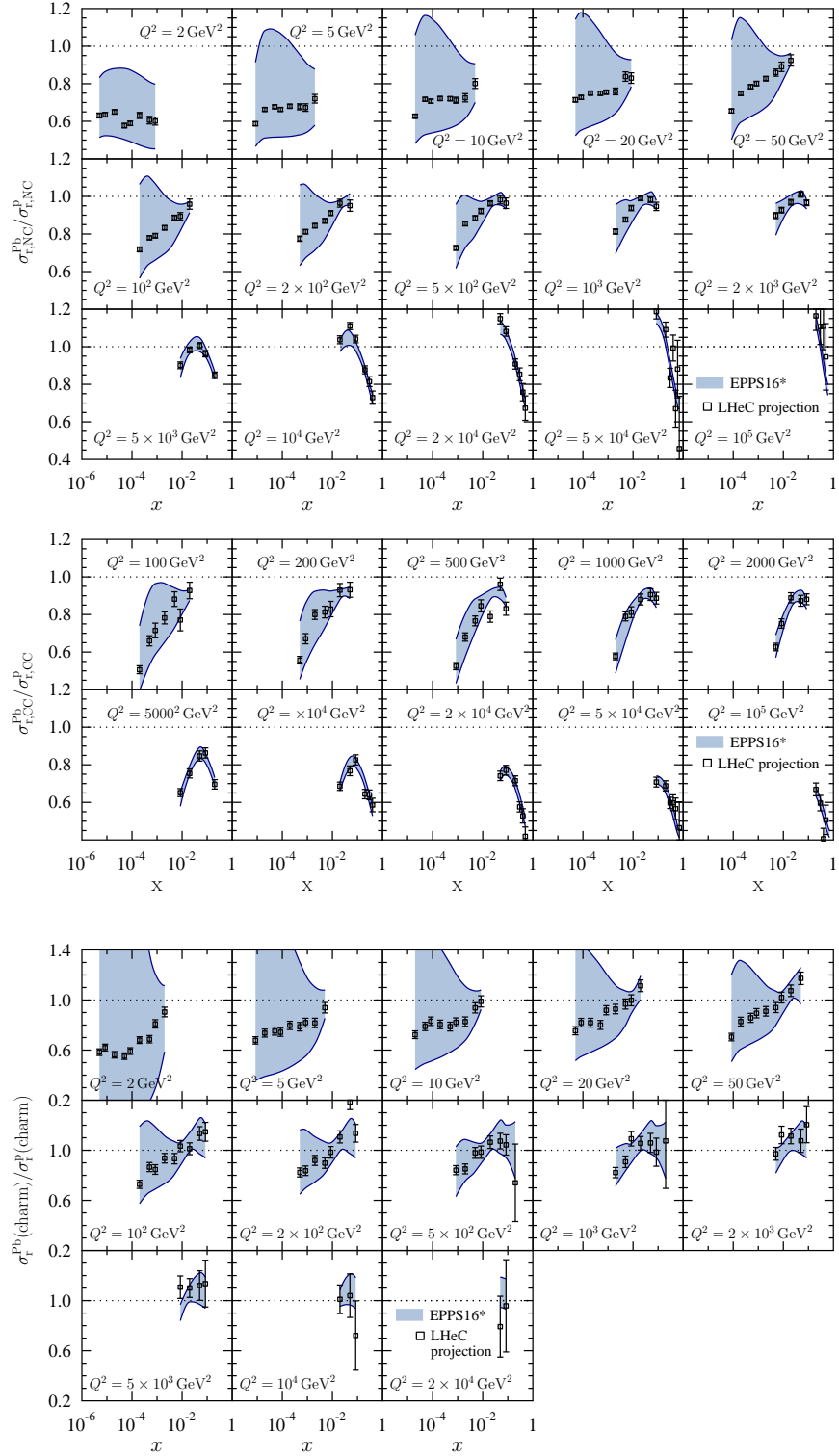


Figure 4.5: Top: Simulated ratios of neutral-current reduced cross sections between $e\text{Pb}$ and ep collisions compared with the predictions from a EPPS16-type global fit of nuclear PDFs using an extended parametrisation for gluons. Middle: Charged-current cross section ratios. Bottom: Neutral-current charm-production cross section ratios.

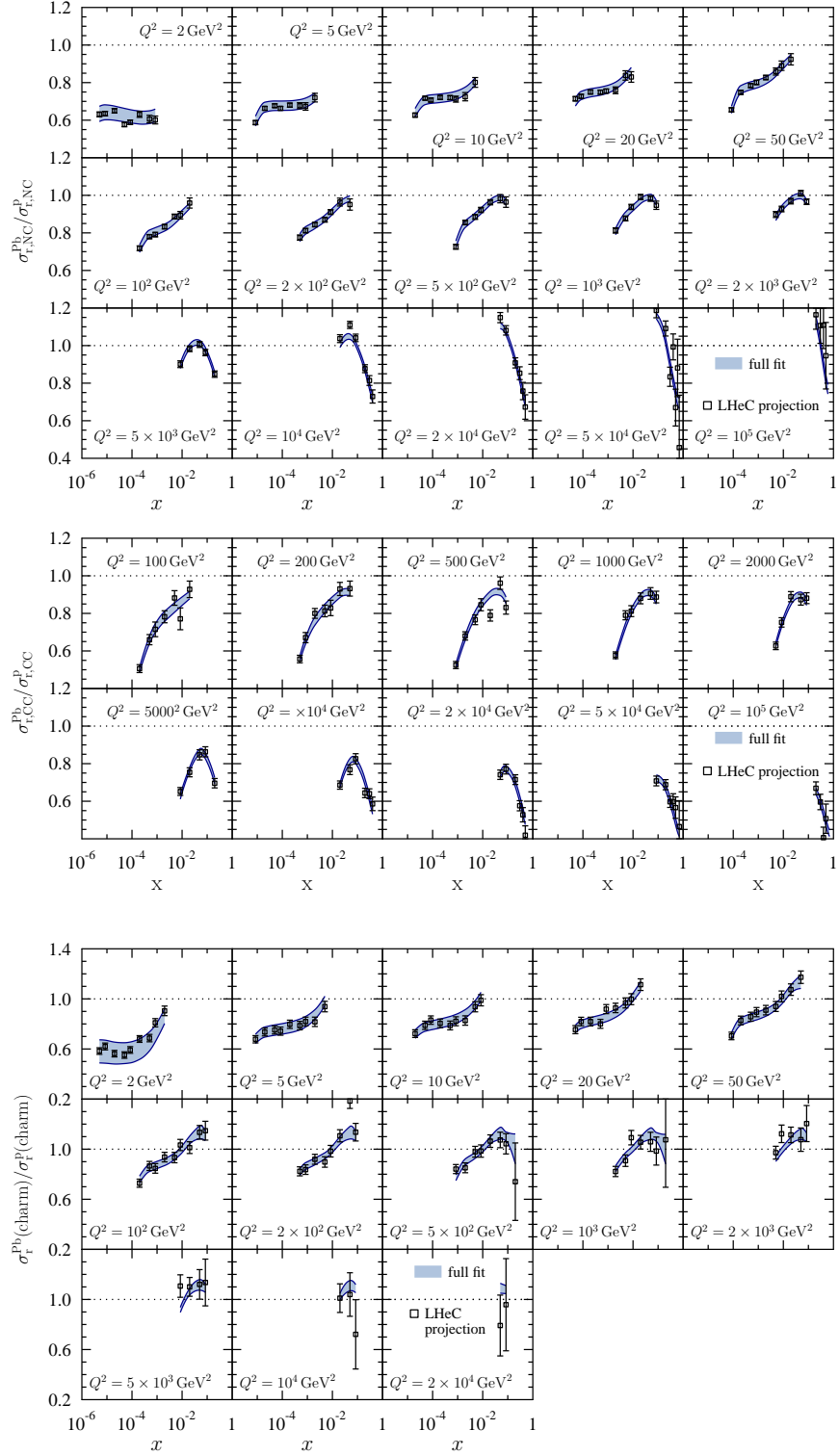


Figure 4.6: As Figure 4.5 but with fit results after including the LHeC pseudodata in the global analysis.

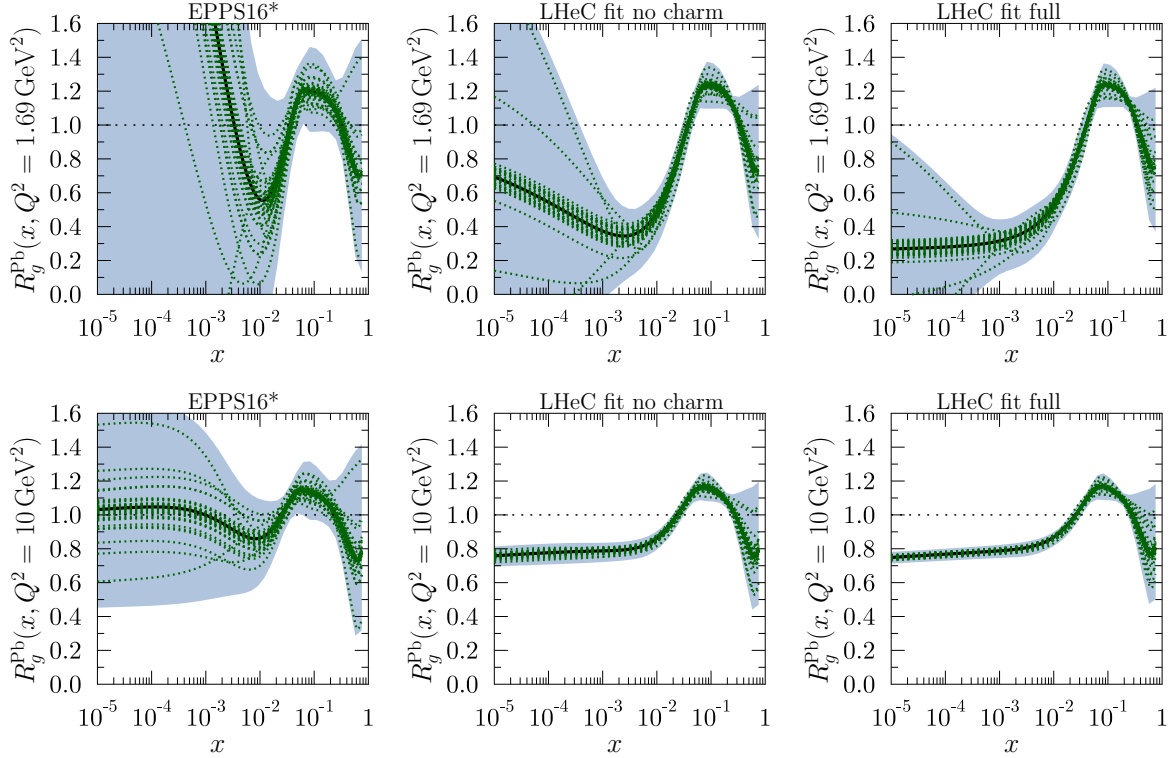


Figure 4.7: Upper panels: The gluon nuclear modification for the Pb nucleus at $Q^2 = 1.69 \text{ GeV}^2$ in EPPS16* (left), LHeC analysis without charm pseudodata (middle), and full LHeC analysis (right). The blue bands mark the total uncertainty and the green dotted curves correspond to individual Hessian error sets. Lower panels: As the upper panels but at $Q^2 = 10 \text{ GeV}^2$.

of collinear factorisation in nuclear collisions.

The fits are performed using xFitter [414], where 484 (150) NC+CC Pb data points at the LHeC (FCC-eh) have been used in the fitted region $Q^2 > 3.5 \text{ GeV}^2$, see Fig. 4.2. A HERAPDF2.0-type parametrisation [90] has been employed to provide both the central values for the reduced cross sections (therefore, the extracted nuclear modification factors are centered at 1) and the fit functional form; in this way, neither theory uncertainties (treatment of heavy flavours, value of α_s , order in the perturbative expansion) nor the uncertainty related to the functional form of the initial condition – parametrisation bias – are considered in our study, in agreement with our goal of estimating the *ultimate achievable experimental* precision in the extraction of nPDFs. We have worked at NNLO using the Roberts-Thorne improved heavy quark scheme, and $\alpha_s(m_Z^2) = 0.118$. The treatment of systematics and the tolerance $\Delta\chi^2 = 1$ are identical to the approach in the HERAPDF2.0 fits, as achievable in a single experiment.

The results for the relative uncertainties in the nuclear modification factors are shown in Figs. 4.8, 4.9 and 4.10 for valence, sea and gluon, respectively. The uncertainties in these plots reflect the assumed uncertainties in the pseudodata, both statistics (mainly at large x) and systematics from detector efficiencies, radiative corrections, etc., see Sec. 4.2.1. As expected, the uncertainty in the extraction of the valence at small x is sizeably larger than that for the sea and gluon. While a very high precision looks achievable at the LHeC and the FCC-eh, for the comparison with EPPS16 (or any other global fit) shown in the plots and with previous works in that setup [405, 406] some caution is required. First, the effective EPPS16 tolerance criterion $\Delta\chi^2 \simeq 52$ implies that naively the uncertainty bands should be compared after rescaling by a factor $\sqrt{52}$.

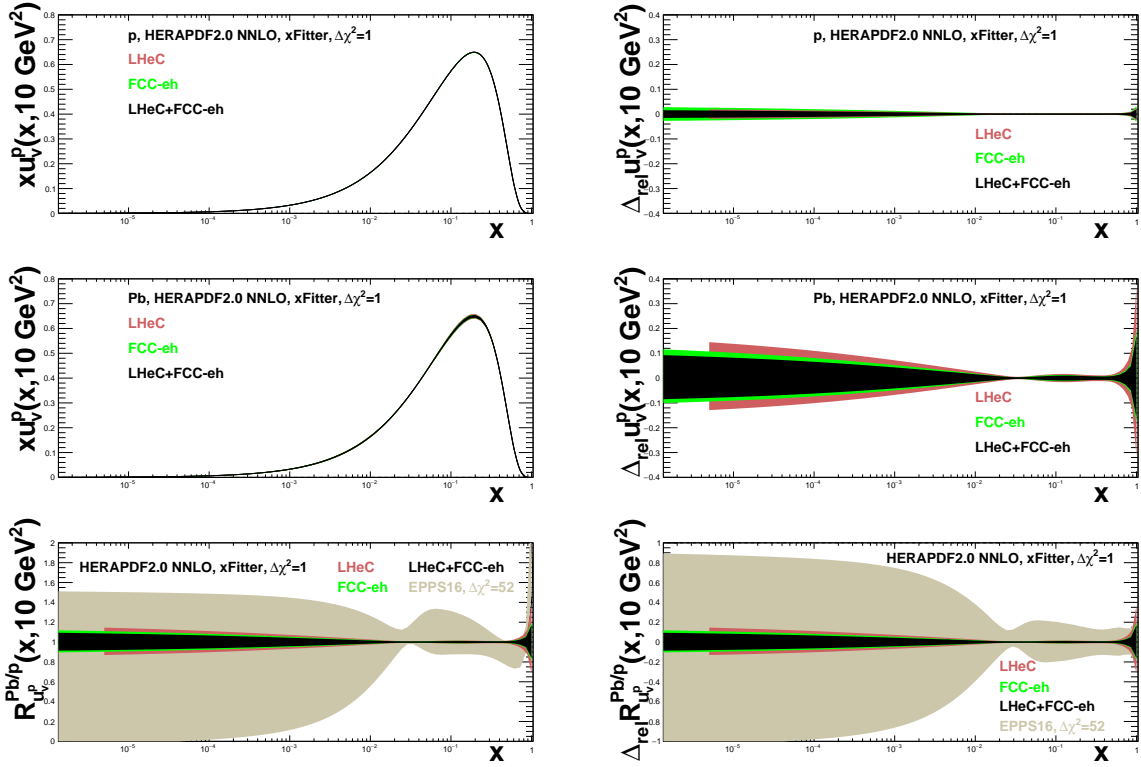


Figure 4.8: Distributions (left) and their relative uncertainties (right) of the valence u -quark density in the proton (top), Pb (middle) and the corresponding nuclear modification factor (bottom) in an analysis of ep and ePb LHeC and FCC-eh NC plus CC pseudodata using xFitter (both a single set of data and all combined), compared to the results of EPPS16 [378], see the text for details.

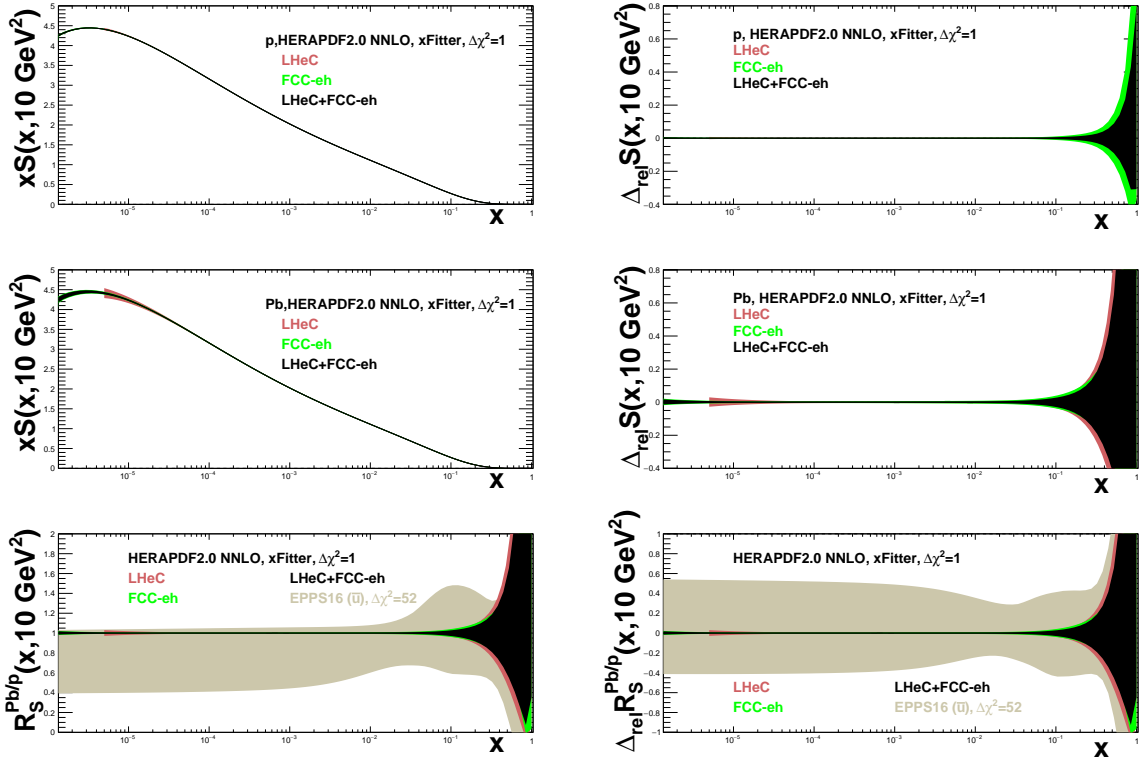


Figure 4.9: Distributions (left) and their relative uncertainties (right) of the sea quark density in the proton (top), Pb (middle) and the corresponding nuclear modifications factor (bottom) in an analysis of ep and ePb LHeC and FCC-eh NC plus CC pseudodata using xFitter (both a single set of data and all combined), compared to the results of EPPS16 [378] for \bar{u} , see the text for details.

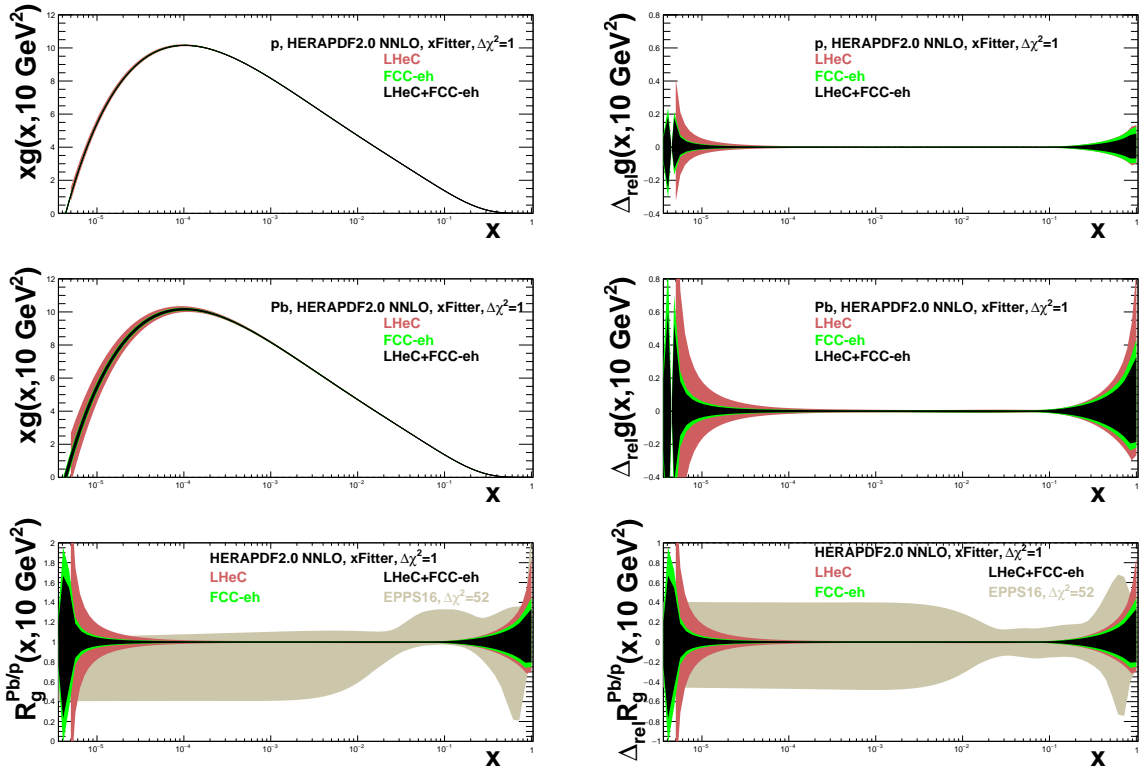


Figure 4.10: Distributions (left) and their relative uncertainties (right) of the gluon density in the proton (top), Pb (middle) and the corresponding nuclear modifications factor (bottom) in an analysis of ep and ePb LHeC and FCC-eh NC plus CC pseudodata using xFitter (both a single set of data and all combined), compared to the results of EPPS16 [378], see the text for details.

Second, the treatment of systematics is rather different, considering correlations in the xFitter exercise and taking them as fully uncorrelated (and added quadratically to the statistical ones) in the EPPS16 approach. Finally, EPPS16 uses parametrisations for the nuclear modification factors for different parton species while in xFitter just the (n)PDF combinations that enter the reduced cross sections are parametrised and employed for the fit. In this respect let us note that, in analogy to proton PDFs, a full flavour decomposition can be achieved using both NC and CC with heavy flavour identification that will verify the existing ideas on flavour dependence of nuclear effects on parton densities [402].

4.3 Nuclear diffraction

In Sec. 3.2.4 we have discussed specific processes which will probe the details of the 3D structure of the proton. Inclusive diffraction on nuclei can provide important information about the nuclear diffractive parton distribution similarly to the diffraction on the proton, see Sec. 3.2.5. The same processes can be studied in the context of electron-ion scattering and used to learn about the partonic structure of nuclei. Diffractive vector meson production can be studied in the nuclear case as well, within the framework of the dipole model suitable for high energy and including non-linear effects in density. In the nuclear case though, one needs to make a distinction between coherent and incoherent diffraction. In the coherent process, the nucleus scatters elastically and stays intact after the collision. In incoherent diffraction, the nucleus breaks up, and individual nucleons can be set free. Still, there will be a large rapidity gap between the produced diffractive system and the dissociated nucleus. It is expected that this process will dominate the diffractive cross section for medium and large values of momentum transfer. It is only in the region of small values of momentum transfer where elastic diffraction is the dominant contribution. Dedicated instrumentation in the forward region must be constructed in order to clearly distinguish between the two scenarios, see Sec. 10.5. [Refer here to the section on forward instrumentation by Yuji Goto](#)

4.3.1 Exclusive vector meson diffraction

Calculations for the case of Pb for the coherent diffractive J/ψ production were performed using the dipole model [211], see Sec. 3.2.4. In order to apply the dipole model calculation to the nuclear case, one takes the independent scattering approximation that is Glauber theory [415]. The dipole amplitude can then be represented in the form

$$N_A(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b}) = 1 - \prod_{i=1}^A [1 - N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}_i)] . \quad (4.3)$$

Here $N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}_i)$ is the dipole amplitude for the nucleon (see Sec. 3.2.4) and \mathbf{b}_i denotes the transverse positions of the nucleons in the nucleus. The interpretation of Eq. (4.3) is that $1 - N$ is the probability not to scatter off an individual nucleon, and thus $\prod_{i=1}^A [1 - N(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}_i, x)]$ is the probability not to scatter off the entire nucleus.

In addition, the following simulation includes the fluctuations of the density profile in the proton, following the prescription given in [209–211]. To include these proton structure fluctuations one assumes that the gluonic density of the proton in the transverse plane is distributed around three constituent quarks (hot spots). These hot spots are assumed to be Gaussian. In practical

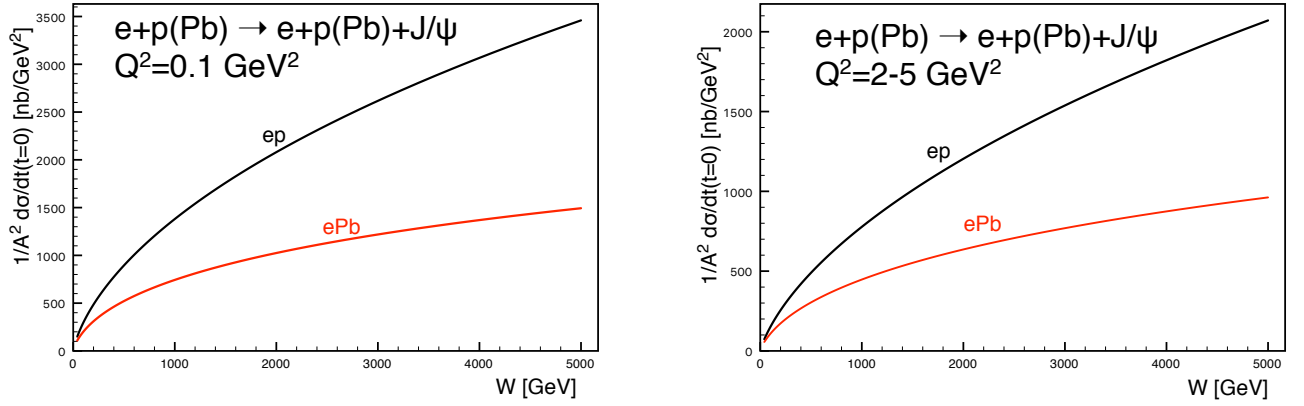


Figure 4.11: Cross section for the coherent diffractive production of the vector meson J/ψ in ePb (red solid curves) and ep (black solid curves) collisions, as a function of the energy W . Left plot: photoproduction case $Q^2 \simeq 0$, right plot $Q^2 = 2 - 5 \text{ GeV}^2$

terms one replaces the proton profile $T_p(\mathbf{b})$

$$T_p(\mathbf{b}) = \frac{1}{2\pi B_p} e^{-b^2/(2B_p)}, \quad (4.4)$$

that appears in each individual nucleon scattering probability $N(x, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}_i)$ by the function

$$T_p(\mathbf{b}) = \sum_{i=1}^3 T_q(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}_{q,i}), \quad (4.5)$$

where the ‘quark’ density profile is given by

$$T_q(\mathbf{b}) = \frac{1}{2\pi B_q} e^{-b^2/(2B_q)}. \quad (4.6)$$

Here $\mathbf{b}_{q,i}$ are the location of the hotspots that are sampled from a two dimensional Gaussian distribution whose width is given by parameter B_{qc} . The free parameters B_q and B_{qc} were obtained in [210] by comparing with HERA data on coherent and incoherent J/ψ production at a photon-proton centre-of-mass energy $W = 75 \text{ GeV}$, corresponding to fractional hadronic target energy loss $x_{IP} = 10^{-3}$. The proton fluctuation parameters obtained are $B_{qc} = 3.3 \text{ GeV}^{-2}$, $B_q = 0.7 \text{ GeV}^{-2}$.

The results for the differential cross section at $t = 0$ for coherent production of J/ψ as a function of (virtual) photon-proton energy W for fixed values of Q^2 are shown in Figs. 4.11 and Figs. 4.12. The calculations for Pb are compared to those on the proton target. We see that the cross sections for the nuclear case increase with energy slower than for the proton case and are always smaller. Note that, we have already rescaled the diffractive cross section by a factor A^2 , as appropriate for comparison of the diffractive cross section on the proton and nucleus. In the absence of nuclear corrections this ratio should be equal to 1. The differences between the scattering off a nucleus and a proton are also a function of Q^2 . They are larger for smaller values of Q^2 and for photoproduction. This is understood from the dipole formulae, see Eqs. (3.8), (3.9), (3.10). As explained previously, larger values of scale Q^2 select smaller size dipoles, for which the density effects are smaller. Similarly, the differences between the lead and proton cases are larger for higher energies. This is because the dipole amplitude grows with decreasing values of x which are probed when the energy is increased, and thus the non-linear density effects are more prominent at low values of x and low values of Q^2 .

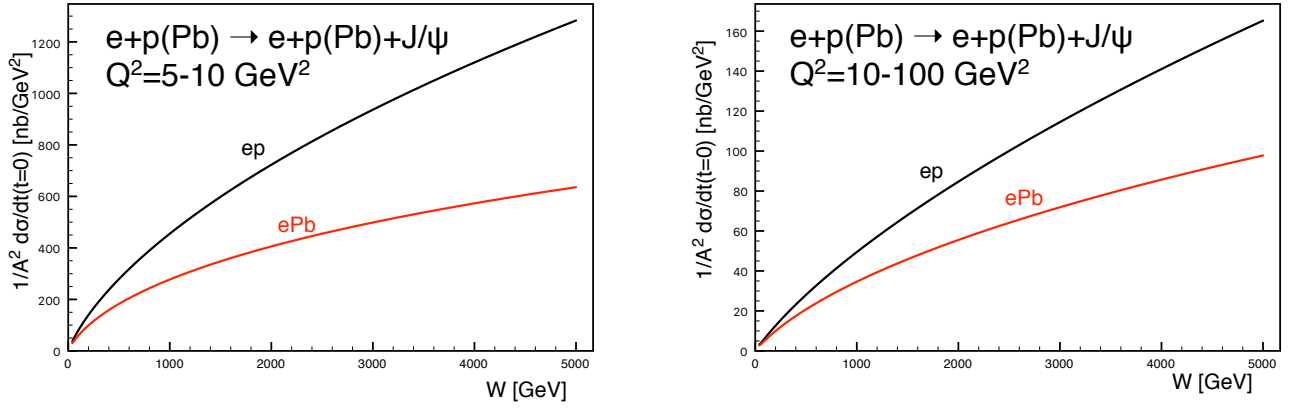


Figure 4.12: Cross section for the coherent diffractive production of the vector meson J/ψ in ePb (red solid curves) and ep (black solid curves) collisions, as a function of the energy W . Left plot: $Q^2 = 5 - 10 \text{ GeV}^2$, right plot $Q^2 = 10 - 100 \text{ GeV}^2$.

These findings case be summarised by inspecting the ratio of the cross sections, presented as a function of x defined as

$$x = \frac{Q^2 + m_{J/\psi}^2}{Q^2 + W^2 + m_{J/\psi}^2 - m_N^2}. \quad (4.7)$$

which is shown in Fig. 4.13. We observe that the ratio is smaller for smaller values of Q^2 , and it decreases for decreasing values of x . The results from the dipole model calculations are compared with the ratio of the gluon density squared obtained from the nuclear PDFs using the EPPS16 set. The reason why one can compare the diffractive cross section ratios with the ratios for the gluon density squared can be understood from Eqs. (3.8) and (3.9). The diffractive amplitude is proportional to the gluon density $xg(x, Q^2)$. On the other hand the diffractive cross section is proportional to the amplitude squared, thus having enhanced sensitivity to the gluon density. The nuclear PDFs have large uncertainties, which is indicated by the region between the two sets of dotted lines. The EPPS16 parametrisation is practically unconstrained in the region below $x = 0.01$. Nevertheless, the estimate based on the dipole model calculation and the central value of the EPPS16 parametrisation are consistent with each other. This strongly suggests that it will be hard to disentangle nuclear effects from saturation effects and that only through a detailed combined analysis of data on the proton and the nucleus firm conclusions can be established on the existence of a new non-linear regime of QCD.

In Fig. 4.14 we show the differential cross section $d\sigma/dt$ as a function of the negative four momentum transfer squared $-t$ for the case of coherent and incoherent production. Coherent and incoherent diffraction cross sections are computed from the dipole model in the following way. The coherent diffractive cross section is obtained by averaging the diffractive scattering amplitude over the target configurations and taking the square

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi} |\langle \mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta) \rangle|^2. \quad (4.8)$$

Here the brackets $\langle \dots \rangle$ refer to averages over different configurations of the target. The incoherent cross section is obtained by subtracting the coherent cross section from the total diffractive cross section. It is standardly assumed that it takes the form of a variance of the diffractive scattering amplitude

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi} \left(\langle |\mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta)|^2 \rangle - |\langle \mathcal{A}(x, Q, \Delta) \rangle|^2 \right), \quad (4.9)$$

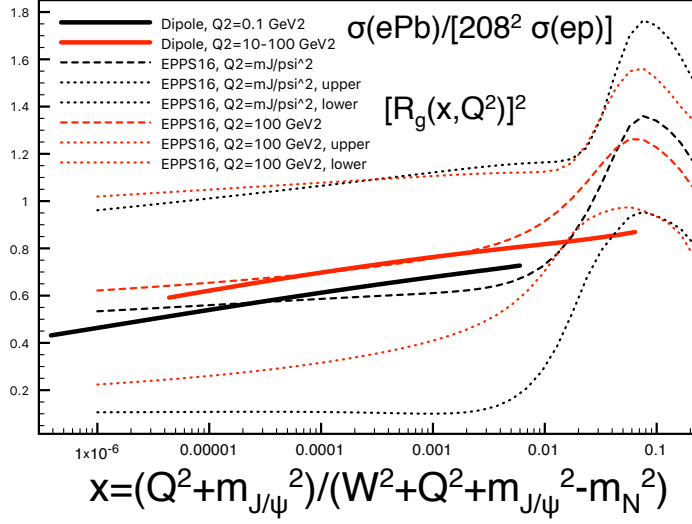


Figure 4.13: Ratio of coherent J/ψ production diffractive cross sections for Pb and proton as a function of the variable x defined in Eq. (4.7). Solid lines: dipole model calculation, for $Q^2 = 0.1 \text{ GeV}^2$ (black) and $Q^2 = 10 - 100 \text{ GeV}^2$ (red). Dotted and dashed lines correspond to the nuclear ratio for the gluon density squared using the EPPS16 parametrisation of the nuclear parton distribution functions. Black and red dashed lines are the central sets for $Q^2 = M_{J/\psi}^2$ and $Q^2 = 100 \text{ GeV}^2$. The dotted lines correspond to the lowest and highest sets in the EPPS16 parametrisation. The difference between the two dotted lines is thus indicative of the parametrisation uncertainty for the nuclear ratio. These ratios, that can also be measured in ultraperipheral collisions [416], are larger than the values $0.2 - 0.4$ at $x \simeq 10^{-5}$ predicted by the relation between diffraction and nuclear shadowing [381].

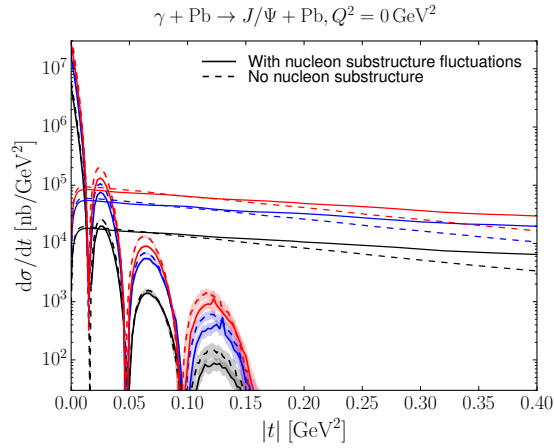


Figure 4.14: The differential cross sections for coherent and incoherent production of J/ψ in $e\text{Pb}$ as a function of the negative four momentum transfer squared $-t$, for photoproduction $Q^2 = 0$. The lines showing dips are for coherent production, and those extending to large $|t|$ are for incoherent. The solid (dashed) lines are the results with (without) nucleon substructure fluctuations. Black, blue, red are for $W = 0.1, 0.813, 2.5 \text{ TeV}$, respectively.

which should be valid for small $|t|$. The t dependence, and the relation between the impact parameter and t through the Fourier transform, makes diffractive scattering a sensitive probe of the internal geometric structure of hadrons and nuclei. In particular, because the incoherent cross section has the form of a variance of the amplitude, it is sensitive to the amount of fluctuations in impact parameter space.

The results in Fig. 4.14 (results for higher Q^2 are very similar) indicate that the incoherent production is dominant for most values of $-t$, except for the very small momentum transfers, about $|t| < 0.02 \text{ GeV}^2$. Thus, dedicated instrumentation which will allow us to distinguish between the two cases is essential if one wants to measure the coherent process in a reasonably wide range of $|t|$. As in the proton case, the coherent t distribution exhibits characteristic dips. However, in the case of the nuclear targets the dips occur for much smaller values of momenta t . This is related to the much larger value of the dipole amplitude for a wide range of impact parameters in the case of nuclear targets compared to the proton case.

Another interesting aspect, see Sec. 3.2.4, is the effect of the transverse structure of the target in nuclear coherent and incoherent diffraction. For example, in the formulation shown above [211] a fixed number of hot spots was considered, while in [215] (see also [212] for a realisation using small- x evolution) a growing number with $1/x$ is implemented. In both cases, the ratio of incoherent to coherent diffraction decreases with W , being smaller for larger nuclei. This decrease is sensitive to the details of the distribution of hot spots - thus, to the fluctuations of the gluon distribution in transverse space. It also shows interesting dependencies on the mass of the produced vector meson and on Q^2 , resulting in the ratio being smaller for lighter vector mesons and for lower Q^2 . Besides, the hot spot treatment also has some effects on the distributions in momentum transfer, see Fig. 4.14. In order to check these ideas, both the experimental capability to separate coherent from incoherent diffraction, and a large lever arm in W and Q^2 as available at the LHeC, are required.

We thus conclude that by investigating coherent and incoherent diffractive scattering on nuclei, one gets unique insight into the spatial structure of matter in nuclei. On the one hand, the coherent cross section, which is obtained by averaging the amplitude before squaring it, is sensitive to the average spatial density distribution of gluons in transverse space. On the other hand, the incoherent cross section, which is governed by the variance of the amplitude with respect to the initial nucleon configurations of the nucleus, measures fluctuations of the gluon density inside the nucleus. In the case of a nucleus, the diffractive production rate is controlled by two different scales related to the proton and nucleus size. At momentum scales corresponding to the nucleon size $|t| \sim 1/R_p^2$ the diffractive cross section is almost purely incoherent. The t -distribution in coherent diffractive production off the nucleus gives rise to a dip-type structure for both saturation and non-saturation models, while in the case of incoherent production at small $|t|$, both saturation and non-saturation models do not lead to dips [211]. This is in drastic contrast to the diffractive production off the proton where only saturation models lead to a dip-type structure in the t -distribution at values of $|t|$ that can be experimentally accessible. Therefore, diffractive production offers a unique opportunity to measure the spatial distribution of partons in the protons and nuclei. It is also an excellent tool to investigate the approach to unitarity in the high energy limit of QCD.

While we have focused here on J/ψ production, lighter vector mesons like ρ, ω, ϕ could also be studied. They should show a different Q^2 dependence and their larger sizes would make them lie closer to the black disk regime. Also the dominance of two-jet events in photoproduction would provide sensitivity to the approach to the unitarity limit [381].

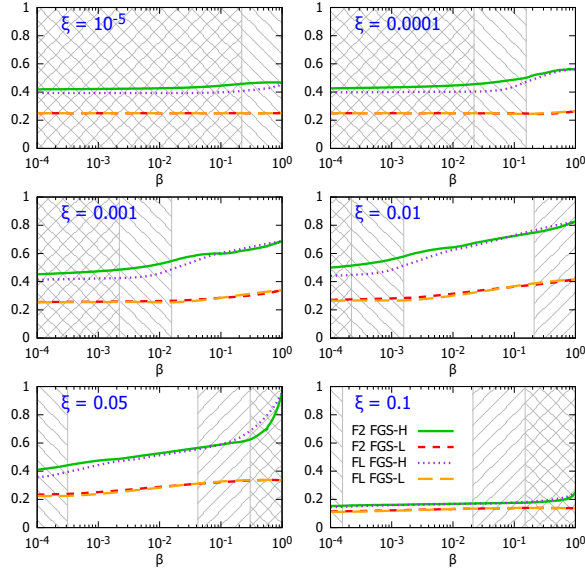


Figure 4.15: Nuclear modification factor, Eq. (4.10), for $F_2^{D(3)}$ and $F_L^{D(3)}$ in ^{208}Pb versus β , at $Q^2 = 10 \text{ GeV}^2$ and for different ξ , for the models H and L in [381]. The ‘\’ and ‘/’ hatched areas show kinematically excluded regions for $E = 2.76$ and 19.7 TeV/nucleon , respectively.

4.3.2 Inclusive diffraction on nuclei

In Sec. 3.2.5, a study of the prospects for extracting diffractive parton densities in the proton was presented following [223]. Similar considerations apply to diffraction in eA as to ep collisions. The main difference is the larger contribution from incoherent diffraction³ $e + A \rightarrow e + X + A^*$ than from coherent diffraction $e + A \rightarrow e + X + A$, the former dominating for $|t|$ larger than a few hundredths of a GeV^2 . In the following we focus on coherent diffraction, which could be distinguished from the incoherent case using forward detectors [1].

Assuming the same framework (collinear factorization for hard diffraction, such that Eq. (3.21), and Regge factorization, Eq. (3.23) as introduced for ep in Sec. 3.2.5 also hold for eA) nuclear diffractive PDFs (nDPDFs) can be extracted from the diffractive reduced cross sections. It should be noted that such nDPDFs have never been measured. With the same electron energy $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}$ and nuclear beams with $E_N = 2.76 \text{ TeV/nucleon}$ for the LHeC, the kinematic coverage is very similar to that shown in Fig. 3.37. For details, see [223].

The nuclear modification factors for $F_2^{D(3)}$ and $F_L^{D(3)}$ from the FGS models [381] are shown in Fig. 4.15, where, in analogy to Eq. (4.1), the diffractive nuclear modification factor reads

$$R_k^A(\beta, \xi, Q^2) = \frac{f_{k/A}^{D(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2)}{A f_{k/p}^{D(3)}(\beta, \xi, Q^2)}. \quad (4.10)$$

The model in [381] employs Gribov inelastic shadowing [219] which relates diffraction in ep to nuclear shadowing for total and diffractive eA cross sections. It assumes that the nuclear wave function squared can be approximated by the product of one-nucleon densities, neglects the t -dependence of the diffractive γ^* -nucleon amplitude compared to the nuclear form factor, introduces a real part in the amplitudes [417], and considers the colour fluctuation formalism

³ A^* denotes a final state in which the nucleus has dissociated to a system of at least two hadrons, but the rapidity gap signature that defines the diffractive event is still present.

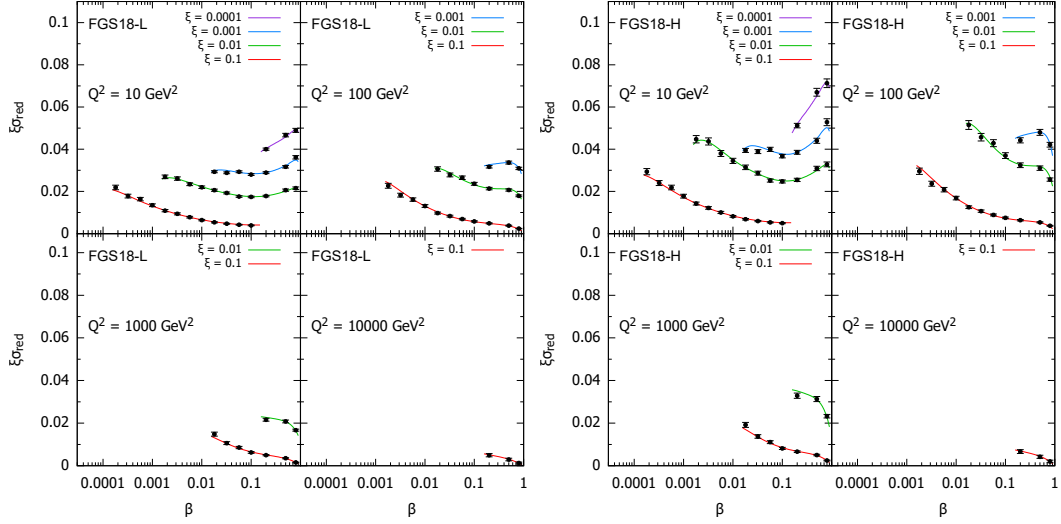


Figure 4.16: An indicative subset of simulated data for the diffractive reduced cross section as a function of β in bins of ξ and Q^2 for $e^{208}\text{Pb}$ collisions at the LHeC, in the models in [381]. The curves for $\xi = 0.01, 0.001, 0.0001$ are shifted up by 0.01, 0.02, 0.03, respectively.

for the inelastic intermediate nucleon states [418]. There are two variants of the model, named H and L, corresponding to different strengths of the colour fluctuations, giving rise to larger and smaller probabilities for diffraction in nuclei with respect to that in proton, respectively. Results from both model versions are shown in Figs. 4.15, 4.16.

The pseudodata for the reduced cross sections are generated assuming 5% systematic error and statistic errors calculated for the luminosity of 2 fb^{-1} . A selected subset of the simulated data is shown in Fig. 4.16. The large kinematic coverage and small uncertainty (dominated by the assumed systematics) illustrated in this figure compared to Fig. 3.39 make it clear that an accurate extraction of nPDFs in ^{208}Pb in an extended kinematic region, similar to that shown in Figs. 3.40 and 3.41, will be possible.

4.4 New Dynamics at Small x with Nuclear Targets

As discussed in Sec. 3.2.2, theoretical expectations [383] indicate that fixed-order perturbation theory leading to the DGLAP evolution equations should eventually fail. When x decreases, $\alpha_s \ln 1/x$ becomes large and these large logarithms must be resummed, leading to the BFKL equation. Furthermore, when the parton density becomes large, the linear approximation that underlies both DGLAP and BFKL breaks, and non-linear processes must be taken into account to compute parton evolution. The CGC [382] offers a non-perturbative but weak coupling effective theory to treat dense parton systems in a systematic and controlled way. One of the important predictions of the CGC is that in a dense parton system saturation occurs leading to the emergence of a new dynamical scale – the saturation scale Q_{sat} , which increases with the energy.

The parton density in a hadron becomes high both through evolution – when energy or $1/x$ becomes large, and/or when partons are accumulated by overlapping nucleons – when mass number A becomes large in a nucleus. In the nucleus rest frame, the virtual photon fluctuations at small $x < (2m_N R_A)^{-1}$, with m_N the nucleon mass and R_A the nuclear radius, acquire

a lifetime larger than the time taken to traverse the nucleus and, thus, all partons within a transverse area $\sim 1/Q^2$ are simultaneously probed. Actually, the parameter determining the transition between linear and non-linear dynamics is the parton density and, therefore, the onset of this new regime of QCD and its explanation must be tested, as commented in [1], exploring both decreasing values of x and increasing values of A in a kinematic $x - Q^2$ region where, in order to be sensitive to differences in evolution, enough lever arm in $Q^2 \gg \Lambda_{\text{QCD}}^2$ at small x is available. The saturation scale Q_{sat} that characterises the typical gluon momentum in a saturated hadron wave function increases with nuclear size, $Q_{\text{sat}}^2 \propto A^{1/3}$. Therefore, in eA collisions the perturbatively saturated regime is achieved at parametrically larger x than in a proton – a prediction not only of the CGC but of all multiple scattering models that anticipate an approach to the black disk, unitarity limit.

The opportunities to establish the existence of saturation in lepton-nucleus collisions are numerous. They include inclusive observables, both total and diffractive cross sections, and less inclusive ones like correlations:

- Tension in DGLAP fits for inclusive observables: As discussed in [1,277] and in Sec. 3.2.7, deviations from fixed-order perturbation theory can be tested by the tension that would appear in the description within a DGLAP fit of observables with different sensitivities to the sea and the glue, for example F_2 and F_L (or reduced cross sections at different energies) or $F_2^{\text{inclusive}}$ and $F_2^{\text{heavy quarks}}$. In [419], such an exercise was performed considering F_2 and F_L pseudodata for $e\text{Au}$ collisions at the EIC [191] using reweighting techniques. While the results for EIC energies are shown not to be conclusive due to the reduced lever arm in $Q^2 > Q_{\text{sat}}^2 \gg \Lambda_{\text{QCD}}^2$, the much larger centre-of-mass energies at the LHeC (and FCC-eh) should make possible a search for tensions between different observables.
- Saturation effects in diffraction: A longstanding prediction of saturation [196, 420, 421] is a modification of the diffractive cross section in nuclei with respect to protons, with a suppression (enhancement) at small (large) β due to the approach of the nucleus to the black disk limit, where elastic and diffractive scattering become maximal, and the behaviour of the different Fock components of the virtual photon wave function. Such effects can also be discussed in terms of a competition of nuclear shadowing with the probability that the event remains diffractive in the multiple scattering process [381]. This leads to the generic expectation of an enhancement of the ratio of the coherent diffractive cross section in nucleus over that in protons, in non-linear approaches with respect to linear ones [191].
- Correlations: Correlations have been considered for a long time as sensitive probes of the underlying production dynamics. For example, the cross section for the production of two jets with the same hardness and widely separated in rapidity, called Mueller-Navelet jets [422], was proposed as a test of BFKL versus DGLAP dynamics, but the effect of saturation has not been widely studied although it has the large potentiality of differentiating linear resummation from non-linear saturation where non-trivial nuclear effects could appear. Correlations between jets were analysed in [1] for the LHeC kinematics, both in inclusive and diffractive events, see the formalism in [423]. On the other hand, the azimuthal decorrelation of particles and jets when saturation effects are at work – at small x , studied by the difference between collisions involving proton and nuclei, was proposed long ago in $d\text{Au}$ collisions at the Relativistic Hadron Collider [424, 425]. It was studied in [1] for the LHeC kinematics, see recent developments in [426] and the extension to forward dijet production in [427]. It could also be analysed in ultraperipheral collisions at the LHC, see Sec. 7.4.

4.5 Collective effects in dense environments – the ‘ridge’

One of the most striking discoveries [428] at the LHC is, that in all collision systems, from small (pp and pA) to large (AA), many of the features that are considered as indicative of the production of a dense hot partonic medium are observed (see e.g. reviews [429–431] and references therein). The most celebrated of such features is the long rapidity range particle correlations collimated in azimuth, named the ‘ridge’, shown in Fig. 4.17. The dynamics underlying this phenomena, either the formation of QGP and the existence of strong final state interactions, or some initial state dynamics that leaves imprint on the final observables, is under discussion [432]. While observed in photoproduction on Pb in UPCs at the LHC [433], its existence in smaller systems like e^+e^- [434] at LEP and ep at HERA [435] has been scrutinised, but the results are not conclusive. In this respect, measurements in ep and eA collisions at the LHeC at considerable center-of-mass energies will offer crucial additional information. For example, the collision of the virtual photon with the proton at the LHeC can be considered as a high energy collision of two jets or ‘flux tubes’, as discussed in Refs. [436, 437] and illustrated in Fig. 4.17. This can lead to the production of ‘ridges’ and other novel configurations of gluons and quarks and will be measured uniquely at the LHeC.

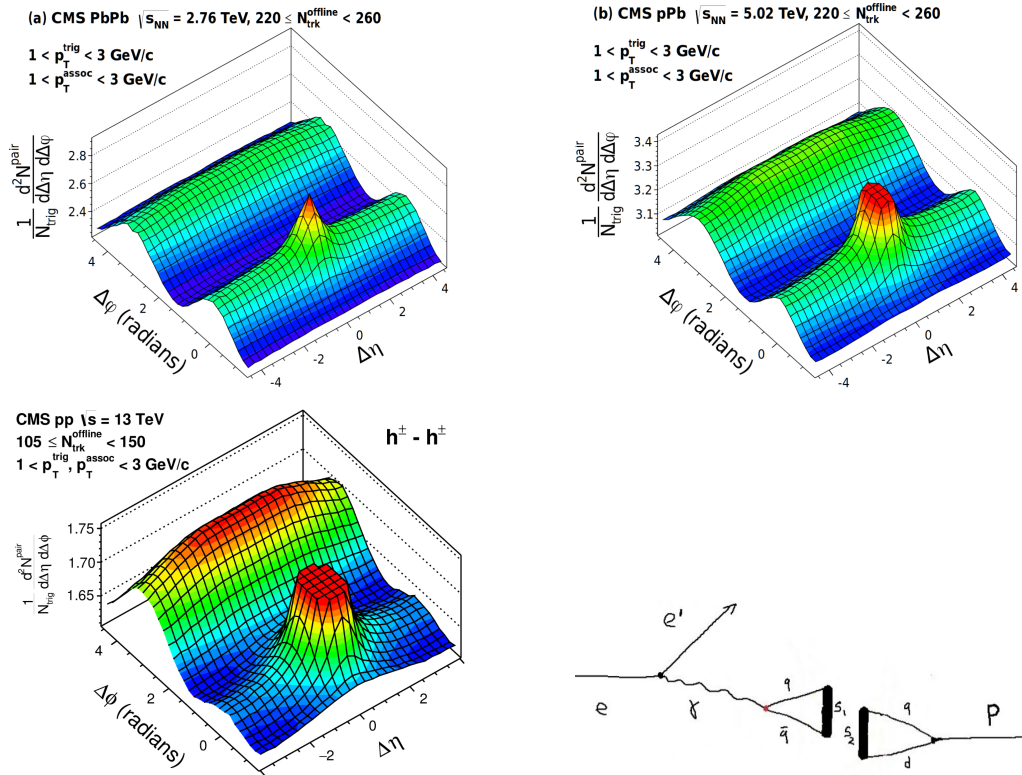


Figure 4.17: Top left to bottom right: Collective effects seen in high-multiplicity two-particle azimuthal correlation, as observed by CMS in PbPb, pPb [438], and pp [439] collisions. Schematic illustration for the production of ‘ridge’-like effects in ep or eA scattering at the LHeC [437].

4.6 Novel QCD Nuclear Phenomena at the LHeC

Beyond the topics discussed above there are many novel phenomena which can be explored in eA collisions at LHeC or FCC-eh, in a high energy regime and using dedicated instrumentation. We shall briefly review some of these phenomena, which can be understood utilizing the light-front framework of QCD, for a review see [440].

One of the most important theoretical tool in high energy physics is Dirac's light-front (LF) time: $\tau = x^+ = t + z/c$, the time along the light-front [441], a concept which allows all of the tools and insights of Schrödinger's quantum mechanics and the Hamiltonian formalism to be applied to relativistic physics [440]. When one takes a photograph, the object is observed at a fixed LF time. Similarly, Compton $\gamma p \rightarrow \gamma' p''$ and deep-inelastic lepton-proton scattering are measurements of proton structure at fixed LF time. Unlike ordinary "instant time" t , physics at fixed τ is Poincaré invariant; i.e., independent of the observer's Lorentz frame. Observations at fixed τ are made within the causal horizon. LF time τ reduces to ordinary time t in the nonrelativistic limit $c \rightarrow \infty$.

The LF wavefunctions (LFWF) of hadrons $\Psi_n^H(x_i, \vec{k}_{\perp i}, \lambda_i) = \langle \Psi_H | n \rangle$, the Fock state projections of the eigensolution of the QCD LF Hamiltonian $H_{QCD} | \Psi_H \rangle = M_H^2 | \Psi_H \rangle$. They encode the underlying structure of bound states in quantum field theory and underlie virtually every observable in hadron physics. Hadronic LFWFs can also be measured directly by the Ashery method [442], the coherent diffractive dissociation of high energy hadrons into jets [443, 444]. The diffractive dissociation of a high energy hadron into quark and gluon jets by two-gluon exchange, the cross-section measures the square of the second transverse derivative of the projectile LFWF. Similarly, the dissociation of a high energy atom such as positronium or "true muonium" ($[\mu^+ \mu^-]$) can be used to measure the transverse derivative of its LFWFs.

Hadronic LFWFs are defined at fixed $\tau = -x^+ = t + z/c$; they are thus off-shell in the total $P^- = P^0 - P^z$, not energy P^0 [440]. Thus LFWFs are also off-shell in $\mathcal{M}^2 = P^+ P^- - P_{\perp}^2 = [\sum_i k_i^{\mu}]^2 = \sum_i \frac{k_{\perp i}^2 + m^2}{x_i}$, the invariant mass squared of the constituents in the n -particle Fock state. LFWFs are thus functions of the invariant mass squared of the constituents in the Fock state. For a two-particle Fock state: $\mathcal{M}^2 = \frac{k_{\perp}^2 + m^2}{x(1-x)}$. Thus the constituent transverse momenta $k_{\perp i}^2$ do appear alone as a separate factor in the LFWF; the transverse momenta are always coupled to the longitudinal LF momentum fractions x_i . This is the light-front version of rotational invariance. Only positive $k_i^+ = k_i^0 + k_i^z \geq 0$ and $0 \leq x_i = \frac{k_i^+}{P^+} \leq 1$ appear, where $\sum_i x_i = 1$. In addition, $J^z = \sum_i L_i^z + S_i^z$, as well as $P^+ = \sum_i k_i^+$ and $\vec{P}_{\perp} = \sum_i \vec{k}_{\perp i}$ are conserved at every vertex, essential covariant kinematical constraints. A remarkable property: the anomalous gravitomagnetic moment of every LF Fock state vanishes at $Q^2 = 0$. The LFWFs of bound states are off-shell in $P^- = \sum_i k_i^-$, but they tend to be maximal at minimal off-shellness; i.e. minimal invariant mass. In fact, in the holographic LFWFs where color is confined, the LFWFs of hadrons have fast Gaussian fall-off in invariant mass. This feature also underlie intrinsic heavy quark Fock states: the LFWFs have maximal support when all of the constituents have the same rapidity y_i ; i.e., $x_i \propto \sqrt{m_i^2 + k_{\perp i}^2}$. Thus the heavy quarks have the highest momentum fractions x_i .

Conversely, light-front wavefunctions provide the boost-invariant transition amplitude which convert the free quark and gluons into the hadronic eigenstates of QCD. Thus knowing the LFWFs, allows one to compute "hadronization at the amplitude level" – how the colored quarks and gluons produced in a deep inelastic scattering event $ep \rightarrow e'X$ at the LHeC are confined and emerge as final-state hadrons.

The LF formalism leads to many novel nuclear phenomena, such as “hidden color” [445] “color transparency” [446], “nuclear-bound quarkonium” [447], “nuclear shadowing and antishadowing” of nuclear structure functions, etc. For example, there are five distinct color-singlet QCD Fock state representations of the six color-triplet quarks of the deuteron. These hidden-color Fock states become manifest when the deuteron fluctuates to a small transverse size, as in measurements of the deuteron form factor at large momentum transfer. One can also probe the hidden-color Fock states of the deuteron by studying the final state of the dissociation of the deuteron in deep inelastic lepton scattering at the LHeC $eD \rightarrow e'X$ where X can be $\Delta^{++} + \Delta^-$, six quark jets, or other novel color-singlet final states.

The LF wave functions provide the input for scattering experiments at the amplitude level, encoding the structure of a projectile at a single light-front time τ [440]. For example, consider photon-ion collisions. The incoming photon probes the finite size structure of the incoming nucleus at fixed LF time, like a photograph – not at a fixed instant time, which is acausal. Since the nuclear state is an eigenstate of the LF Hamiltonian, its structure is independent of its momentum, as required by Poincaré invariance. One gets the same answer in the ion rest frame, the CM frame, or even if the incident particles move in the same direction, but collide transversely. There are no colliding “pancakes” using the LF formalism.

The resulting photon-ion cross-section is not point-like; it is shadowed: $\sigma(\gamma A \rightarrow X) = A^\alpha \sigma(\gamma N \rightarrow X)$, where A is the mass number of the ion, N stands for a nucleon, and the power $\alpha \approx 0.8$ reflects Glauber shadowing [448]. The shadowing stems from the destructive interference of two-step and one-step amplitudes, where the two-step processes involve diffractive reactions on a front-surface nucleon which shadows the interior nucleons. Thus the photon interacts primarily on the front surface. Similarly a high energy ion-ion collision $A_1 + A_2 \rightarrow X$ involves the overlap of the incident frame-independent LFWFs. The initial interaction on the front surface of the colliding ions can resemble a shock wave.

In the case of a deep inelastic lepton-nucleus collision $\gamma^* A \rightarrow X$, the two-step amplitude involves a leading-twist diffractive deep inelastic scattering (DDIS) $\gamma^* N_1 \rightarrow V^* N_1$ on a front surface nucleon N_1 and then the on-shell propagation of the vector system V^* to a downstream nucleon N_2 where it interacts inelastically: $V^* N_2 \rightarrow X$. If the DDIS involves Pomeron exchange, the two-step amplitude interferes destructively with the one-step amplitude $\gamma^* N_1 \rightarrow X$ thus producing shadowing of the nuclear parton distribution function at low $x_{bj} < 0.1$ where x_{bj} is the Bjorken scaling variable. On the other hand, if the DDIS process involves $I = 1$ Reggeon exchange, the interference is constructive, producing *flavor-dependent* leading-twist antishadowing [448] in the domain $0.1 < x_{bj} < 0.2$.

One can also show that the Gribov-Glauber processes, which arise from leading-twist diffractive deep inelastic scattering on nucleons and underly the shadowing and antishadowing of nuclear structure functions [448], prevent the application of the operator product expansion to the virtual Compton scattering amplitude $\gamma^* A \rightarrow \gamma^* A$ on nuclei and thus negate the validity of the momentum sum rule for deep inelastic nuclear structure functions [449].

Chapter 5

Higgs Physics with LHeC

@From SJB. To be merged into Higgs chapter. Fig. 5.1 illustrates some key tests of electroweak theory at the LHeC, such as the Higgs coupling to Z^0 and W^\pm . The process $ep \rightarrow e'HX$ measures the fundamental $Z^0Z^0 \rightarrow H$ coupling underlying the $Z^0q \rightarrow Hq$ subprocess, Higgs emission in $ep \rightarrow \nu_eHX$ measures the Higgs coupling scattering to the W^- via the $W^-u \rightarrow H^0d$, and $W^-c \rightarrow Hb$ subprocesses. One can also measure the Higgs coupling to the b quark in $\gamma^*b \rightarrow Hb$ reactions. These processes are also sensitive to the heavy quark distributions in the proton $c(x, Q)$ and $b(x, Q)$, thus providing a test of the intrinsic non-perturbative heavy-quark Fock states in the proton at high x .

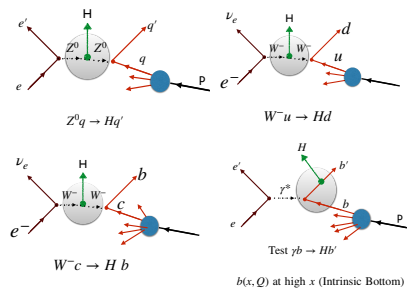


Figure 5.1: Representative Standard Model Higgs Production Processes at the LHeC

5.1 Signal Strength and Couplings

5.2 Htt Coupling Measurement

5.3 Higgs Decay into Invisible Particles

5.4 ep Measurement Potential in the EFT Framework

Chapter 6

Searches for Physics Beyond the Standard Model

6.1 Introduction

The LHC was originally envisioned as the ultimate machine to search for physics beyond the Standard Model at the TeV scale. The absence of hints from New Physics (NP) in LHC data to date are presently changing this paradigm to two alternative scenarios: NP may actually reside at an even larger energy scale; NP may be at or below the TeV scale but more weakly coupled and thus hidden in the SM backgrounds [450].

The possibility for undiscovered NP below the TeV scale could be addressed by the LHeC, which is projected to operate when the LHC will be in its high luminosity phase. The electron-proton collider will endow the LHC searches with complementary search channels, which will allow to measure the same phenomenon in a different environment, add precision measurements, or lead to the discovery of a weak signal. A similar pp - ep synergy could be envisaged with higher proton beam energies at the FCC 100 km tunnel. With an electron beam of 60 GeV, the expected center of mass energies for ep could be 2.9 TeV for $E_p = 19$ TeV (Low-Energy FCC) and 3.5 TeV for $E_p = 50$ TeV (FCC).

It has been stated that in many cases the LHeC can provide detailed tests of features that are shared by leptons and quarks, see Ref. [1] and references therein. Below we list recent developments which discuss new physics opportunities at the LHeC and its potential future high-energy upgrades.

6.2 Extensions of the SM Higgs Sector

Presently it appears as if the discovered 125 GeV scalar is indeed the SM Higgs boson. It is not clear, however, if the scalar potential is truly that of the SM or if it is extended, possibly with additional degrees of freedom. Several extensions of the Higgs sector have been proposed and can be studied at the ep colliders with results often complementary to those of pp colliders and other future facilities.

6.2.1 Modifications of the Top-Higgs interaction

In electron-proton collisions the heavy top-quarks can be produced in association with a Higgs boson, which allows us to study the sensitivity of the LHeC or the FCC-he to the top-Higgs (tH) interaction. In Ref. [353] the sensitivity of the process $pe^- \rightarrow \bar{t}H\nu_e$ to the CP nature of the tH coupling is investigated, by considering a CP phase ζ_t at the ttH and bbH vertices. The authors conclude, based on several observables and with appropriate error fitting methodology, that better limits on ζ_t are obtained at LHeC than at HL-LHC. At the design luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} , almost all values of ζ_t are excluded up to 4σ C.L. and the SM top-Higgs coupling could be measured relative to its SM value with a precision of $\kappa = 1.00 \pm 0.17$.

Flavour changing neutral currents (FCNC) are completely absent at tree-level in the SM and strongly constrained especially by low energy experiments. Anomalous flavor changing neutral current Yukawa interactions between the top quark, the Higgs boson, and either an up or charm quark are studied in Ref. [451], considering the Higgs decay modes $H \rightarrow \gamma\gamma, bb$ and $\tau\tau$ and considering $E_e = 150 \text{ GeV}$. The results are updated in Ref. [350] for $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}$, including estimates for smaller electron beam energies, and the 2σ sensitivity on the branching ratio $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow uh)$ is found to be 0.15×10^{-2} . Making use of the polarisation of the electron beam and multivariate techniques, Ref. [452] shows that limits on the branching ratio $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow uh)$ of $\mathcal{O}(0.1)\%$ can be obtained, an improvement over present LHC limits of 0.19% [453, 454]. These results vary with E_e and E_p .

6.2.2 Charged scalars

The prospects to observe a light charged Higgs boson through the decay $H^+ \rightarrow \bar{c}b$ are investigated within the framework of the Two Higgs Doublet Model (2HDM) Type III, assuming a four-zero texture in the Yukawa matrices and a general Higgs potential [455]. The charged current production processes $e^-p \rightarrow \nu H^+ q$ are considered. The analyzed signature stems from the subsequent decay $H^+ \rightarrow \bar{c}b$. The parton level analysis includes irreducible SM backgrounds and limits from Higgs and flavor physics. The authors show that for $L = 100 \text{ fb}^{-1}$ a charged Higgs boson could be observed with about 3σ significance for masses between 100 and 200 GeV.

A similar study for the FCC-he (with $\sqrt{s} \approx 3.5 \text{ TeV}$) is presented in Ref. [456], where a next-to-minimal supersymmetric model (NMSSM) was considered where $H^\pm \rightarrow sc + su$. Using dedicated optimisation techniques, the authors show that a light charged boson H^\pm can be observed with maximal significance of 4.4 (2.2) σ provided its mass is at most $m_{H^\pm} = 114(121) \text{ GeV}$, for the total luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} .

An analysis for the prospects to discover the doubly charged Higgs bosons in the Georgi-Machacek model at the LHeC and the FCC-he is presented in Ref. [457]. Therein the production of a doubly-charged member of five-plet Higgs-bosons ($H_5^{\pm\pm}$), produced from vector boson fusion is studied. The authors find that 2 to 3σ limits can be obtained for mixings $\sin(\theta_H)$ as low as 0.2 , for $M(H_5) < 300 \text{ GeV}$. The prospects can be improved at the FCC-he collider, where doubly charged Higgs bosons can be tested for masses $M_{H_5} < 400 \text{ GeV}$, also for small scalar mixing angles.

The discovery prospects for the singly charged Higgs, H_5^\pm , in the Georgi-Machacek model are evaluated in Ref. [458]. The authors perform a multivariate analysis, including a fast detector simulation, and they consider the LHeC and the FCC-he for a mass range from 200 – 1000 GeV . They find that the LHeC can improve over current LHC limits on H_5^\pm for masses up to about 400 GeV and scalar mixing angles $\sin \theta_H \sim 0.5$.

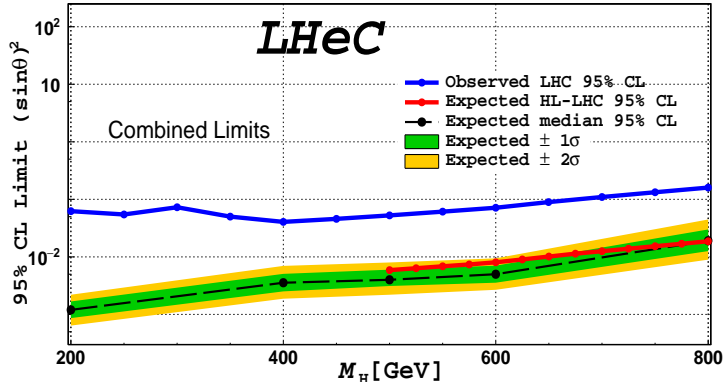


Figure 6.1: Expected exclusion limits (green and yellow bnds) for a heavy scalar search at the LHeC, assuming a systematic uncertainty on the SM background of 2% (from Ref. [460]). The blue line represents the current LHC limit at 95% CL as extracted from [461], the red line the forecast of the HL-LHC sensitivity via $h_2 \rightarrow ZZ$ searches from Ref. [462]. The LHeC results correspond to an integrated luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} .

6.2.3 Neutral scalars

Neutral scalar bosons generally appear in many extensions of the scalar potential. They can be added directly, as $SU(1)$ singlets, or be part of higher representation $SU(2)$ multiplets. They generally mix with the Higgs boson, from which they inherit a Higgs-like phenomenology.

The potential of testing the heavier CP-even scalar that is contained in the 2HDM Type-I is presented in Ref. [459]. Therein, the lighter scalar particle is considered to be a SM-like Higgs boson and the properties of a heavy scalar, assumed to have the specific mass 270 GeV, is discussed. The authors state that the final state $H \rightarrow hh$ is of particular interest, as it connects to the findings in Ref. [450].

The prospects to search for a generic heavy neutral scalar particle are presented in detail Ref. [460]. The model is a minimal extension of the SM with one additional complex scalar singlet that mixes with the SM Higgs doublet, which governs its production and decay mode. The heavy scalar is produced via vector-boson fusion and decays into two vector bosons. A multivariate analysis is performed and detector simulation is taken into account. Masses between 200 and 800 GeV and scalar mixings as small as $\sin^2 \alpha \sim 10^{-3}$ are considered. The resulting sensitivity for a total luminosity of 1 ab^{-1} is shown in Fig. 6.1, including existing bounds from the LHC and future HL-LHC projections. A significant improvement over existing LHC limits is found, with the LHeC probing scalar boson masses below ~ 500 GeV, a region which remains difficult at the HL-LHC.

The scalar bosons from the 2HDM Type-III framework may give rise to flavour violating signatures, which is discussed in Ref. [463]. The prospects to observe the light and heavy CP-even neutral Higgs bosons via their decays into flavor violating $b\bar{s}$ channels were studied with specific Yukawa textures and a general Higgs potential. The considered signature consists in one jet originating from b-hadron fragmentation (b-tagged jets) and one light-flavor jet in the central rapidity region, with a remaining jet in the forward region. Relevant SM backgrounds were considered and it is found that flavour violating decays of the SM-like Higgs boson would be accessible with $L = 100 \text{ fb}^{-1}$ at ep colliders, while for the heaviest scalar boson, with a mass of about 170 GeV, a total luminosity of about 1 ab^{-1} will give rise to $\mathcal{O}(1)$ events.

The prospects of observing the light CP-even neutral Higgs bosons via their decays into b-quarks, in the neutral and charged current production processes, considering the NMSSM framework, the MSSM with an additional singlet superfield, are studied in Ref. [464]. In this work the following constraints are incorporated into the spectrum: neutralino relic density corresponding to the observed dark matter relic density; direct and indirect mass bounds from searches for specific sparticles; the SM-like Higgs boson has a mass around 126 GeV and an invisible branching ratio below 0.25. The signal is given by three jets plus an electron or missing transverse momentum (E_T^{miss}) arising from the neutral (charged) current interaction, where two jets are required to be originating from a b-quark and the remaining jet is required to be in the forward region. For the cut-based analysis a number of reducible and irreducible SM backgrounds are considered and it includes a fast detector simulation with an adaption of the LHeC detector. It is found that the boson h_1 could be observable for some of the NMSSM benchmark points, at up to 2.5σ level in the $e + 3j$ channel up to masses of 75 GeV; in the $3j + E_T^{miss}$ channel h_1 could be discovered at 2.4σ level up to masses of 88 GeV with $L = 100 \text{ fb}^{-1}$, and a 5σ observation is possible with $L = 1 \text{ ab}^{-1}$ for masses up to 90 GeV.

6.2.4 Modifications of Higgs self-couplings

As in the chapter on Higgs physics above, the e^-p collisions are a very convenient environment to study the property of the SM Higgs boson itself. The latter is produced through vector-boson fusion processes and the precise measurement of its properties provides a unique opportunity to probe the interaction HVV , ($V = W^\pm, Z$). These interactions are in general sensitive to certain classes of beyond the SM physics, which can be parametrized, for instance, via higher dimensional operators and their coefficients, cf. Refs. [465–468].

The prospects to infer the strengths of the two couplings HWW and HZZ were studied in Refs. [465, 466] in the context of electron-proton collisions. The authors find that the higher-dimensional operator coefficients can be tested for values around $\mathcal{O}(10^{-1})$ at the LHeC. This sensitivity is improved at the FCC-he due to larger center-of-mass energies, which in general enhances the vector-boson fusion cross sections.

The Higgs self-coupling itself HHH can be tested through the measurement of the di-Higgs production cross section as was shown in Ref. [467]. With appropriate error fitting methodology this study illustrates that the Higgs boson self-coupling could be measured with an accuracy of $g_{HHH}^{(1)} = 1.00_{-0.17(0.12)}^{+0.24(0.14)}$ of its expected SM value at $\sqrt{s} = 3.5(5.0)$ TeV, considering an ultimate 10 ab^{-1} of integrated luminosity.

An analysis presented in Ref. [468] studies the LHeC sensitivity to dimension-six operators. The authors employ jet substructure techniques to reconstruct the boosted Higgs boson in the final state. A shape analysis on the differential cross sections shows in some cases improvements with respect to the high-luminosity LHC forecasts.

6.2.5 Exotic Higgs boson decays

The LHeC sensitivity to an invisibly decaying Higgs boson was investigated in Ref. [469]. Therein the focus is on the neutral current production channel due to the enhanced number of observables compared to the charged current counterpart. The signal contains one electron, one jet and large missing energy. A cut-based parton level analysis yields the estimated sensitivity of $\text{Br}(h \rightarrow \text{invisible}) = 6\%$ at 2σ level. Exotic decays of the Higgs boson into a pair of light spin-0

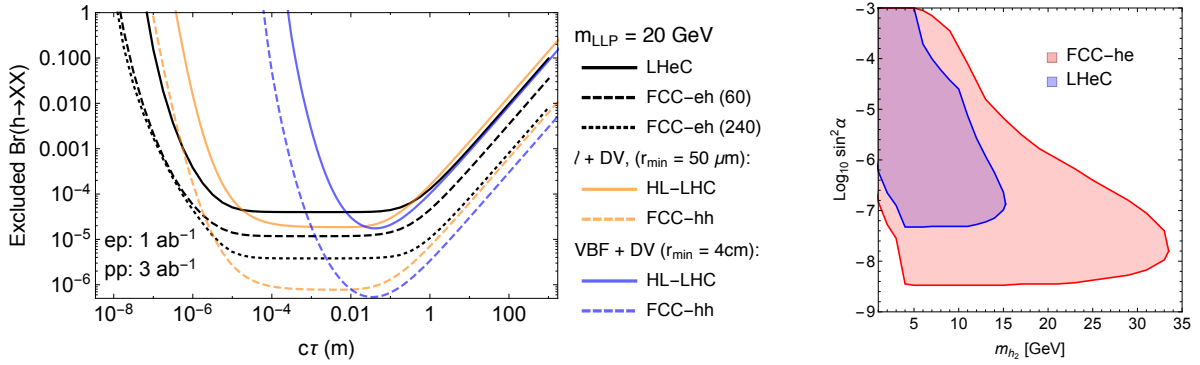


Figure 6.2: Sensitivity contours for displaced vertex searches for Higgs decays into long-lived scalar particles (LLP), which are pair produced from decays of the Higgs boson and decay themselves via scalar mixing into fully visible final states. Left: As a function of the LLP lifetime for a fixed mass from Ref. [471]. Right: For a specific model, where lifetime and production rate of the LLP are governed by the scalar mixing angle. The contours are for 3 events and consider displacements larger than $50 \mu\text{m}$ to be free of background.

particles referred to as Φ was discussed in Ref. [470]. The studied signature is a final state with 4 b-quarks, which is well motivated in models where the scalars can mix with the Higgs doublet, and suffers from multiple backgrounds at the LHC. The analysis is carried out at the parton level, where simple selection requirements render the signature nearly free of SM background and makes Φ with masses in the range [20, 60] GeV testable for a hVV ($V = W, Z$) coupling strength relative to the SM at a few per-mille level and at 95 % confidence level.

The prospects of testing exotic Higgs decays into pairs of light long-lived particles at the LHeC were studied in Ref. [471] where it was shown that proper lifetimes as small as μm could be tested, which is significantly better compared to the LHC. This is shown in Fig. 6.2 (left). This information can be interpreted in a model where the long-lived particles are light scalars that mix with the Higgs doublet, where both, production and decay, are governed by this scalar mixing angle. The area in the mass-mixing parameter space that give rise to at least 3 observable events with a displaced vertex are shown in Fig. 6.1. It is apparent that mixings as small as $\sin^2 \alpha \sim 10^{-7}$ can be tested at the LHeC for scalar masses between 5 and 15 GeV (Ref. [Fischer et al., input for ESPP]).

6.3 Searches for supersymmetry

Several SUSY scenarios might remain still elusive in searches performed at pp colliders. While the null results from current searches by the LHC experiments have produced impressive constraints on the SUSY coloured sector (squarks and gluinos) because of their large production cross sections in strong interactions, less stringent constraints have been placed on weakly-produced SUSY particles, namely neutralinos $\tilde{\chi}^0$, charginos $\tilde{\chi}^\pm$, and sleptons $\tilde{\ell}^\pm$. Some of these scenarios where ep colliders might have discovery potential complementary to that of the HL-LHC are discussed below. These include R-parity conserving SUSY models, e.g. motivated by dark matter, or R-parity violating SUSY models, e.g. including single production of bottom and top squarks and low mass gluinos.

6.3.1 Search for the SUSY Electroweak Sector: prompt signatures

Electroweakino scenarios where charginos, neutralinos, and sleptons are close in mass can be characterised with the neutralino mass m and the mass splitting between charginos and neutralinos Δm . Scenarios with $\Delta m < 50\text{ GeV}$ are referred to as *compressed*. A subtlety arises for $\Delta m \leq 1\text{ GeV}$, when the $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm/\tilde{\chi}_2^0$ becomes long lived and its decays are displaced. For $\Delta m > 1\text{ GeV}$ the decays are prompt, the visible decay products from $\tilde{\ell}$ and $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm/\tilde{\chi}_2^0$ have very soft transverse momenta (p_T) and the SM backgrounds are kinematically similar to the signal. The analyses therefore become challenging and sensitivities decrease substantially. Two SUSY scenarios are considered in Ref. [472] where the LSP $\tilde{\chi}_1^0$ is Bino-like, $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm$ and $\tilde{\chi}_2^0$ are Wino-like with almost degenerate masses, and the mass difference between $\tilde{\chi}_1^0$ and $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm$ is small. The signal is produced via the process “ $p e^- \rightarrow j e^- \tilde{\chi} \tilde{\chi}$ ”, where $\tilde{\chi} = \tilde{\chi}_1^0, \tilde{\chi}_1^\pm$ or $\tilde{\chi}_2^0$. Conservative leading order cross sections are considered for the SUSY signal models. The kinematic observables are input to the TMVA package to perform a multivariate analysis at the detector level.

In the compressed-slepton scenario, the case where the left-handed slepton $\tilde{\ell}_L$ and sneutrino $\tilde{\nu}$ are slightly heavier than $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm$ or $\tilde{\chi}_2^0$ is considered. When fixing the mass difference $\Delta m = m_{\tilde{\ell}} - m_{\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm, \tilde{\chi}_2^0} = 35\text{ GeV}$ and ignoring the systematic uncertainty on the background, the analysis indicates that the 2 (5)- σ limits on the $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm, \tilde{\chi}_2^0$ mass are 616 (517) GeV for 2.5 ab^{-1} luminosity at the FCC-eh, and 266 (227) GeV for 1 ab^{-1} luminosity at the LHeC, respectively. An illustration of the model assumptions in terms of sleptons and neutralino masses and the current constraints at the LHC is presented in Fig. 6.3 (left). Results are illustrated in Fig. 6.3 (right). The effects of varying Δm are investigated: fixing $m_{\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm, \tilde{\chi}_2^0}$ to be 400 GeV, it is found that at the FCC-eh the significance is maximal when Δm is around 20 GeV.

In the decoupled-slepton scenarios where only $\tilde{\chi}_1^0, \tilde{\chi}_1^\pm$ and $\tilde{\chi}_2^0$ are light and other SUSY particles are heavy and decoupled, the 2- σ limits obtained on the $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm, \tilde{\chi}_2^0$ mass are 230 GeV for 2.5 ab^{-1} luminosity at the FCC-eh when neglecting the systematic uncertainty on the background. Large systematic uncertainties on the SM background processes can substantially affect the sensitivity, hence good control of experimental and theoretical sources of uncertainties is very important.

Finally, it is also found that the possibility of having a negatively polarized electron beam ($P_{e^-} = 80\%$) could potentially extend the sensitivity to electroweakinos by up to 40%.

Overall, since the sensitivity to the electroweak SUSY sector depends on the mass hierarchy of $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm, \tilde{\chi}_1^0, \tilde{\chi}_2^0$ and sleptons, and given the difficulty to probe efficiently small Δm regions at the current LHC and possibly at the HL-LHC, measurements at ep colliders may prove to offer complementary or additional reaches, in particular for the compressed scenarios.

6.3.2 Search for the SUSY Electroweak Sector: long-lived particles

Studies on Higgsinos (χ) with masses $\mathcal{O}(100)\text{ GeV}$ are motivated by natural SUSY theories and help to avoid large fine-tuning on the Higgs boson mass. In these scenarios the low energy charginos (χ^\pm)/neutralinos (χ^0) are all Higgsino-like and their masses are nearly degenerate, only slightly above the neutralino.

As mentioned above, a compressed spectrum with nearly degenerate masses results in a kinematic suppression of the heavier χ^\pm decays into $W^\pm \chi^0$, which has twofold consequences: it yields final states without hard leptons; it enhances the χ^\pm lifetime up to $\mathcal{O}(1)\text{ mm}$. At the LHC the absence of hard leptons with sizable transverse momentum makes this signature difficult to investigate.

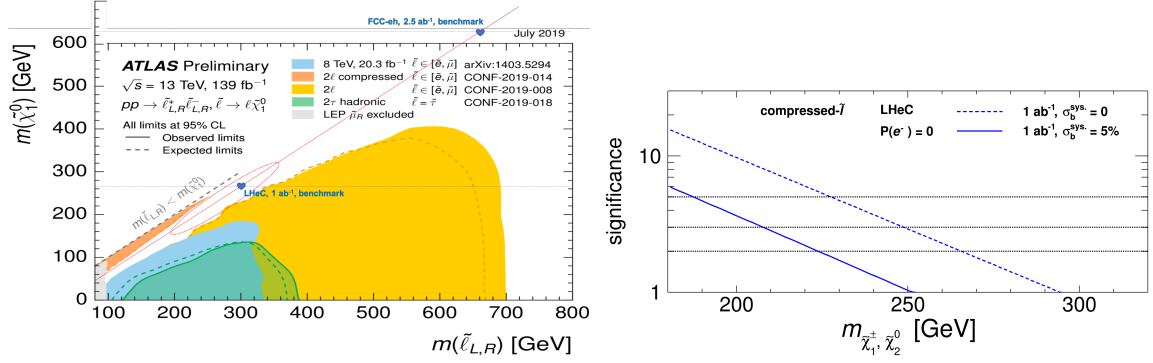


Figure 6.3: *Left:* Benchmark assumption on slepton masses and 2019 reach of current ATLAS searches for sleptons (Ref. ATLAS public twiki). *Right:* Significances as varying the masses of $\tilde{\chi}_1^\pm$ and $\tilde{\chi}_2^0$ for the compressed-slepton scenario at the LHeC with unpolarized beams and 1 ab⁻¹ luminosity. For dashed (solid) curve, a systematic uncertainty of 0% (5%) on the background is considered. The figure is from Ref. [472].

One possibility is to search for the tracks from χ^+ , which effectively disappear once it decays and are thus called “disappearing tracks”.

The discovery prospects for prompt signatures of electroweakino decays in electron-proton collisions are presented in Ref. [473]. The light χ^+ (and χ^0) can be produced in pairs via in vector boson fusion of the charged or neutral currents. A cut-based analysis of these processes at the LHeC, assuming prompt χ^+ decays, yields 2 σ discovery prospects for masses up to 120 GeV.

Taking into account the finite lifetime of the charginos, two comments are in order: first, the lifetimes and boosts of the χ^+ are in general too small to resolve a disappearing track; second, the soft final state is not a problem per se and can in principle be observed.

Instead of searching for a disappearing track, the long lifetimes of the χ^+ can be exploited via the measurement of the impact parameter of the soft hadronic final, as is discussed in Ref. [471]. The crucial machine performance parameters are the tracking resolution, which is as good as $\mathcal{O}(10)\mu\text{m}$, and the absence of pile up, which allows to identify and measure a single soft pion’s impact parameter. In this way the LHeC can test χ with masses up to 200 GeV, the corresponding sensitivity is shown in Fig. 6.4, and the bounds on disappearing track searches at the HL-LHC are shown as black lines in the figure. Considering non-prompt decays of Higgsinos thus significantly improves the discovery prospects compared to the prompt analysis. Further means of improving the prospects is an increased center-of-mass energy, which enhances the production rate of the Higgsinos.

6.3.3 R-parity violating signatures

Supersymmetry typically evokes the so-called R-parity, which implies that each fundamental vertex contains an even number of sparticles and helps preventing rapid proton decays. In general, R-parity need not be an exact symmetry of the theory, such that interactions can be present that allow for sparticles to decay into SM particles and include the possibility to violate lepton and/or baryon number.

R-parity violating interactions are particularly interesting in electron-proton collisions, where single superpartners might be produced resonantly, and detected via the corresponding $2 \rightarrow 2$ process. This is discussed in Refs. [474, 475] for the case of the *sbottom*, showing that a good

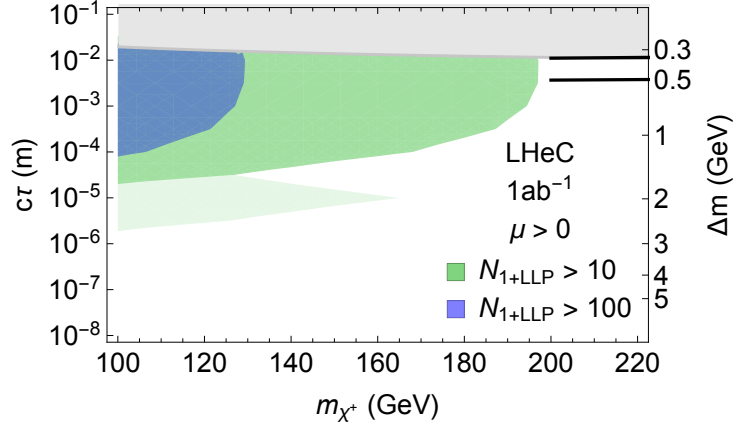


Figure 6.4: Exclusion limits on Higgsino masses as a function of their lifetime from Ref. [471]. Colored regions denote where 10 or 100 events with at least one LLP decay are observed. Light shading indicates the uncertainty in the predicted number of events due to different hadronization and LLP reconstruction assumptions. The black curves are the optimistic and pessimistic projected bounds from HL-LHC disappearing track searches.

level of precision could be achieved at LHeC compared with all the knowledge derived from indirect measurements.

Single (anti-)top quark production associated with a lightest neutralino in the MSSM with R -parity breaking coupling is investigated in Ref. [476] for the LHeC. The study includes calculations of the NLO QCD contributions and concluded that the available constraints would allow a notable production rate.

Certain SUSY scenarios might produce prompt signals of multiple soft jets, which generally resemble QCD backgrounds at the LHC and are thus notoriously difficult to test. The largely QCD-free environment of electron-proton collisions allows to test this class of signatures. One example of this signal can come from gluinos, which are tested at the LHC via signatures that involve large amounts of missing energy. If the gluino has an all-hadronic decay – as in R -parity violating scenarios or Stealth SUSY models – the current experimental searches have a gap in sensitivity for masses between about 50 to 70 GeV [477]. Gluinos within this gap can be tested at the LHeC [478], where a three sigma exclusion sensitivity was demonstrated with simple signal selection cuts.

6.4 Feebly Interacting Particles

New physics may interact with the SM via the so-called portal operators, including the vector, scalar, pseudoscalar, or neutrino portal. In these scenarios, the SM is often extended by an entire sector of new physics, comprising new forces and several particle species, which may be connected to the big open questions of Dark Matter or the origin of neutrino mass.

These hypothetical new sectors derive their typically very feeble interaction strength with the known particles from mass mixing with a SM particle that shares their quantum numbers. Some examples are being discussed below.

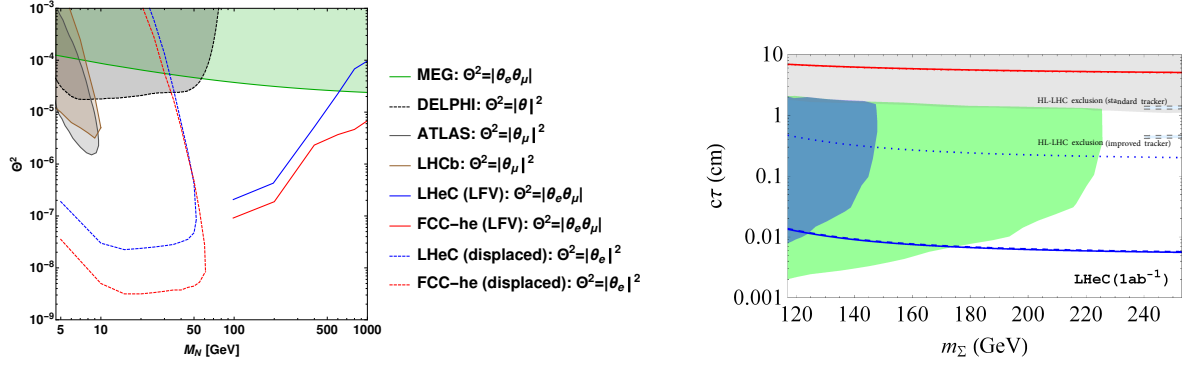


Figure 6.5: Left: Sensitivity of the LFV lepton-trijet searches (at 95 % C.L.) and the displaced vertex searches (at 95 % C.L.) from Ref. [481] compared to the current exclusion limits from ATLAS [483], LHCb [484], LEP [485], and MEG [486]. Right: Prospects of displaced vertex searches from charged fermion triplet Σ^\pm . The blue and green shaded regions denote the expected observability of 10 (100) events, dashed lines denote HL-LHC exclusion sensitivity, and the red line is connected to the light neutrino properties. For details, see text and Ref. [487].

6.4.1 Searches for heavy neutrinos

The observation of neutrino oscillations requires physics beyond the SM that gives rise to the light neutrino masses. One well-motivated class of models for this purpose is the so-called symmetry protected type I seesaw scenario, which features heavy neutrinos with signatures that are in principle observable at colliders, cf. Ref. [479] and references therein. A comprehensive overview over collider searches for the heavy and mostly sterile neutrinos can be found in Ref. [480], where the promising signatures for such searches at electron-proton colliders have been identified.

In electron-proton collisions heavy neutrinos can be produced via the charged current. The heavy neutrino production cross section is dependent on the active-sterile neutrino mixing with the electron flavor called $|\theta_e|^2$. The most promising searches at the LHeC are given by processes with lepton flavor violating final states and displaced vertices, the prospects of which are evaluated in Ref. [481] and are shown in Fig. 6.5. It is remarkable, that the prospects to detect heavy neutrinos with masses above about 100 GeV are much better in electron-proton collisions compared to proton-proton or electron-positron, due to the much smaller reducible backgrounds.

The prospects of heavy neutrino detection can be further enhanced with jet substructure techniques when the W boson in the decay $N \rightarrow eW$, $W \rightarrow jj$ is highly boosted. Ref. [482] shows that these techniques can help to distinguish the heavy neutrino signal from the few SM backgrounds. A considerable improvement in the bounds of $|V_{eN}|^2$ over present limits from LHC, $0\nu 2\beta$ experiments and from electroweak precision data is obtained with 1 ab⁻¹ of integrated luminosity at the LHeC.

An alternative approach is employed in Ref. [488] where the dominant sterile neutrino interactions with the SM are taken to be higher dimension effective operators (parameterizing a wide variety of UV-complete new physics models) while contributions from neutrino mixing is neglected. The study shows prospects of Majorana neutrino detection for masses lower than 700 and 1300 GeV can be discovered at the LHeC with $E_e = 50$ and 150 GeV, respectively, for $E_p = 7$ TeV. Recently the influence of vector and scalar operators on the angular distribution of the final anti-lepton was investigated. The forward-backward asymmetry is studied in Ref. [489], wherein, in particular, the feasibility of initial electron polarisation as a discriminator between different effective operators is studied.

Prospects of testing left-right symmetric models, featuring additional charged and neutral gauge bosons and heavy neutrinos, were studied in the context of electron-proton collisions in Refs. [490, 491]. The authors show that the production of heavy right-handed neutrinos of mass $\mathcal{O}(10^2\text{--}10^3)$ GeV at the LHeC, with a lepton number violating final state, can yield information on the parity breaking scale in left-right symmetric theories. Heavy neutrinos of sub-TeV mass in inverse see-saw model with Yukawa coupling of $\mathcal{O}(0.1)$ are investigated for the LHeC in Ref. [492].

6.4.2 Fermion triplets in type III seesaw

Another technically natural way of generating the light neutrino masses is the so-called Type III seesaw mechanism, which extends the SM with a fermion $SU(2)$ triplet. In minimal versions of these models the neutral and charged triplet fermions have almost degenerate masses around the TeV scale.

The prospects of studying this mechanism via searches for the new fermions are evaluated in Ref. [487], wherein signatures from long-lived particles at various experiments were considered. The triplet fermions, primarily produced through their gauge interactions, can be observed via displaced vertices and disappearing track searches for masses of a few hundred GeV.

The authors find that the LHeC can observe displaced vertices from the decays of the charged fermion triplet components via the soft pion impact parameters for triplet masses up to about 220 GeV and has a complementary sensitivity to the light neutrino mass scale, which governs the lifetime of the neutral fermion, compared the LHC and MATHUSLA. The final results from Ref. [487] for the LHeC are shown in the right panel of Fig. 6.5.

6.4.3 Dark photons

Minimal extensions of the SM often involve additional gauge factors. In particular the $U(1)_X$ extensions are interesting, because they are often connected to a dark charge that can be associated with the dark matter.

An SM-extending $U(1)_X$ predicts an additional gauge boson that naturally mixes with the $U(1)_Y$ factor of the SM kinetically [493]. This kinetic mixing lets the SM photon couple to fermions that carry the dark charge X , and the other gauge boson to the electric charge. Both interactions are suppressed by the mixing parameter ϵ . In most models the additional gauge boson also receives a mass, possibly from spontaneous breaking of the $U(1)_X$, and the corresponding mass eigenstate is called a dark photon. Dark photons typically have masses around the GeV scale and their interactions are QED-like, scaled with the small mixing parameter ϵ . It can decay to pairs of leptons, hadrons, or quarks, which can give rise to a displaced vertex signal due to its long lifetime.

The prospects for the dark photon searches via their displaced decays in ep collisions are presented in Ref. [494]. The most relevant performance characteristics of the LHeC are the very good tracking resolution and the very low level of background, which allow the detection of a secondary vertex with a displacement of $\mathcal{O}(0.1)$ mm.

The resulting sensitivity contours in the mass-mixing parameter space are shown in Fig. 6.6, where the different colors correspond to different assumptions on the irreducible background and the solid and dashed lines consider different signal reconstruction efficiencies. Also shown for comparison are existing exclusion limits from different experiments, and the region that is currently investigated by the LHCb collaboration [495].

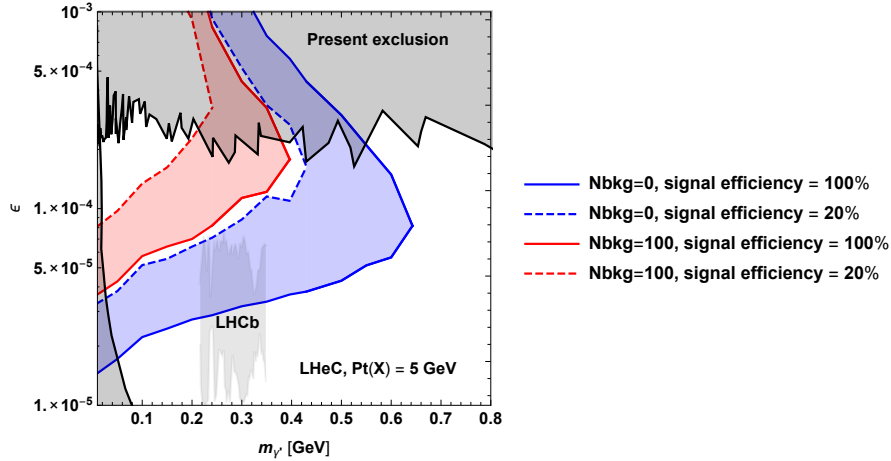


Figure 6.6: Projected sensitivity of dark photon searches at the LHeC via displaced dark photon decays from Ref. [494]. The sensitivity contour lines are at the 90 % confidence level and consider a transverse momentum cut on the final state hadrons of 5 GeV. The blue and red areas denote the assumption of zero and 100 background events, respectively, the solid and dashed lines correspond to a reconstruction efficiency of 100 % and 20 %, respectively. See Ref. [494] for details.

The domain in parameter space tested in electron-proton collisions is complementary to other present and planned experiments. In particular for masses below the di-muon threshold, searches at the LHC are practically impossible. It is remarkable that dark photons in this mass range can be part of a dark sector that explains the observed Dark Matter in the Universe via a freeze-in mechanism, cf. e.g. Ref. [496].

6.4.4 Axion-like particles

The axion is the Goldstone boson related to a global $U(1)$ symmetry, which is spontaneously broken at the so-called Peccei-Quinn scale, assumed to be around the GUT scale. Its mass, being inversely proportional to the Peccei-Quinn scale, is therefore usually in the sub-eV regime and the axion provides a dynamical solution to the strong CP problem of the standard model. Axions are a very attractive candidate for “cold” dark matter, despite their tiny mass.

Axion-like particles (ALP) are motivated by the original idea of the QCD axion and similarly, they are good dark matter candidates. ALPs are pseudoscalar particles that are usually assumed to be relatively light (i.e. with masses around and below one GeV) and couple to the QCD field strength. In addition, they may have a number of further interactions, for instance they can interact with the other fields of the SM and also mix with the pion. Particularly interesting is the possibility to produce ALPs via vector boson fusion processes.

A recent study [497] has evaluated the prospects of detecting ALPs at the LHeC via the process $e^- \gamma \rightarrow e^- a$ in a model independent fashion. The investigated signature is the decay $a \rightarrow \gamma \gamma$, which allows to test the effective ALP-photon coupling for ALPs with masses in the range of $10 \text{ GeV} < m_a < 3 \text{ TeV}$. It was found that sensitivities can improve current LHC bounds considerably, especially for ALP masses below 100 GeV, and the authors state that ALP searches at ep colliders might become an important handle on this class of new physics scenarios [497].

6.5 Anomalous Couplings

New physics beyond the SM can modify SM interactions, for instance at the loop level. Such contributions could either modify the interaction strength of SM particles or introduce additional interactions that are not present in the SM, such as flavor changing neutral couplings (FCNC).

6.5.1 Triple Gauge couplings

In the SM, the triple gauge boson couplings (TGC) W^+W^-V , $V = \gamma, Z$ are precisely defined and any significant deviation from the SM predicted values would indicate new physics. Present constraints on anomalous triple vector boson couplings are dominated by LEP (but they are not free of assumptions) and the WWZ and $WW\gamma$ vertices can be tested at LHeC in great detail.

The search for anomalous $WW\gamma$ and WWZ couplings with polarized electron beam were studied in Ref. [330] via the processes $ep \rightarrow \nu q\gamma X$ and $ep \rightarrow \nu qZX$. It was found that the LHeC sensitivity with $E_e = 60$ GeV and $L = 100/\text{fb}$ is comparable with existing experimental limits from lepton and hadron colliders, and that anomalous Z couplings might be better, reaching $(\Delta\kappa_{\gamma,Z}, \lambda_{\gamma,Z})$ as small as $\mathcal{O}(10^{-1}, 10^{-2})$. In general, beam polarization and larger electron beam energies improve the sensitivity, and the LHeC was found to give complementary information on the anomalous couplings compared to the LHC.

The prospects of testing anomalous triple gauge couplings are also investigated in Ref. [329]. Therein the authors study the kinematics of an isolated hard photon and a single jet with a substantial amount of missing transverse momentum. They show that the LHeC is sensitive to anomalous triple gauge couplings via the azimuthal angle differences in the considered final state. It is pointed out that in such an analysis it is possible to probe the $WW\gamma$ vertex separately, with no contamination from possible BSM contributions to the WWZ coupling. The estimations consider $E_e = 100, 140, 200$ GeV and it is claimed that while higher energies yield better sensitivities, the differences are not very large. For $L = 200/\text{fb}$ and $E_e = 140$ GeV the exclusion power of the LHeC is superior to all existing bounds, including those from LEP.

The process $e^-p \rightarrow e^- \mu^+ \nu j$ is investigated in Ref. [334]. The analysis is carried out at the parton level and includes the cross section measurement and a shape analysis of angular variables, in particular of the distribution of the azimuthal angle between the final state forward electron and jet. It is shown that the full reconstruction of leptonic W decay can be used for W polarization which is another probe of anomalous triple gauge couplings. The results show that the LHeC could reach a sensitivity to λ_γ and $\Delta\kappa_\gamma$ as small as $\mathcal{O}(10^{-3})$ for $L = 2 - 3/\text{ab}$.

6.5.2 Anomalous top-gauge-couplings

Like all the flavor changing neutral currents the top quark FCNC interactions are also extremely suppressed in the SM, which renders them a good test of new physics. The contributions from FCNC to top interactions can be parameterized via an effective theory and studied by analysing specific processes.

One promising candidate for an FCNC process is $\gamma p \rightarrow W^- t, W^+ \bar{t}$, as studied in Ref. [498] via a model independent effective Lagrangian in the unitary gauge and including anomalous Wtb and $Wtb\gamma$ interactions. The four independent anomalous form factors are $\Delta F_{1L} = F_{1L} - 1, F_{2L}, F_{1R}$, and F_{2R} , and the LHeC's sensitivity to these is found to be $-0.0065 < \Delta F_{1L} < 0.0314$, $-0.1082 < F_{1R} < 0.1188$, $-0.0601 < F_{2L} < 0.0626$ and $-0.1233 < F_{2R} < 0.1579$ for an

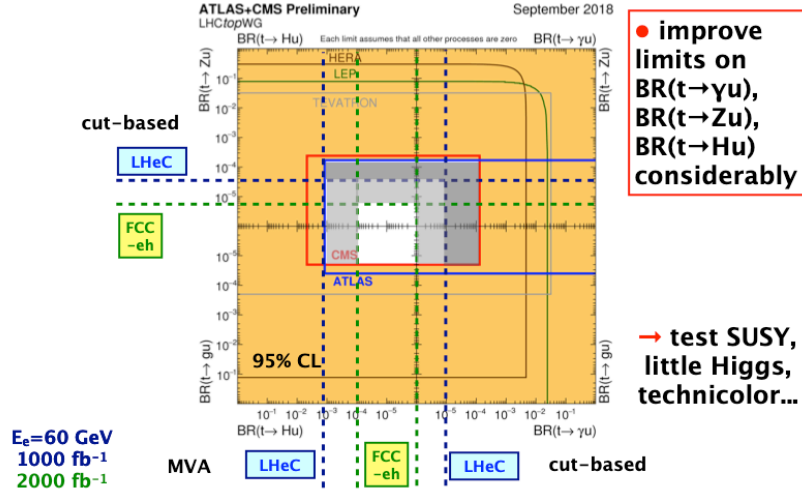


Figure 6.7: [CAPTION MISSING]

integrated luminosity of $L = 100 \text{ fb}^{-1}$. The sensitivity on $F_{1L/R}$ is considerably better at the LHeC than at the LHC, while the limits on the other form factors are comparable.

Another process to test anomalous Wtb coupling is $e^-p \rightarrow \nu_e \bar{t}$, which is investigated in Ref. [340]. The authors find that Δf_{1L} can be measured at an accuracy of $\sim 10^{-2} - 10^{-3}$ at 95% C.L., while the other form factors can be tested at the level of $10^{-1} - 10^{-2}$, including a systematic uncertainty varying between 10%–1% and considering $L = 100 \text{ fb}^{-1}$ for $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}$.

A more general framework is given by the full basis of $SU(2)_L \times U(1)$ operators, including the relevant four-fermion ones. This approach is employed in Ref. [499] to estimate the LHeC sensitivity to anomalous tbW couplings. This work indicates that the LHeC can significantly improve on the bounds as expected from the HL-LHC for F_{1L} , and lead to somewhat tighter bounds on F_{1R} . In agreement with Refs. [340, 498] the tests of tensor couplings F_{2L}, F_{2R} are found to improve the HL-LHC sensitivity only moderately.

The single top quark production via flavor changing neutral current interactions of type $tq\gamma$ are studied in Refs. [348, 500], investigating the signal processes $e^-p \rightarrow e^-W^\pm q + X$ and $e^-p \rightarrow e^-W^\pm bq + X$. The analysis uses $E_e = 50$ and 60 GeV and is based on a fast simulation including hadronisation and reconstruction. From the kinematic distributions of jets the top and W masses are reconstructed and signal enhancing selection cuts are employed. The resulting sensitivity limits for the anomalous $tq\gamma$ couplings are found to be $\mathcal{O}(0.01)$ for $L = 100/\text{fb}$, which was expressed in terms of the branching ratios $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow u\gamma)$ and $\text{Br}(t \rightarrow c\gamma)$, found to be as small as 4×10^{-6} and 4×10^{-5} , respectively.

The top quark FCNC with a Z-boson was studied in Ref. [501] for $E_e = 60 \text{ GeV}$. An effective theory was employed where the anomalous FCNC couplings are of vector and tensor nature, which were shown to be distinguishable using kinematics and polarisation information. For $L = 2 \text{ ab}^{-1}$, couplings of $\mathcal{O}(0.01)$ can be tested at the 95% confidence level.

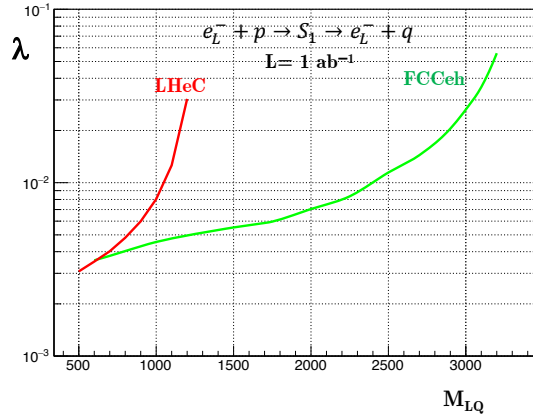


Figure 6.8: Estimated 2σ significance for the coupling λ at LHeC and FCC-eh for the scalar lepto-quark S_1 as a function of its mass, assuming 1 ab^{-1} luminosity.

6.6 Theories with heavy resonances

Many other BSM scenarios exist which could manifest via the presence of new resonances. The high centre of mass energy of pp colliders allow a better in reach in most of these scenarios. Nonetheless, the LHeC and FCC-eh can contribute to searches for new physics in this area, relevant studies on various areas including scalar and vector-lepton quarks and excited leptons, are collected in this section.

6.6.1 Leptoquarks

In recent years the experiments that study heavy flavored mesons revealed intriguing hints for new physics: in semi-leptonic decays of B mesons. A violation of lepton flavor universality at the level of 3 to 5σ is apparent in both the charged current and neutral current mediated processes [502]. In this context BSM theories involving leptoquarks (LQs) have gained renewed interest as they can give rise to the lepton universality violating decays of heavy mesons at tree level. Leptoquarks first appeared in Ref. [503] in Pati and Salam's $SU(4)$ model, where lepton number was considered to be the fourth colour. They also appear in Grand Unified theories, extended technicolor models and compositeness models. The nomenclature and classification are based on their transformation properties under the SM gauge groups [504, 505].

In ep collisions LQs can be produced in an s-channel resonance, the signature being a peak in the invariant mass of the outgoing ℓq system. Contrary to what is achievable in the LHC environment, at the LHeC many properties of the LQs can be measured with high precision [1].

The search for LQ's at the LHC is essentially insensitive to the coupling λ , as the dominant pair production process is via the strong interaction. Recent searches have therefore been able to exclude LQ's of all generations up to $\sim 1 \text{ TeV}$. (for the latest results, see, for example Ref. [506, 507]). Nevertheless, there remains some parameter space where the LHeC can make a significant contribution in the search for LQ's: cross-generational mixing: $eq \rightarrow \mu q$, or $eq \rightarrow eb$, for example, or if the branching ratio in the decay of the LQ to a charged lepton is very low.

For LQs with masses below the center-of-mass energy of the collider, suitable searches promise a sensitivity to λ as small as $\mathcal{O}(10^{-3})$. As shown in [508], production of the first generation scalar leptoquarks at LHeC can have much larger cross section than at the LHC. The authors

also show that a sensitivity to the Yukawa coupling for the LQs called $R_2^{5/3} \sim (\mathbf{3}, \mathbf{2}, 7/6)$ and $\tilde{R}_2^{2/3} \sim (\mathbf{3}, \mathbf{2}, 1/6)$ better than the electromagnetic strength (~ 0.3) of 5σ can be reached up to a mass of 1.2 TeV.

For the S_1 scalar leptoquark $(\bar{\mathbf{3}}, \mathbf{1}, 1/3)$, an estimate of the sensitivity of the LHeC and the FCC-eh as a function of the LQ mass and LL Yukawa coupling is shown in Fig. 6.8, assuming 1 ab^{-1} of integrated luminosity. Here, the signal was generated at leading order using MadGraph with the model files from Ref. [509], with hadronization performed by Herwig7 [510, 511] and detector simulation with Delphes [342]. The SM background $e^- p \rightarrow e^- j$ was also generated at leading order. A simple set of cuts on the p_T of the leading electron and jet and a window on the invariant mass of the e-jet system was applied.

The $\tilde{R}_2^{2/3}$ scalar LQ allows for coupling to right-handed neutrinos, providing interesting search channels. Its signatures at ep colliders have been investigated recently [512, 513]. In the lepton + jet final state, it is found that LHeC can probe up to 1.2 TeV at 3σ significance with an e^- beam, and at 5σ discovery with an e^+ beam and 1 ab^{-1} of integrated luminosity. At FCC-eh, a 5σ discovery can be reached with an e^- beam up to ~ 2.3 TeV and 1 ab^{-1} of integrated luminosity.

6.6.2 Vector-like quarks

In composite Higgs models, new vector-like quarks are introduced, in particular the top-partner (T) with charge $2/3$. The prospects of detecting T at the LHeC are discussed in Ref. [514]. For this search a simplified model is considered where T is produced from positron proton scattering via intergenerational mixing and decays as $T \rightarrow tZ$, with the final state $\nu_e \ell^+ \ell^- b j j'$, considering $E_e = 140$ GeV. The authors find that for $L = 1/\text{ab}$ masses for the top partner T around 800 GeV can be tested when the model-related coupling constants are $\mathcal{O}(0.1)$ and that mixing between T and the first generation quarks can significantly enhance the LHeC sensitivity.

Another search strategy for singly produced top partners is given by their decays $T \rightarrow Wb$ and $T \rightarrow th$, which is presented in Ref. [515]. The analysis is based on a simplified model where the top partner is an $SU_L(2)$ singlet and interacts only with the third generation of quarks. It considers collisions of positrons and protons with $E_e = 140$ GeV, the analysis is carried out at the parton level and investigates the kinematic distributions of the final states. Useful kinematic variables for the bW final state were found to be the transverse momentum of the lepton, b-jet missing energy, while for the th final state the most useful observable is the transverse hadronic energy. For masses of $\mathcal{O}(1)$ TeV the LHeC is found to be sensitive to the new interactions when they are $\mathcal{O}(0.1)$ for $L = 1/\text{ab}$, in agreement with [514]. A very similar analysis was performed for the $T \rightarrow Wb$ signal channel with comparable results [516].

6.6.3 Excited fermions (ν^*, e^*, u^*)

The potential of searches for excited spin-1/2 and spin-3/2 neutrinos are discussed in Ref. [517]. For the analysis the authors consider effective currents that describe the interactions between excited fermions, gauge bosons, and SM leptons. For the signature, the production of the excited electron neutrino ν^* and its subsequent decay $\nu^* \rightarrow We$ with $W \rightarrow jj$ was chosen. The analysis is carried out at the parton level, considers $E_e = 60$ GeV, and consists in a study of the kinematic distributions of the final states. It is concluded that the signature can be well

distinguished from backgrounds, and that other lepton-hadron colliders would be required to test the excited neutrinos of different flavors.

Analyses in similar models, considering electron-proton collisions at energies of the FCC-he and beyond, were carried out for excited electron neutrinos and are presented in Ref. [518]. An analysis for the prospects of testing excited electrons is discussed in Ref. [519], and testing excited quarks in a composite model framework is investigated in Ref. [520].

6.6.4 Color octet leptons

Unresolved issues of the SM, like family replication and quark-lepton symmetry, can be addressed by composite models, where quarks, leptons, and gauge bosons are composite particles made up of more basic constituents. One general class of particles, predicted in most composite models, are color octet leptons, which are bound states of a heavy fermion and a heavy scalar particle that is assumed to be color-charged. In this scenario each SM lepton is accompanied by a color octet lepton, which may have spin $1/2$ or $3/2$. Since they are unobserved, the compositeness scale is expected to be at least $\mathcal{O}(1)$ TeV.

At the LHeC, the color octet partner of the electron e_8 can be produced through the process $e^-p \rightarrow e_8g + X$ and studied via its decays products. An analysis including the study of kinematic distributions that were obtained at the parton level is presented in Ref. [521]. It was shown that discovery prospects exist for masses of $\mathcal{O}(\text{TeV})$. A similar analysis is performed for the FCC-he at much higher energies in Ref. [522].

6.7 Summary and conclusion

The lack of new physics at the LHC to date forces the community to develop new theoretical ideas as well as to explore the complementarities of pp machines with other possible future facilities. In the context of ep colliders, several studies are being carried out to understand the potential to search for new physics, i.e. considering that many interactions can be tested at high precision that are otherwise not easily accessible.

At ep colliders, most BSM physics is accessed via vector-boson fusion, which suppresses the production cross section quickly with increasing mass. Nonetheless, scalar extensions of the SM as well as neutrino-mass related BSM physics can be well tested at ep due to the smallness and reducibility of the SM backgrounds. The absence of pile up and complicated triggering makes searches for soft-momenta final state particles feasible, so that results for BSM theories for example characterised by the presence of non-prompt, long-lived particles are complementary to those at the LHC. Additionally, the excellent angular acceptance and resolution of the detector also renders the LHeC a very suitable environment for displaced vertex searches. An increase in the centre of mass energy as high as the one foreseen at the FCC would naturally boost the reach in most scenarios considerably.

Finally, it is worth noting that the LHeC can offer different or indirect ways to search for new physics. It was shown recently that Lorentz invariance violation in the weak vector-boson sector can be studied in electron-proton scattering [523] via a Fourier-analysis of the parity violating asymmetry in deep inelastic scattering. Moreover, New Physics could be related to nucleon, nuclear, and top structure functions as discussed in Refs. [355, 524, 525]. Investigating

of the $B_c^{(*)}$ meson and doubly heavy baryon also was shown to have discovery potential for New Physics [526–528].

Chapter 7

The Influence of the LHeC on Physics at HL-LHC

Example reference: LHeC [1]

7.1 Precision Electroweak Measurements at the LHC

7.2 Higgs Physics

7.2.1 Resolving QCD Uncertainties in pp Higgs Physics using LHeC

7.2.2 Combined ep and pp Higgs Coupling Determinations

7.3 High Mass Searches at the LHC

7.4 Heavy Ion Physics with eA Input

The study of hadronic collisions at RHIC and the LHC, proton-proton, proton-nucleus and nucleus-nucleus, has produced several observations of crucial importance for our understanding of QCD in complex systems where a large number of partons is involved [529,530]. The different stages of a heavy ion collision, as we presently picture it, are schematically drawn in Fig 7.1.

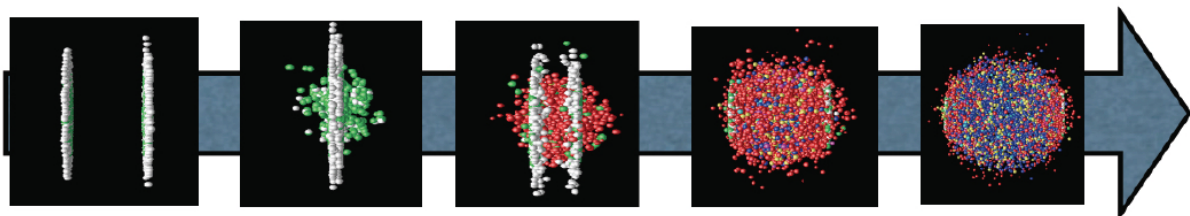


Figure 7.1: Sketch of a heavy ion collision with time running left to right, going from the approach of two ultrarelativistic Lorentz-contracted nuclei, the collision and parton creation in the central rapidity region, the beginning of expansion and formation of the QGP, the expansion of the QGP until hadronisation, and finally the expansion of the hadronic gas.

First, the hot and dense partonic medium created in heavy ion collisions, the quark-gluon plasma (QGP), experiences a collective behaviour of which azimuthal asymmetries and transverse spectra with a specific ordering in particle masses are the most prominent observables. This collectivity can be very well described by relativistic hydrodynamics [531]. For this description, the system has to undergo some dynamics leading to rough isotropisation in a short time, $\lesssim 1$ fm/c, for which both strong and weak coupling explanations have been proposed [432].

Second, collisions between smaller systems, pp and pA , show many of the features [430, 431] that in heavy ion collisions are taken as indicative of the production of a dense hot partonic medium. The most celebrated of such features, the long rapidity range particle correlations collimated in azimuth, named the ridge, has been found in all collisions systems. The dynamics underlying this phenomena, either the formation of QGP and the existence of strong final state interactions, or some initial state dynamics that leaves imprint on the final observables, is under discussion [432].

Finally, the QGP is extremely opaque to both highly energetic partons [532] and quarkonia [533] traversing it. These observables, whose production in pp can be addressed through perturbative methods, are called hard probes [534]. The quantification of the properties of the QGP extracted through hard probes is done by a comparison with predictions based on assuming a nuclear collision to be a superposition of collisions among free nucleons. Such predictions contain uncertainties coming both from nuclear effects other than those in QGP (named cold nuclear matter effects), and from uncertainties in the dynamics determining the interaction between the energetic parton or bound state and the medium. In the case of partons, this has motivated the development of sophisticated jet studies in heavy ion collisions [535].

eA collisions studied in the energy range relevant for the corresponding hadronic accelerator – the LHeC for the LHC – would substantially improve our knowledge on all these aspects and, indeed, on all stages of a heavy ion collisions depicted in Fig 7.1. Besides, they can reduce sizeably the uncertainties in the extracted QGP parameters, the central goal of the heavy program for the understanding of the different phases of QCD. Here we provide three examples of such synergies:

- Nuclear parton densities: The large lack of precision presently existing in the determination of parton densities induce large uncertainties in the understanding of several signatures of the QGP. For example, for J/ψ suppression, its magnitude at midrapidity at the LHC is compatible with the sole effect of nuclear shadowing on nPDFs [533], see Fig. 7.2. While from data at lower energies and at forward and backward rapidities it is clear that this is not the only effect at work, only a reduction on the nPDF uncertainty as feasible at the LHeC, see Sec. 4.2, will make possible a precise quantification of the different mechanisms producing either suppression (screening, gluon dissociation, energy loss) or enhancement (recombination or coalescence), that play a role in this observable.
- Initial conditions for the collective expansion and the small system problem: At present, the largest uncertainty in the determination of the transport coefficients of the partonic matter created in heavy ion collisions [537, 538] (see Fig. 7.3), required in hydrodynamic calculations, and in our understanding of the speed of the approach to isotropisation and of the dynamics prior to it [539], comes from our lack of knowledge of the nuclear wave function and of the mechanism of particle production at small to moderate scales – i.e. the soft and semihard regimes. Both aspects determine the initial conditions for the application of relativistic hydrodynamics. This is even more crucial in the discussion of small systems, where details of the transverse structure of protons are key [540] not only to provide such initial conditions but also to establish the relative role of initial versus final state dynamics. For example, the description of azimuthal asymmetries in pp and pPb collisions

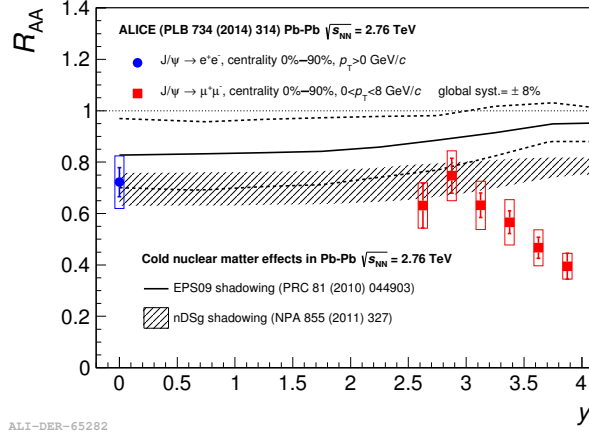


Figure 7.2: ALICE inclusive J/ψ nuclear modification factor versus rapidity [536], compared to nPDF calculations. Taken from [533].

at the LHC demands that the proton is modelled as a collection of constituent quarks or hot spots [531, 540]. ep and eA collisions at the LHeC can constrain both aspects in the pertinent kinematic region, Secs. 3.2.4 and 4.3. Besides, they can clarify the mechanisms of particle production and the possible relevance of initial state correlations on the final state observables as suggested e.g. by CGC calculations, see Secs. 3.2.2 and 4.4, whose importance for LHC energies can be established at the LHeC.

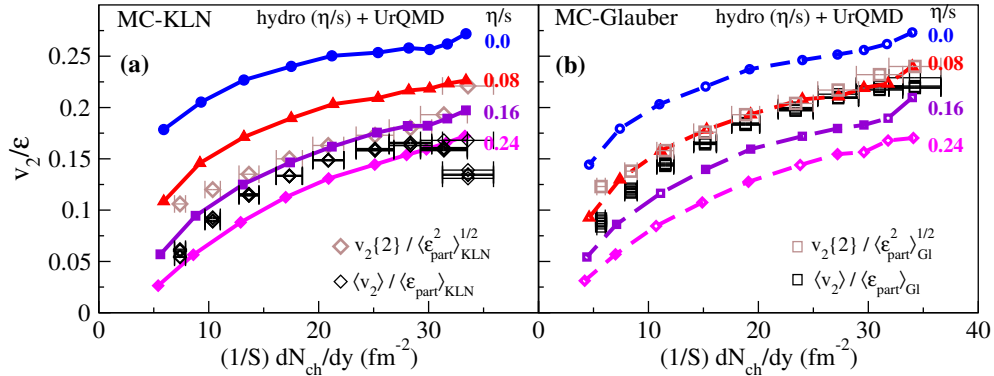


Figure 7.3: Comparison of the universal $v_2(\eta/s)/\epsilon$ vs. $(1/S)(dN_{ch}/dy)$ curves with experimental data for $\langle v_2 \rangle$ [541], $v_2\{2\}$ [542], and dN_{ch}/dy [543] from the STAR Collaboration. The experimental data used in (a) and (b) are identical, but the normalisation factors $\langle \epsilon_{part} \rangle$ and S used on the vertical and horizontal axes, as well as the factor $\langle \epsilon_{part}^2 \rangle^{1/2}$ used to normalize the $v_2\{2\}$ data, are taken from the MC-KLN model in (a) and from the MC-Glauber model in (b). Theoretical curves are from simulations with MC-KLN initial conditions in (a) and with MC-Glauber initial conditions in (b). Taken from [537].

- Impact on hard probes: Besides the improvement in the determination of nPDFs that affects the quantification of hard probes, commented above, eA collisions can help to understand the dynamics of the probes by analysing the effects of the nuclear medium on them. As two examples, the abundant yields of jets and large transverse momentum particles at the LHeC [1] will allow precise studies of the nuclear effects on jet observables and of hadronisation inside the nuclear medium. These two aspects are of capital importance not only in heavy ion collisions but also in small systems where the lack of jet modification is the only QGP-like characteristics not observed in pPb . On the other hand, measurements of exclusive quarkonium production at the LHeC [1] will provide a better understanding of the cold nuclear matter effects on this probe, on top of which the effects of the QGP

will provide a quantitative characterisation of this new form of QCD matter.

As discussed in Sec. 4.2, $p\text{Pb}$ and PbPb collisions at the LHC offer possibilities for constraining nPDFs, through the measurement of EW vector boson production [544], dijets [397], D mesons at forward rapidities [409] and exclusive charmonium and dijet photoproduction in ultraperipheral collisions [545–547]. Specifically, dijets in UPCs could constrain nPDFs in the region $10^{-3} \lesssim x \lesssim 0.7$ and $200 \lesssim Q^2 \lesssim 10^4 \text{ GeV}^2$. eA collisions would provide more precise nPDFs, whose compatibility with these mentioned observables would clearly establish the validity of collinear factorisation and the mechanisms of particle production in collisions involving nuclei.

Furthermore, eA offers another system where photon-photon collisions, recently measured in UPCs at the LHC [548], can be studied. For example, the observed acoplanarity of the produced muon pairs can be analysed in eA in order to clarify its possible origin and constrain the parton densities in the photon.

Finally, the possible existence of a new non-linear regime of QCD - saturation - at small x is also under study at the LHC, for example using dijets in the forward rapidity region in $p\text{Pb}$ collisions [549]. As discussed in Sec. 4.5, the ridge phenomenon (two particle correlations peaked at zero and π azimuthal angles and stretched along the full rapidity of the detector) observed in all collision systems, pp , $p\text{Pb}$ and PbPb at the LHC, has been measured in photoproduction on Pb in UPCs at the LHC [433]. For the time being, its existence in smaller systems like e^+e^- [434] at LEP and ep at HERA [435] has been scrutinised but the results are not conclusive. These studies are fully complementary to those in ep and eA , where its search at the smallest possible values of x at the LHeC would be most interesting. For example, the collision of the virtual photon with the proton at the LHeC can be considered as a high energy collision of two jets or “flux tubes”.

In conclusion, ep and eA collisions as studied at the LHeC will have a large impact on the heavy ion programme, as the comparison of the kinematic reach of DIS and hadronic machines shown in Fig. 7.4 makes evident. It should be noted that there exist proposals for extending such programme into Run 5 and 6 of the LHC [403], by running lighter ions and with detector upgrades in ATLAS and CMS (starting in Run 4) and LHCb (Upgrade II [550]).

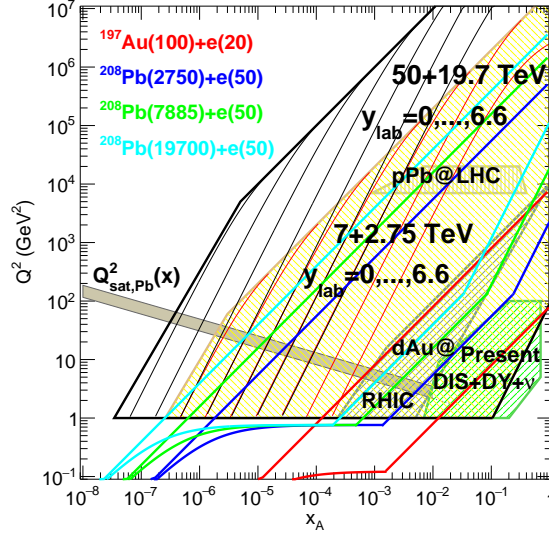


Figure 7.4: Kinematic regions in the $x - Q^2$ plane explored by data sets (charged lepton and neutrino DIS, DY, dAu at RHIC and pPb at the LHC) used in present nPDF analyses [378], compared to the ones achievable at the EIC (red), the LHeC (ERL against the HL-LHC beams, dark blue) and two FCC-eh versions (with Pb beams corresponding to proton energies of 20 TeV - green and 50 TeV - light blue). Acceptance is taken to be $1^\circ < \theta < 179^\circ$, and $0.01(0.001) < y < 1$ for the EIC (all other colliders). The areas delimited by thick brown and black lines show the regions accessible in pPb collisions at the LHC and the FCC-hh (50 TeV) respectively, while the thin lines represent constant rapidities from 0 (right) to 6.6 (left) for each case. The saturation scale Q_{sat} shown here for indicative purposes only, see also [379], has been drawn for a Pb nucleus considering an uncertainty ~ 2 and a behaviour with energy following the model in [380]. Note that it only indicates a region where saturation effects are expected to be important but there is no sharp transition between the linear and non-linear regimes.

Chapter 8

The Electron Energy Recovery Linac

We studied different options for the electron accelerator for LHeC in Ref. [551], of which the Energy Recovery Linac (ERL) option is retained in this update of the CDR. This is due to the higher achievable luminosity of the Linac-Ring option, as compared to the Ring-Ring option, as well as the interference of the installation of an electron ring in the LHC tunnel with its operation [552]. The clear advantage of the ERL compared to its contenders in 2012 is the possibility to keep the overall energy consumption at bay; its disadvantage is that operation at lepton energies above 70 GeV would lead to excessive synchrotron radiation losses and is thus practically excluded. Since there is no fundamental beam loading in an ERL by its principle, higher average currents and thus higher luminosities would not lead to larger power consumption.

8.1 Introduction – Design Goals

The main guidelines for the design of the Electron ERL and the Interaction Region (IR) with the LHC :

- electron-hadron operation in parallel with high luminosity hadron-hadron collisions in LHC/HL-LHC;
- centre-of-mass collision energy in the TeV scale;
- power consumption of the electron accelerator smaller than 100 MW;
- peak luminosity approaching $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$;
- integrated luminosity exceeding by at least two orders of magnitude that achieved by HERA at DESY.

The electron energy E_e chosen in the previous version of the CDR [551] was 60 GeV. This could be achieved with an ERL circumference of 1/3 of that of the LHC. Cost considerations and machine–detector performance aspects, in particular the amount of synchrotron radiation losses in the IR, have led to define a new reference configuration with $E_e = 49.19 \text{ GeV}$ and a circumference of $\approx 5.4 \text{ km}$, 1/5 of that of the LHC [Ref. missing!](#).

The ERL consists of two superconducting (SC) linacs operated in CW connected by three pairs of arcs to allow three accelerating and three decelerating passes (see Fig. 8.1). The length of the high energy return arc following the interaction point should be such to provide a half RF period wavelength shift to allow the deceleration of the beam in the linac structures in three passes

down to the injection energy and its safe disposal. SC Cavities with an unloaded quality factor Q_0 exceeding 10^{10} are required to minimise the requirements on the cryogenic cooling power and to allow an efficient ERL operation. The choice of having three accelerating and three decelerating passes implies that the circulating current in the linacs is six times the current colliding at the Interaction Point (IP) with the hadron beam.

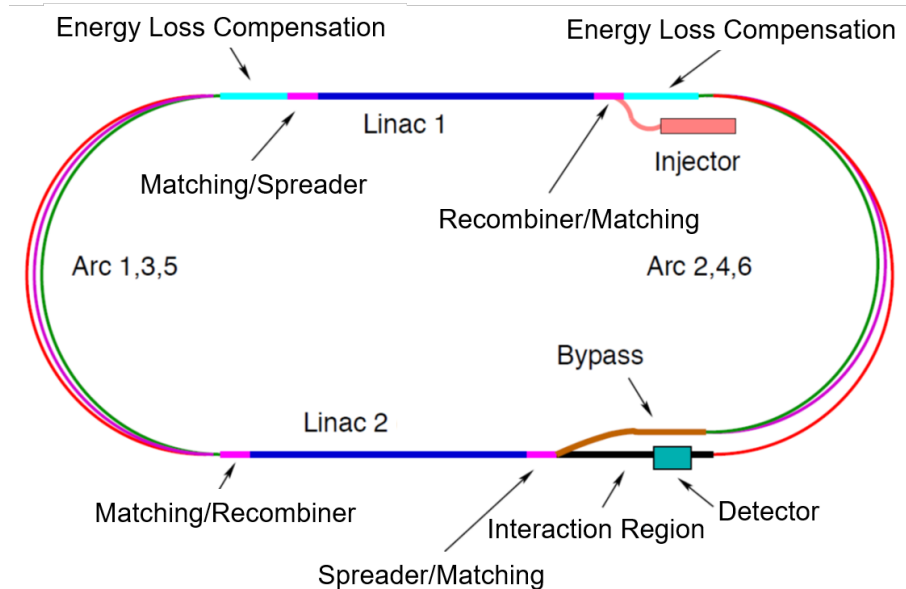


Figure 8.1: Schematic layout of the LHeC design based on an Energy Recovery Linac.

The choice of an Energy Recovery Linac offers the advantages of a high brightness beam and it avoids performance limitations due to the beam-beam effect seen by the electron beam [553], which was a major performance limitation in many circular lepton colliders (e.g. LEP) and for the LHeC Ring-Ring option. The current of the ERL is limited by its source and an operational goal of $I_e = 20$ mA has been set, corresponding to a bunch current of 500 pC at a bunch frequency of 40 MHz. This implies operating the SRF cavities with the very high current of 120 mA for a virtual beam power (product of the beam current at the IP times the maximum beam energy) of 1 GW. The validation of such performance in terms of source brightness and ERL 3-turn stable and efficient operation in the PERLE facility [554] is a key milestone for the LHeC design.

A small beam size at the IP is required to maximize luminosity and approach peak luminosities of 10^{34} cm⁻²s⁻¹ and integrated luminosities of 1 ab⁻¹ in the HL-LHC lifetime. In particular $\beta^* < 10$ cm needs to be achieved for the colliding proton beam compatibly with the optics constraints imposed by the operation in parallel to proton-proton physics in the other Interaction Points (IPs) during the HL-LHC era [555]. The peak luminosity values quoted above exceed those at HERA by 2-3 orders of magnitude. The operation of HERA in its first, extended running period 1992–2000, provided an integrated luminosity of about 0.1 fb⁻¹ for the H1 and ZEUS experiments, corresponding to the expected integrated luminosity collected over 1 day of LHeC operation.

8.2 The ERL Configuration of the LHeC

The main parameters of the LHeC ERL are listed in Tab. 8.1; their choices and optimisation criteria will be discussed in the following sections.

Parameter	Unit	Value
Injector energy	GeV	0.5
Total number of linacs		2
Number of acceleration passes		3
Maximum electron energy	GeV	49.19
Bunch charge	pC	499
Bunch spacing	ns	24.95
Electron current	mA	20
Transverse normalized emittance	μm	30
Total energy gain per linac	GeV	8.114
Frequency	MHz	801.58
Acceleration gradient	MV/m	19.73
Cavity iris diameter	mm	130
Number of cells per cavity		5
Cavity length (active/real estate)	m	0.918/1.5
Cavities per cryomodule		4
Cryomodule length	m	7
Length of 4-CM unit	m	29.6
Acceleration per cryomodule (4-CM unit)	MeV	289.8
Total number of cryomodules (4-CM units) per linac		112 (28)
Total linac length (with with spr/rec matching)	m	828.8 (980.8)
Return arc radius (length)	m	536.4 (1685.1)
Total ERL length	km	5.332

Table 8.1: Parameters of LHeC Energy Recovery Linac (ERL).

8.2.1 Baseline Design – Lattice Architecture

The ERL, as sketched in Fig. 8.1, is arranged in a racetrack configuration; hosting two superconducting linacs in the parallel straights and three recirculating arcs on each side. The linacs are 828.8 m long and the arcs have 536.4 m radius, additional space of 76 m is taken up by utilities like Spreader/Recombiner, matching and energy loss compensating sections adjacent to both ends of each linac (total of 4 sections) [556]. The total length of the racetrack is 5.332 km: $1/5$ of the LHC circumference $2 \cdot (828.8 + 2 \cdot 76 + 536.4\pi)$ m. Each of the two linacs provides 8.114 GV accelerating voltage, therefore a 49.19 GeV energy is achieved in three turns. After the collision with the protons in the LHC, the beam is decelerated in the three subsequent turns. The injection and dump energy has been chosen at 0.5 GeV.

Injection into the first linac is done through a fixed field injection chicane, with its last magnet (closing the chicane) being placed at the beginning of the linac. It closes the orbit *bump* at the lowest energy, injection pass, but the magnet (physically located in the linac) will deflect the beam on all subsequent linac passes. In order to close the resulting higher pass *bumps*, the so-called re-injection chicane is instrumented, by placing two additional opposing bends in front of the last chicane magnet. This way, the re-injection chicane magnets are only *visible* by the higher pass beams. The second linac in the racetrack is configured exactly as a mirror image of the first one, with a replica of the re-injection chicane at its end, which facilitates a fixed-field extraction of energy recovered beam to the dump.

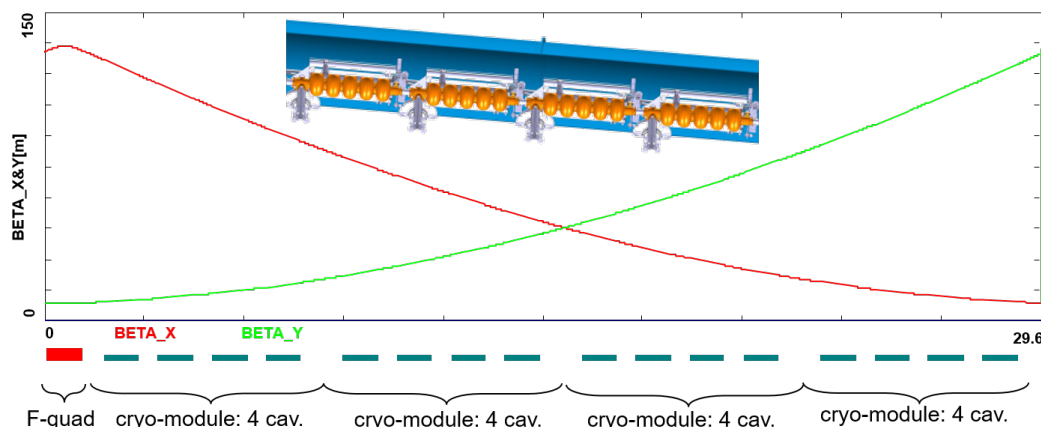


Figure 8.2: Layout of a half-cell composed out of four cryo-modules (each hosting four, 5-cell cavities: top insert) and a focusing quad. Beta functions reflect 130° FODO optics.

Linac Configuration and Multi-pass Optics

Appropriate choice of the linac optics is of paramount importance for the transverse beam dynamics in a multi-pass ERL. The focusing profile along the linac (quadrupole gradients) need to be set (and they stay constant), so that multiple pass beams within a vast energy range may be transported efficiently (provide adequate transverse focusing for given linac aperture). The linac optics is configured as a strongly focusing, 130° FODO. In a basic FODO cell a quadrupole is placed every four cryomodules, so that the full cell contains two groups of 16 RF cavities and a pair of quads (F, D) as illustrated in Fig. 8.2. The entire linac is built out of 14 such cells. Energy recovery in a racetrack topology explicitly requires that both the accelerating and decelerating beams share the individual return arcs [557]. This in turn, imposes specific requirements for TWISS function at the linacs ends: TWISS functions have to be identical for both the accelerating and decelerating linac passes converging to the same energy and therefore entering the same arc.

To visualize beta functions for multiple accelerating and decelerating passes through a given linac, it is convenient to reverse the linac direction for all decelerating passes and string them together with the interleaved accelerating passes, as illustrated in Fig. 8.3. This way, the corresponding accelerating and decelerating passes are joined together at the arc's entrance/exit. Therefore, the matching conditions are automatically built into the resulting multi-pass linac beamline. One can see that both linacs uniquely define the TWISS functions for the arcs: Linac 1 fixes input to all odd arcs and output to all even arcs, while Linac 2 fixes input to all even arcs and output to all odd arcs. The optics of the two linacs are mirror-symmetric; They were optimised so that, Linac 1 is periodic for the first accelerating pass and Linac 2 has this feature for last decelerating one. In order to maximize the BBU threshold current [558], the optics is tuned so that the integral of β/E along the linac is minimised. The resulting phase advance per cell is close to 130° . Non-linear strength profiles and more refined merit functions were tested, but they only brought negligible improvements.

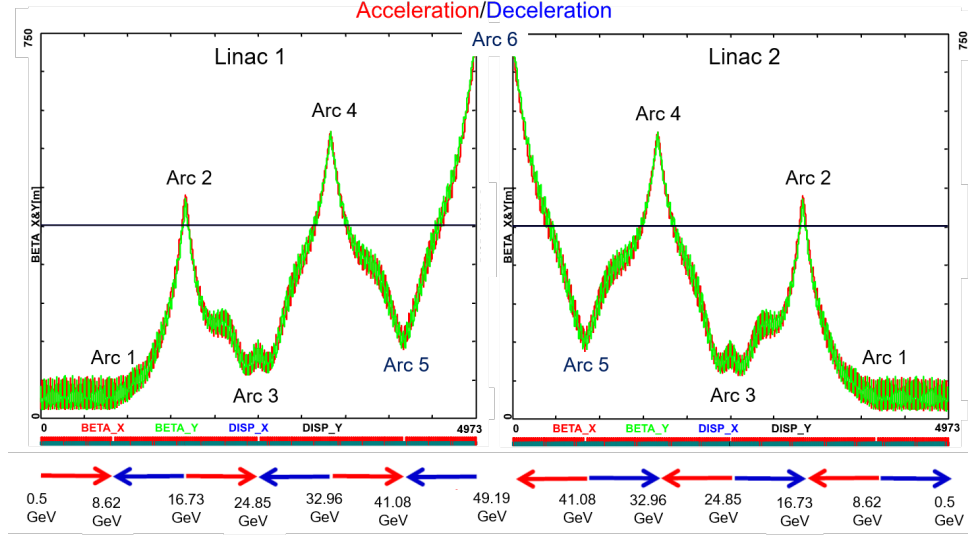


Figure 8.3: Beta function in the optimised multi-pass linacs (3 accelerating passes and 3 decelerating passes in each of two linacs). The matching conditions are automatically built into the resulting multi-pass linac beamline.

Recirculating Arcs – Emittance Preserving Optics

Synchrotron radiation effects on beam dynamics, such as the transverse emittance dilution induced by quantum excitations have a paramount impact on the collider luminosity. All six horizontal arcs are accommodated in a tunnel of 536.4m radius. The transverse emittance dilution accrued through a given arc is proportional to the emittance dispersion function, H , averaged over all arc's bends:

$$\Delta\epsilon = \frac{2\pi}{3} C_q r_0 \langle H \rangle \frac{\gamma^5}{\rho^2}, \quad (8.1)$$

where

$$C_q = \frac{55}{32\sqrt{3}} \frac{\hbar}{mc} \quad (8.2)$$

and r_0 is the classical electron radius and γ is the Lorentz boost. Here, $H = (1 + \alpha^2)/\beta \cdot D^2 + 2\alpha DD' + \beta \cdot D'^2$ where D, D' are the bending plane dispersion and its derivative, with $\langle \dots \rangle = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\text{bends}} \dots d\theta$.

Therefore, emittance dilution can be mitigated through appropriate choice of arc optics (values of α, β, D, D' at the bends). In the presented design, the arcs are configured with a FMC (Flexible Momentum Compaction) optics to ease individual adjustment of, $\langle H \rangle$, in various energy arcs.

Optics design of each arc takes into account the impact of synchrotron radiation at different energies. At the highest energy, it is crucial to minimise the emittance dilution due to quantum excitations; therefore, the cells are tuned to minimise the emittance dispersion, H , in the bending sections, as in the TME (Theoretical Minimum Emittance) lattice. On the other hand, at the lowest energy, it is possible to compensate for the bunch elongation with isochronous optics which, additionally, contains the bunch-length. All styles of FMC lattice cells, as illustrated in Fig. 8.4, share the same footprint for each arc. This allows us to stack magnets on top of each other or to combine them in a single design. Here, we use shorter, 28.1 m, FMC cell configured with six 3 m bends, in groups of flanked by a quadrupole singlet and a triplet, as illustrated in

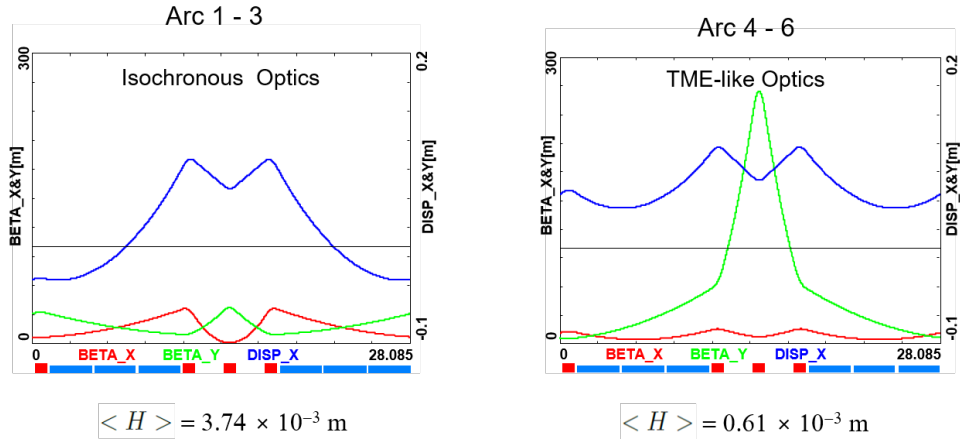


Figure 8.4: Two styles of FMC cells appropriate for different energy ranges. Left: lower energy arcs (Arc 1–3) configured with *Isochronous* cells, Right: higher energy arcs configured with *TME-like* cells. Corresponding values of the emittance dispersion averages, $\langle H \rangle$, are listed for both style cells.

Fig. 8.4. The dipole filling factor of each cell is 63%; therefore, the effective bending radius ρ is 336.1 m. Each arc is followed by a matching section and a recombiner (mirror symmetric to spreader and matching section). Since the linacs are mirror-symmetric, the matching conditions described in the previous section, impose mirror-symmetric arc optics (identical betas and sign reversed alphas at the arc ends).

Path length adjusting chicanes were also foreseen to tune the beam time of flight in order to hit the proper phase at each linac injection. Later investigations proved them to be effective only with the lowest energy beam, as these chicanes triggers unbearable energy losses if applied to the higher energy beams. A possible solution may consist in distributing the perturbation along the whole arc with small orbit excitations.

Spreader and Recombiners

The spreaders are placed directly after each linac to separate beams of different energies and to route them to the corresponding arcs. The recombiners facilitate just the opposite: merging the beams of different energies into the same trajectory before entering the next linac. As illustrated in Fig. 8.5, each spreader starts with a vertical bending magnet, common for all three beams, that initiates the separation. The highest energy, at the bottom, is brought back to the horizontal plane with a chicane. The lower energies are captured with a two-step vertical bending adapted from the CEBAF design [559].

Functional modularity of the lattice requires spreaders and recombiners to be achromats (both in the horizontal and vertical plane). To facilitate that, the vertical dispersion is suppressed by a pair of quadrupoles located in-between vertical steps; they naturally introduce strong vertical focusing, which needs to be compensated by the middle horizontally focusing quad. The overall spreader optics is illustrated in Fig. 8.6. Complete layout of two styles of switch-yard with different energy ratios is depicted in Fig. 8.5. Following the spreader, there are four matching quads to *bridge* the Twiss function between the spreader and the following 180° arc (two betas and two alphas).

Combined spreader-arc-recombiner optics, features a high degree of modular functionality to facilitate momentum compaction management, as well as orthogonal tunability for both the

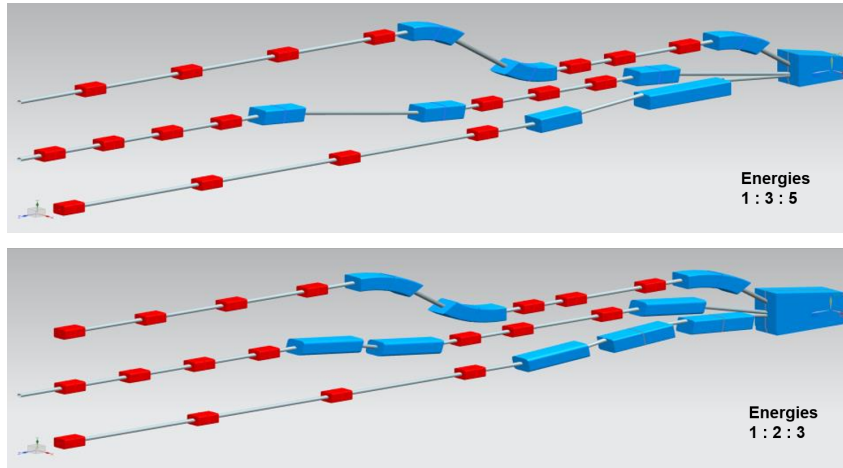


Figure 8.5: Layout of a three-beam switch-yard for different energy ratios: 1:3:5 and 1:2:3 corresponding to specific switch-yard geometries implemented on both sides of the racetrack

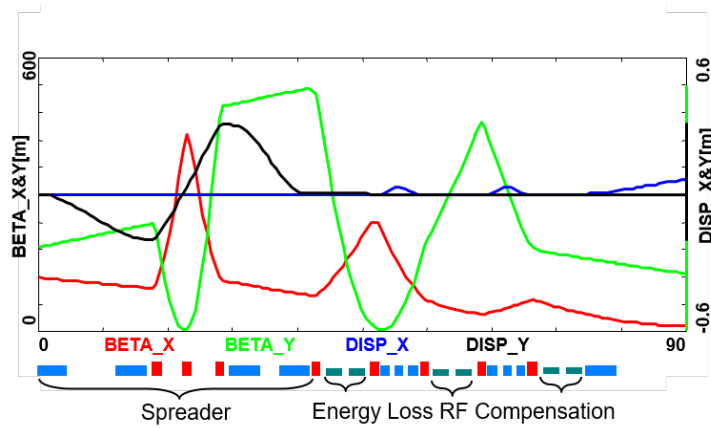


Figure 8.6: Spreader optics; featuring a vertical achromat, path-length adjusting 'Doglegs' and betatron matching quads, interleaved with energy loss compensation RF.

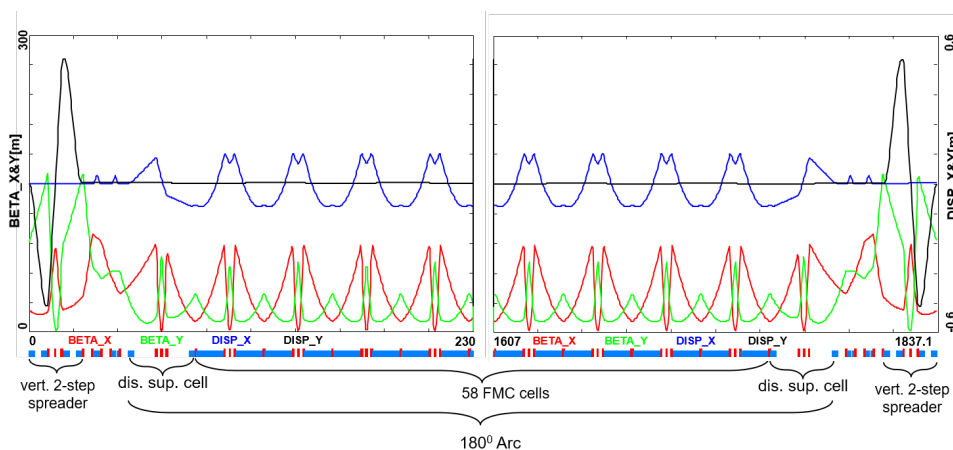


Figure 8.7: Complete Optics for Arc 3 (including switch-yard); featuring: low emittance 180° arc based on isochronous cells (30 cells flanked by dispersion suppression cell with missing dipoles on each side), spreaders and recombiners with matching sections and doglegs symmetrically placed on each side of the arc proper.

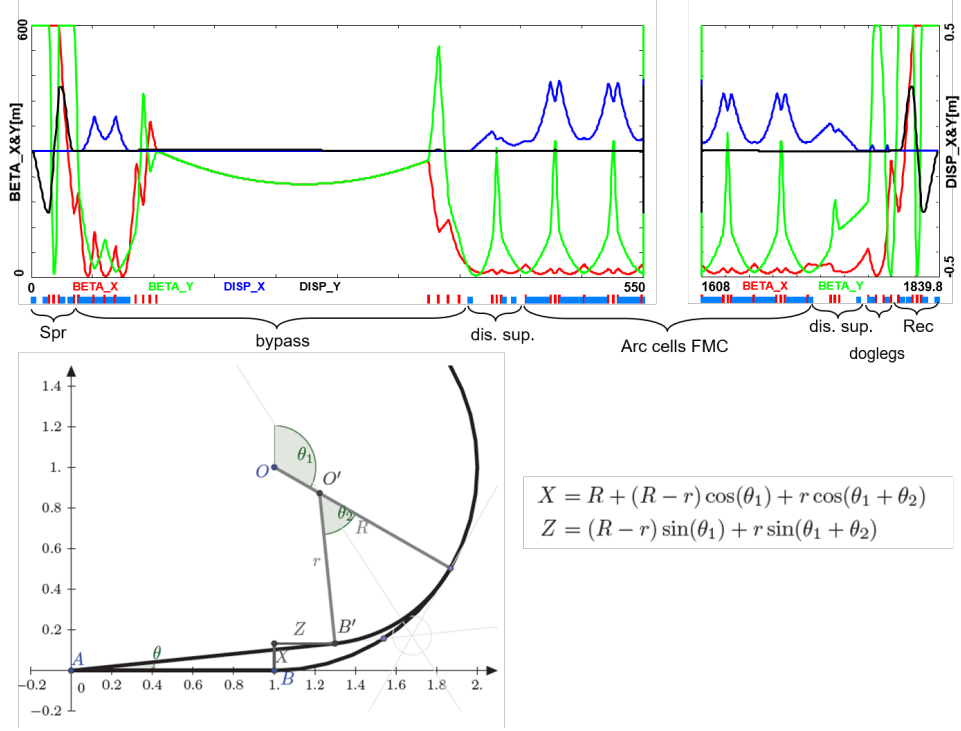


Figure 8.8: Optics and layout of Arc 4 including the detector bypass. The lattice (top insert) features a vertical spreader, an initial horizontal bending, a straight section, a modified dispersion suppressor, seven junction cells, and four regular cells. The bypass geometry (bottom insert), features a long IP line, AB, stretched to about 1/5 of the arc radius. All geometric dependencies of the bypass parameters are summarised in the inserted formulae.

beta functions and dispersion, as illustrated in Fig. 8.7.

IR Bypasses

After the last spreader the 49.19 GeV beam goes straight to the interaction region. However the lower energy beams; at 16.7 and 33.0 GeV, need to be further separated horizontally in order to avoid interference with the detector. Different design options for the bypass section were explored [560] and the one that minimises the extra bending has been chosen and implemented in the lattice.

Ten arc-like dipoles are placed very close to the spreader, to provide an initial bending, θ , which results in $X = 10$ m separation from the detector located 120 m downstream. The straight section of the bypass is approximately 240 m long. After the bypass, in order to reconnect to the footprint of Arc 6, 7 of 30 standard cells in Arc 2 and Arc 4 are replaced with 7 higher field, junction cells. The number of junction cells is a compromise between the field strength increase and the length of additional bypass tunnel, as can be inferred from the scheme summarised in Fig. 8.8. The stronger bending in the junction cells creates a small mismatch, which is corrected by adjusting the strengths of the quadrupoles in the last junction cell and in the first regular cell.

Synchrotron Radiation Effects – Emittance Dilution

ERL efficiency as a source of multi-GeV electrons for a high luminosity collider is limited by the incoherent synchrotron radiation effects on beam dynamics; namely the transverse emittance dilution and the longitudinal momentum spread (induced by quantum excitations). The first effect, the transverse emittance increase, will have a paramount impact on the collider luminosity, due to stringent limits on the allowed emittance increase. The second one, accrued momentum spread, governs asymmetries of accelerated and decelerated beam profiles. These asymmetries substantially complicate multi-pass energy recovery and matching, and ultimately they limit the energy reach of the ERLs due to recirculating arc momentum acceptance.

Arc optics was designed to ease individual adjustment of momentum compaction (needed for the longitudinal phase-space control, essential for operation with energy recovery) and the horizontal emittance dispersion, H , in each arc. Tab. 8.2 lists arc-by-arc dilution of the transverse, $\Delta\epsilon$, and longitudinal, $\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}}$, emittance dilution due to quantum excitations calculated using analytic formulas, Eqs. (8.3), (8.4) and (8.5), introduced by M. Sands [561]:

$$\Delta E = \frac{2\pi}{3} r_0 m c^2 \frac{\gamma^4}{\rho} \quad (8.3)$$

$$\Delta\epsilon_N = \frac{2\pi}{3} C_q r_0 \langle H \rangle \frac{\gamma^6}{\rho^2}, \quad (8.4)$$

$$\frac{\Delta\epsilon_E^2}{E^2} = \frac{2\pi}{3} C_q r_0 \frac{\gamma^5}{\rho^2}, \quad (8.5)$$

and C_q is given by Eq. (8.2). Here, r_0 is the classical electron radius, γ is the Lorentz boost and $C_q \approx 3.832 \cdot 10^{-13}$ m for electrons (or positrons).

Beamline	Beam energy [GeV]	ΔE [MeV]	$\Delta\epsilon_N^x$ [mm mrad]	$\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}}$ [%]
arc 1	8.62	1	0.0017	0.00052
arc 2	16.73	10	0.092	0.0027
arc 3	24.85	50	0.99	0.0074
arc 4	32.96	155	0.88	0.015
arc 5	41.08	375	3.28	0.026
arc 6	49.19	770	9.68	0.041

Table 8.2: Energy loss and emittance dilution (horizontal and longitudinal) due to synchrotron radiation generated by all six 180° arcs (not including Spreaders, Recombiners and Doglegs). Here, $\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta\epsilon_E^2}{E^2}}$

Finally, one can see from Eqs. (8.4) and (8.5) an underlying universal scaling of the transverse (unnormalized) and longitudinal emittance dilution with energy and arc radius; they are both proportional to γ^5/ρ^2 . This in turn, has a profound impact on arc size scalability with energy; namely the arc radius should scale as $\gamma^{5/2}$ in order to preserve both the transverse and longitudinal emittance dilutions, which is a figure of merit for a synchrotron radiation dominated ER.

Apart from the horizontal 180° arcs, there are other sources of emittance dilution due to synchrotron radiation, namely vertical Spreaders and Recombiners, as well as horizontal 'Doglegs' used to compensate seasonal variation of path-length. To minimise contribution to the vertical emittance dilution, special optics with small vertical $\langle H \rangle$ has been introduced in Spr/Rec

Beamline	Beam energy [GeV]	ΔE [MeV]	$\Delta\epsilon_N^y$ [mm mrad]	$\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}}$ [%]
Spr/Rec 1	8.62	0	0.035	0.0008
Spr/Rec 2	16.73	3	0.540	0.0044
Spr/Rec 3	24.85	6	0.871	0.0066
Spr/Rec 4	32.96	22	5.549	0.0143
Spr/Rec 5	41.08	7	0.402	0.0062
Spr/Rec 6	49.19	110	83.164	0.0446

Table 8.3: Energy loss and emittance dilution (vertical and longitudinal) due to synchrotron radiation generated by a Spreader, or Recombiner of a given arc. Here, $\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta\epsilon_E^2}{E^2}}$

sections. The effects on vertical emittance dilution coming from these beamlines (Spr/Rec) are summarised in Tab. 8.3.

Similarly, the horizontal emittance dilution induced by the Doglegs (four dogleg chicanes per arc) in various arcs is summarised in Tab. 8.4. Each dogleg is configured with three 1 meter bends (1 Tesla - 2 Tesla - 1 Tesla), so that they bend the lowest energy beam at 8.6 GeV by: 2-4-2 degrees. The corresponding path-lengths gained in the Doglegs of different arcs are also indicated.

Beamline	Beam energy [GeV]	ΔE [MeV]	$\Delta\epsilon_N^y$ [mm mrad]	$\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}}$ [%]	path-length [mm]
Doglegs 1	8.62	2	0.201	0.007	7.32
Doglegs 2	16.73	9	0.667	0.009	1.96
Doglegs 3	24.85	19	5.476	0.014	0.84
Doglegs 4	32.96	33	5.067	0.014	0.52
Doglegs 5	41.08	52	12.067	0.028	0.36
Doglegs 6	49.19	74	2.836	0.011	0.28

Table 8.4: Energy loss and emittance dilution (horizontal and longitudinal) due to synchrotron radiation generated by a Dogleg. Here, $\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta\epsilon_E^2}{E^2}}$

One can see from Tab. 8.4, the Doglegs in the highest energy arcs, 5 and 6, provide only sub mm path-length gain with large synchrotron radiation effects. They are not effective and generate strong undesired emittance dilution, therefore it is reasonable to eliminate them from Arc 5 and 6. Instead, one could resort to an alternative path-length correction via appropriate orbit steering with both horizontal and vertical correctors present at every girder and distributed evenly throughout the arc. Combining all three contributions: (180° arc, Spr/Rec and Doglegs, except arcs 5 and 6), the net commutative emittance dilution is summarised in Tab. 8.5.

One can see from Tab. 8.5, the LHeC luminosity requirement of total transverse emittance dilution in either plane (normalized) at the IP (at the end of Arc 5) does not exceed 20 mm mrad (hor: 16.7 mm mrad and ver: 14.8 mm mrad) is met by-design, employing low emittance optics.

8.2.2 30 GeV ERL Options

One may think of an upgrade path from 30 to 50 GeV ERL, using the same 1/5 of the LHC circumference (5.4 km), footprint. In this scenario, each linac straight (front end) would initially be *loaded* with 18 cryo-modules, forming two 5.21 GV linacs. One would also need to decrease

Beamline	Beam energy [GeV]	ΔE [MeV]	$\Delta\epsilon_N^x$ [mm mrad]	$\Delta\epsilon_N^y$ [mm mrad]	$\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}}$ [%]
Arc 1	8.62	3	0.2	0.1	0.01
Arc 2	16.73	25	1.0	1.2	0.03
Arc 3	24.85	81	7.4	2.9	0.06
Arc 4	32.96	232	13.4	14.0	0.12
Arc 5	41.08	389	16.7	14.8	0.16
Arc 6	49.19	991	26.3	181.1	0.29
Arc 5	41.08	389	29.6	181.9	0.33
Arc 4	32.96	232	35.6	193.0	0.39
Arc 3	24.85	81	42.0	194.8	0.42
Arc 2	16.73	25	42.8	195.8	0.44
Arc 1	8.62	3	43.0	195.9	0.45
Dump	0.5		43.0	195.9	0.45

Table 8.5: Energy loss and cumulative emittance dilution (transverse and longitudinal) due to synchrotron radiation at the end of a given beamline (complete Arc including: 180° arc, Spr/Rec and Doglegs): Entire ER cycle (3 passes' + 3 passes 'down'). Here, $\Delta\sigma_{\frac{\Delta E}{E}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta\epsilon_E^2}{E^2}}$

the injector energy by factor of 5.21/8.11. The top ERL energy, after three passes, would reach 31.3 GeV. Then for the upgrade to 50 GeV, one would fill the remaining space in the linacs with additional 10 cryo-modules each; 2.9 GV worth of RF in each linac. This way the energy ratios would be preserved for both 30 and 50 GeV ERL options, so that the same switch-yard geometry could be used. Finally, one would scale up the entire lattice; all magnets (dipoles and quads) by 8.11/5.21 ratio. If one wanted to stop at the 30 GeV option with no upgrade path, then the 1/12 of the LHC circumference (2.2 km) would be a viable footprint for the racetrack, featuring: two linacs, 533 m each, (18 cryo-modules) and arcs of 136 m radius. Again, assuming 0.32 GeV injection energy, the top ERL energy would reach 31.3 GeV.

8.2.3 Component Summary

This closing section will summarise active accelerator components: magnets (bends and quads) and RF cavities for the 50 GeV baseline ERL. The bends (both horizontal and vertical) are captured in Tab. 8.6, while the quadrupole magnets and RF cavities are collected in Tab. 8.7.

One would like to use a combined aperture (3-in-one) arc magnet design with 50 cm vertical separation between the three apertures, proposed by Attilo Milanese. That would reduce net arc bend count from 2112 to 704. As far as the Spr/Rec vertical bends are concerned, the design was optimised to include additional common bend separating two highest passes. So, there are total of 8 trapezoid B-com magnets, with second face tilted by 3° and large 10 cm vertical aperture, the rest are simple rectangular bends with specs from the summary Tab. 8.6.

Section	Arc dipoles (horiz.)				Spr/Rec dipoles (vert.)				<i>Dogleg</i> dipoles (horiz.)			
	N	B [T]	$g/2$ [cm]	L [m]	N	B [T]	$g/2$ [cm]	L [m]	N	B [T]	$g/2$ [cm]	L [m]
Arc 1	352	0.087	1.5	3	8	0.678	2	3	12	0.131	1.5	1
Arc 2	352	0.174	1.5	3	8	0.989	2	3	12	0.261	1.5	1
Arc 3	352	0.261	1.5	3	6	1.222	2	3	12	0.392	1.5	1
Arc 4	352	0.348	1.5	3	6	1.633	2	3	12	0.522	1.5	1
Arc 5	352	0.435	1.5	3	4	1.022	2	3	12	0.653	1.5	1
Arc 6	352	0.522	1.5	3	4	1.389	2	3	12	0.783	1.5	1
Total	2112				36				72			

Table 8.6: 50 GeV ERL – Dipole magnet count along with basic magnet parameters: Magnetic field (B), Half-Gap ($g/2$), and Magnetic length (L).

Section	Quadrupoles				RF cavities			
	N	G [T/m]	a [cm]	L [m]	N	f [MHz]	cell	G_{RF} [T/m]
Linac 1	29	1.93	3	1	448	802	5	20
Linac 2	29	1.93	3	1	448	802	5	20
Arc 1	255	9.25	2.5	1				
Arc 2	255	17.67	2.5	1				
Arc 3	255	24.25	2.5	1	6	1604	9	30
Arc 4	255	27.17	2.5	1	6	1604	9	30
Arc 5	249	33.92	2.5	1	18	1604	9	30
Arc 6	249	40.75	2.5	1	30	1604	9	30
Total	1576				956			

Table 8.7: 50 GeV ERL – Quadrupole magnet and RF cavities count along with basic magnet/RF parameters: Magnetic field gradient (G), Aperture radius (a), Magnetic length (L), Frequency (f), Number of cells in RF cavity (cell), and RF Gradient (G_{RF}).

8.3 Electron-Ion Scattering

Besides colliding proton beams, the LHC also provides collisions of nuclear (fully-stripped ion) beams with each other (AA collisions) or with protons (pA). Either of these operating modes offers the possibility of electron-ion (eA) collisions in the LHeC configuration. In pA operation of the LHC the beams may be reversed (Ap) for some part of the operating time. Only one direction (ions in Beam 2) would provide eA collisions while the other would provide ep collisions at significantly reduced luminosity compared to the pp mode, since there would be fewer bunches of lower intensity.

Here we present luminosity estimates for collisions of electrons with $^{208}\text{Pb}^{82+}$ nuclei, the species most commonly collided in the LHC. Other, lighter, nuclei are under consideration for future LHC operation [403].

copy of previous note text as starter, to be modified. The heavy ion beams that the CERN injector complex can provide to the LHC, the HE-LHC and the FCC provide a unique basis for high energy, high luminosity deep inelastic electron-ion scattering physics. Since HERA was restricted to protons only, the FCC-eh (LHeC) extends the kinematic range in Q^2 and $1/x$ by 5 (4) orders of magnitude. This is a huge increase in coverage and would be set to radically

change the understanding of parton dynamics in nuclei and of the formation of the quark gluon plasma. In principle, the LHC could also be operated at injection energy and the electron beam at low energy. Therefore the LHeC, as an EIC, could also cover the kinematic range of the low energy electron-ion colliders currently under consideration in the US and in China, although with lower luminosity.

An initial set of parameters in the maximum energy configurations was given in [?]. These did not yet take account of the intense beams of $^{208}\text{Pb}^{82+}$ nuclei that have already been largely demonstrated [?] and are foreseen to be provided to HL-LHC. Combining these with the default 60 GeV electron ERL, an updated parameter set is presented here in Table 8.8.

Radiation damping of Pb beams in the hadron rings is about twice as fast as for protons and can be fully exploited. For the case of the FCC-hh, the emittance values in Table 8.8 are estimates of effective average values during a fill in which Pb-Pb collisions are being provided at one other interaction point [?].

Parameter [unit]	LHeC (HL-LHC)	eA at HE-LHC	FCC-he
E_{Pb} [PeV]	0.574	1.03	4.1
E_e [GeV]	60	60	60
$\sqrt{s_{eN}}$ electron-nucleon [TeV]	0.8	1.1	2.2
bunch spacing [ns]	50	50	100
no. of bunches	1200	1200	2072
ions per bunch [10^8]	1.8	1.8	1.8
$\gamma\epsilon_A$ [μm]	1.5	1.0	0.9
electrons per bunch [10^9]	4.67	6.2	12.5
electron current [mA]	15	20	20
IP beta function β_A^* [cm]	7	10	15
hourglass factor H_{geom}	0.9	0.9	0.9
pinch factor H_{b-b}	1.3	1.3	1.3
bunch filling H_{coll}	0.8	0.8	0.8
luminosity [$10^{32}\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$]	7	18	54

Table 8.8: Baseline parameters of future electron-ion collider configurations based on the electron ERL, in concurrent eA and AA operation mode.

8.4 Beam-Beam Interactions

8.4.1 Effect on the electron beam

8.4.2 Effect on the proton beam

8.5 Arc Magnets

8.6 LINAC and SRF

Each of the two main linacs has an overall length of 828.8 m and provides an acceleration of 8.114 GV. Each linac consists of 112 cryomodules, arranged in 28 units of 4 cryomodules with their focussing elements – each cryomodule contains four 5-cell cavities, optimised to operate with large beam current (up to 120 mA at the HOM frequencies). The operating temperature

is 2 K; the cavities are based on modern SRF technology and are fabricated from bulk Nb sheets; they are described in detail in section 8.6.2 below. The nominal acceleration gradient is 19.73 MV/m.

In addition to the main linacs, the synchrotron losses in the arcs will make additional linacs necessary, referred to here as the *loss compensation linacs*. These will have to provide different accelerations in the different arcs, depending on the energy of the beams as shown in Tab. 8.9. The quoted beam energies are at entry into the arc. Their natural placement would be at the end of the arcs just before the combiner, where the different energy beams are still separate. The largest of these linacs would have to compensate the SR losses at the highest energy, requiring a total acceleration of about 700 MV. The loss compensation linacs will be detailed in section 8.6.7 below.

Section	Beam energy [GeV]	ΔE [MeV]
Arc 1	8.62	3
Arc 2	16.73	25
Arc 3	24.85	81
Arc 4	32.96	232
Arc 5	41.08	389
Arc 6	49.19	991

Table 8.9: Synchrotron radiation losses for the different arc energies

Through all arcs but Arc 6, the beam passes twice, once while accelerated and once while decelerated. It is planned to operate these additional *loss compensation linacs* at 1603.2 MHz, which allows energy compensation of both the accelerated and the decelerated beam simultaneously. This subject will be discussed in detail in a subsequent section, 1.6.7.

8.6.1 Choice of Frequency

The RF frequency choice primarily takes into account the constraints of the LHC bunch repetition frequency, f_0 , of 40.079 MHz, while allowing for a sufficiently high harmonic, h , for a flexible system. For an ERL with $n_{pass} = 3$ recirculating passes and in order to enable equal bunch spacing for the 3 bunches – though not mandatory – it was originally considered to suppress all harmonics that are not a multiple of $n_{pass} \cdot f_0 = 120.237$ MHz. Initial choices for instance were 721.42 MHz ($h = 18$) and 1322.61 MHz ($h = 33$) in consideration of the proximity to the frequencies used for state-of-the-art SRF system developments worldwide [562]. In synergy with other RF system developments at CERN though, the final choice was 801.58 MHz ($h = 20$), where the bunching between the 3 recirculating bunches can be made similar but not exactly equal. Note that this frequency is also very close to the 805 MHz SRF proton cavities operating at the Spallation Neutron Source (SNS) at ORNL, so that one could leverage from the experience in regard to cryomodule and component design at this frequency.

Furthermore, in the frame of an independent study for a 1 GeV CW proton linac, a capital plus operational cost optimisation was conducted [563]. This optimisation took into account the expenditures for cavities, cryomodules, the linac tunnel as well as the helium refrigerator expenses as a function of frequency and thus component sizes. Labor costs were included based on the existing SNS linac facility work breakdown structure. It was shown that capital plus operating costs could be minimised with a cavity frequency between 800 MHz and 850 MHz, depending also on the choice of the operating He bath temperature (1.8 K to 2.1 K). Clear benefit

of operating in this frequency regime are the comparably small dynamic RF losses per installation length due to a relatively small BCS surface resistance as well as low residual resistance of the niobium at the operating temperature. This could be principally verified as part of the prototyping effort detailed in the next sub-section. Note that the cost optimum also favors cavities operating at rather moderate field levels (< 20 MV/m). This comes as a benefit in concern of field emission and associated potential performance degradations.

8.6.2 Cavity Prototype

Given the RF frequency of 801.58 MHz, JLab has collaborated with CERN, and consequently proposed a five-cell cavity design that was accepted for prototyping, see Fig. 8.9. The cavity shape has also been adopted for PERLE. Tab. 8.10 summarises the relevant cavity parameters.

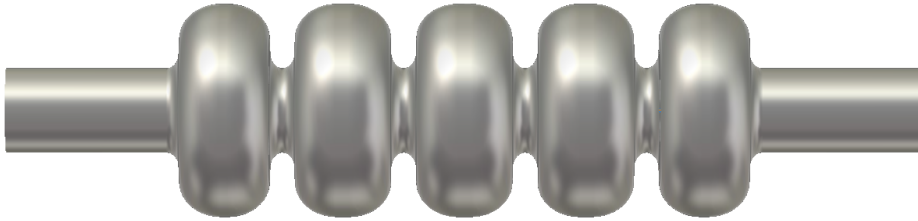


Figure 8.9: Bare 802 MHz five-cell cavity design (RF vacuum) with a 130 mm iris and beam tube aperture.

Parameter	Unit	Value
Frequency	MHz	801.58
Number of cells		5
active length l_{act}	mm	917.9
loss factor	V pC ⁻¹	2.742
R/Q (linac convention)	Ω	523.9
$R/Q \cdot G$ per cell	Ω^2	28788
Cavity equator diameter	mm	327.95
Cavity iris diameter	mm	130
Beam tube inner diameter	mm	130
diameter ratio equator/iris		2.52
E_{peak}/E_{acc}		2.26
B_{peak}/E_{acc}	mT/(MV/m)	4.2
cell-to-cell coupling factor k_{cc}	%	3.21
TE ₁₁ cutoff frequency	GHz	1.35
TM ₀₁ cutoff frequency	GHz	1.77

Table 8.10: Parameter table of the 802 MHz prototype five-cell cavity.

The cavity exhibits a rather large iris and beam tube aperture (130 mm) to consider beam-dynamical aspects such as HOM-driven multi-bunch instabilities. Despite the comparably large aperture, the ratio of the peak surface electric field, E_{pk} , respectively the peak surface magnetic field, B_{pk} , and the accelerating field, E_{acc} , are reasonably low, while the factor $R/Q \cdot G$ is kept reasonably high, concurrently to limit cryogenic losses. This is considered as a generically well *balanced* cavity design [564]. The cavity cell shape also avoids that crucial HOMs will coincide with the main spectral lines (multiples of 801.58 MHz), while the specific HOM coupler development is pending.

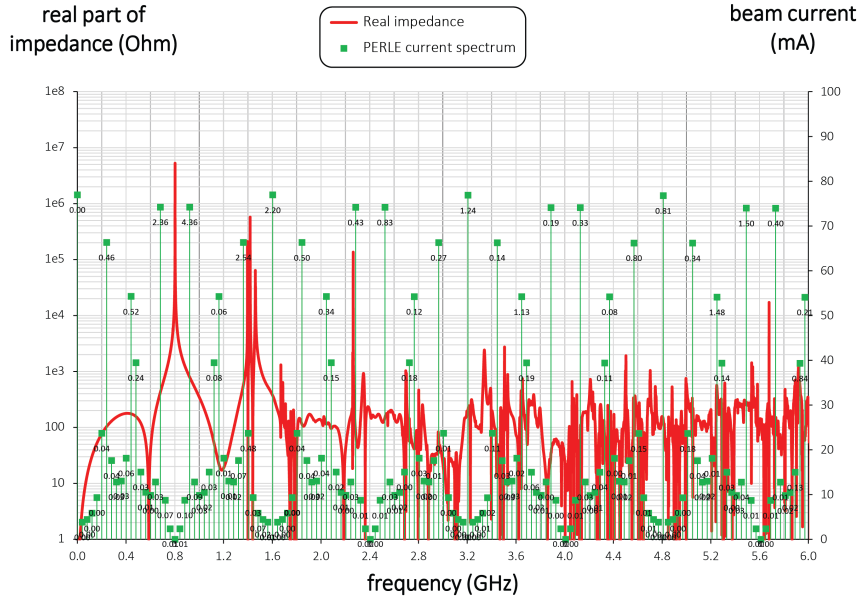


Figure 8.10: Real monopole impedance spectrum of the five-cell 802 MHz cavity prototype (red) together with the considered beam current lines (green) for the 3-pass PERLE machine (25 mA injected current). The numbers associated with the spectral lines denote the power dissipation (in Watt).

Furthermore, as shown in Fig. 8.10 for the case of the bunch recombination pattern considered for PERLE originally, the much denser intermediate beam current lines (green) are not coinciding with cavity HOMs. Here the figure plots the real part of the beam-excited cavity monopole impedance spectrum up to 6 GHz, and denotes the power deposited at each spectral line (in Watt) for an injected beam current of 25 mA. For instance, the summation of the power in this spectral range results in a moderate 30 Watts. This covers the monopole modes with the highest impedances residing below the beam tube cutoff frequency. The HOM-induced heat has to be extracted from the cavity and shared among the HOM couplers attached to the cavity beam tubes. The fraction of the power escaping through the beam tubes above cutoff can be intercepted by beam line absorbers.

Note that for Fig. 8.10 a single HOM-coupler end-group consisting of three scaled TESLA-type coaxial couplers was assumed to provide damping. Instead of coaxial couplers, waveguide couplers could be utilized, which for instance have been developed at JLab in the past for high current machines. These are naturally broadband and designed for high power capability, though some penalty is introduced as this will increase the complexity of the cryomodule. Ultimately, the aim is to efficiently damp the most parasitic longitudinal and transverse modes (each polarization). The evaluation of the total power deposition is important for LHeC to decide which HOM coupler technology is most appropriate to cope with the dissipated heat and whether active cooling of the couplers is a requirement.

Though the prototype efforts focused on the five-cell cavity development, JLab also produced single-cell cavities, i.e. one further Nb cavity and two OFE copper cavities. The former has been shipped to FNAL for N-doping/infusion studies, whereas the latter were delivered to CERN for Nb thin-film coating as a possible alternative to bulk Nb cavities. In addition, a copper cavity was built for low power bench measurements, for which multiple half-cells can be mechanically clamped together. Presently, a mock-up can be created with up to two full cells. This cavity has been produced in support of the pending HOM coupler development. The ensemble of manufactured cavities resonating at 802 MHz is shown in Fig. 8.11.

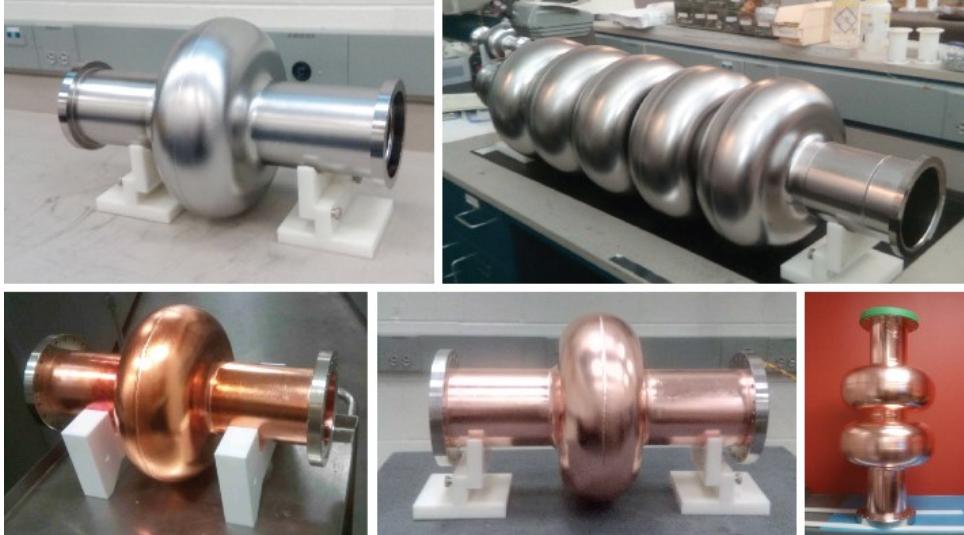


Figure 8.11: Ensemble of 802 MHz cavities designed and built at JLab for CERN. The Nb cavities have been tested vertically at 2 Kelvin in JLab’s vertical test area.

Results for the Nb cavities - made from fine grain high-RRR Nb - were encouraging since both cavities reached accelerating fields, E_{acc} , slightly above 30 MV/m ultimately limited by thermal breakdown (quench). Moreover, the RF losses were rather small as a benefit of the relatively low RF frequency as anticipated. The residual resistance extracted from the measurement data upon cooldown of the cavity was $3.2\ \Omega \pm 0.8\ \Omega$. This resulted in unloaded quality factors, Q_0 , well above 4×10^{10} at 2K at low field levels, while Q_0 -values beyond 3×10^{10} could be maintained for the five-cell cavity up to ~ 27 MV/m (see Fig. 8.12). Only standard interior surface post-processing methods were applied including bulk buffered chemical polishing, high temperature vacuum annealing, light electropolishing, ultrapure high-pressure water rinsing, and a low temperature bake-out. While the vertical test results indicate generous headroom for a potential performance reduction once a cavity is equipped with all the ancillary components and installed in a cryomodule, clean cavity assembly procedure protocols must be established for the cryomodules to minimise the chance of introducing field-emitting particulates.

8.6.3 Dressed Cavity Design

8.6.4 Cavity-CryoModule

8.6.5 Sources

Specification of electron sources

Operation of the LHeC with an electron beam, delivered by a full energy ERL imposes specific requirements on the electron source. It should deliver a beam with the charge and temporal structure required at the Interaction Point. Additionally as during acceleration in a high energy ERL both longitudinal and transverse emittances of the beam are increased due to Synchrotron Radiation (SR), the 6D emittance of the beam delivered by electron source should be small enough to mitigate this effect. The general specification of the electron source are shown in Tab. 8.11. Some parameters in this table such as RMS bunch length, uncorrelated energy spread and normalised transverse emittance are given on the basis of the requirements for the

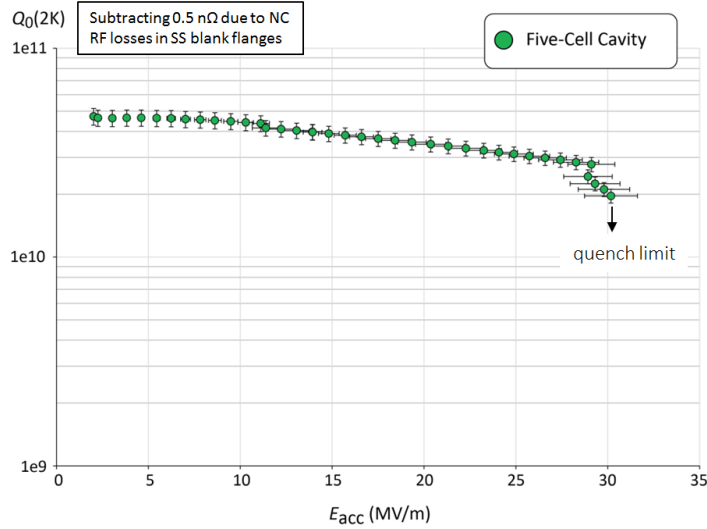


Figure 8.12: Vertical test result of the five-cell 802 MHz niobium cavity prototype.

acceleration in ERL and to pre-compensate the effects of SR. The most difficult of the parameters to specify is injector energy. It should be as low as possible to reduce the unrecoverable power used to accelerate the beam before injection into the ERL while still being high enough to deliver short electron bunches with high peak current. Another constraint on the injection energy is the average energy and energy spread of the returned beam. The average energy cannot be less than the energy of electron source, but the maximum energy in the spectrum should not exceed 10 MeV the neutron activation threshold. An injection energy of 7 MeV is a reasonable compromise to meet this constraint.

Parameter	Unit	Value
Injection energy	MeV	7*
Bunch repetition rate	MHz	40.1
Average beam current	mA	20
Bunch charge	pC	500
RMS bunch length	mm	3
Normalised transverse emittance	$\pi \cdot \text{mm} \cdot \text{mrad}$	<6
Uncorrelated energy spread	keV	10
Beam polarisation		Unpolarised/Polarised

Table 8.11: General specification of the LHeC ERL electron injector.

The required temporal structure of the beam and the stringent requirements for beam emittance do not allow the use of conventional thermionic electron sources for the LHeC ERL without need for beam losses during the bunching process. While this option cannot completely be excluded as a source of unpolarised electrons. The requirement to deliver polarised beams leaves only one option available, electron sources based on photoemission of electrons.

There are now four possible design of electron sources for delivering unpolarised beams and (potentially) three for delivering polarised beams:

1. A thermionic electron source with RF modulated grid or gate electrode with following (multi)stage compression and acceleration. The electron source could be either a DC

electron gun or an RF electron source in this case. Although these sources are widely used in the injectors of IR FELs [565] their emittance is not good enough to meet the specification of the LHeC injector. Moreover, thermionic sources cannot deliver polarised electrons.

2. A VHF photoemission source. This is a type of normal conducting RF source which operates in the frequency range 160 MHz – 200 MHz. The relatively low frequency of these sources means that they are large enough that sufficient cooling can be provided to permit CW operation. This type of source has been developed for the new generation of CW FELs such as LCLS-II [566], SHINE [567] and European XFEL upgrade [568], but they have not yet demonstrated the average current required for the LHeC injector. The possibility of generating polarised electrons with this type of source has not investigated yet.
3. A superconducting RF photoemission source. This type of sources are under development for different applications such as an option for CW FEL's (ELBE [569], LCLS-II, European XFEL), as a basis of injectors for ERL's (bERLinPro) and for electron cooling (BNL). Though this type of sources has already demonstrated the possibility of delivering the average current, required for the LHeC with unpolarised beams (BNL), and has the potential for operation with GaAs type photocathodes (HZDR) which are required for delivery of polarised beams, the current technology of SRF photoelectron source cannot be considered as mature enough for use in the LHeC.
4. A DC photoemission source. In this type of source the electrons are accelerated immediately after emission by a potential difference between the source cathode and anode. This type of source is the most common for use in ERL injectors. It has been used in the projects which are already completed (JLAB, DL), is being used for ongoing projects (KEK, Cornell/CBeta [570]) and is planned to be used in new projects such as the LHeC prototype PERLE [571]. The technology of DC photoelectron sources is well-developed and has demonstrated the average current and beam emittance required for the LHeC ERL (Cornell). Another advantage of the photoelectron source with DC acceleration is the possibility of operation with GaAs photocathodes for delivering of polarised beam. Currently it's the only source, which can delivery of highly polarised electron beams with the current of up to 6 mA which is already in the range of LHeC specifications (JLab).

Based on this analysis at CDR stage we consider the use of DC photoelectron source as a basic option, keeping in mind that in the course of the injector development other types of electron sources may be considered, especially for providing of unpolarised beam.

The LHeC unpolarised injector

The injector layout follows the scheme depicted in Fig. 8.13. Its design will be similar to the unpolarised variant of the PERLE injector [571]. The electron source with DC acceleration delivers a CW beam with the required bunch charge and temporal structure. Immediately after the source is a focusing and bunching section consisting of two solenoids with a normal conducting buncher placed between them. The solenoids have two purposes. Firstly to control the transverse size of the space charge dominated beam which will otherwise rapidly expand transversely. This ensures that the beam will fit through all of the apertures in the injector beamline. Secondly the solenoids are used for emittance compensation to counter the space charge induced growth in the projected emittance. This is then followed by a superconducting booster linac. This accelerates the beam up to its injection energy, provides further longitudinal bunch compression and continues the emittance compensation process.

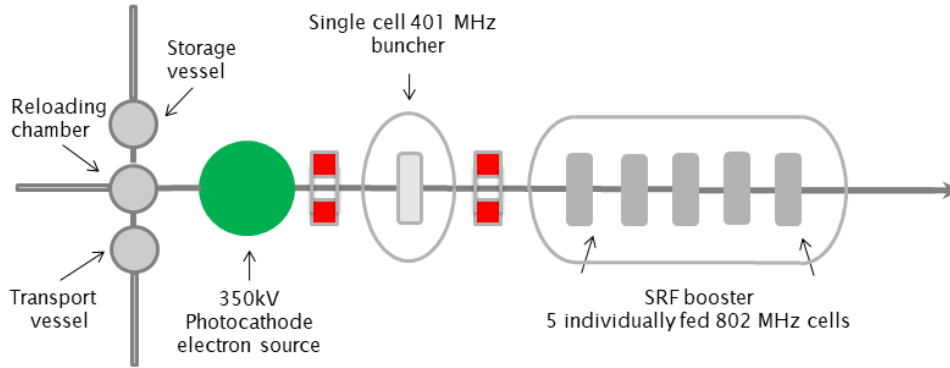


Figure 8.13: The layout of the unpolarised injector.

The DC electron source will have an accelerating voltage of 350 kV using a high quantum efficiency antimonide based photocathode such as Cs_2KSb . The photoinjector laser required for this cathode type will be a 532 nm green laser. There will be a load lock system to allow photocathodes to be replaced without breaking the source vacuum. This significantly reduces the down time required for each replacement which is a major advantage in a user facility such as the LHeC where maximising uptime is very important. The cathode electrode will be mounted from above similar to the Cornell [3] and KEK [572] sources. This electrode geometry makes the addition of a photocathode exchange mechanism much easier as photocathode can be exchanged through the back of the cathode electrode. In addition the cathode electrode will be shaped to provide beam focusing. An example of a Jefferson lab type electron source, with the cathode electrode mounted from behind, optimised for the requirements of the LHeC prototype PERLE can be seen in Fig. 8.14 [573]. The operational voltage of 350 kV for the source was chosen as

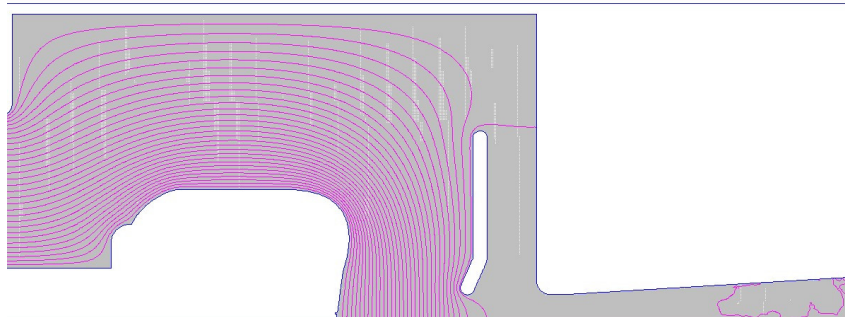


Figure 8.14: The optimised electrode geometry for PERLE. This is a Jefferson lab type gun and is optimised for both 350 kV and 220 kV operation.

practical estimate of what is achievable. A higher voltage would produce better performance but would be challenging to achieve in practice. The highest operational voltage successfully achieved is 500 kV by the DC electron source that is used for the cERL injector [4] [Fix Reference!](#). However as shown in the following section 350 kV is sufficient to achieve the required beam quality. Fig. 8.14 shows configuration of electrodes in the PERLE electron source optimised for operation in two modes – at voltage 350 kV for unpolarised mode and 220 kV for polarised mode. In addition to the cathode electrode the source is also equipped with an anode electrode biased to few kV positive. The purpose of this electrode is to block back ion stream from low vacuum part of accelerator which can severe damage photocathodes.

The unpolarised variant of the PERLE injector [2] [Fix Reference!](#) is shown in the previous

section as it provides an example of the achievable parameters. The PERLE injector will have similar behaviour to the LHeC injector as it has the same layout but the electron source will be different as unlike PERLE the LHeC source only needs to perform in one operational mode. Beam dynamics in the injector up to the booster exit were simulated with ASTRA and optimised using the many objective optimisation algorithm NSGAIII. The target injection energy and bunch length were chosen as 7 MeV and 3 mm which are the required values for PERLE. A solution was selected from the results of the optimisation and is presented below. The transverse beam size and bunch length are kept small enough by the solenoid and buncher to ensure that there would be no issue with passing through the apertures or RF non-linearities. This can be seen in Fig. 8.15. The behaviour of the emittances can be seen in Fig. 8.16.

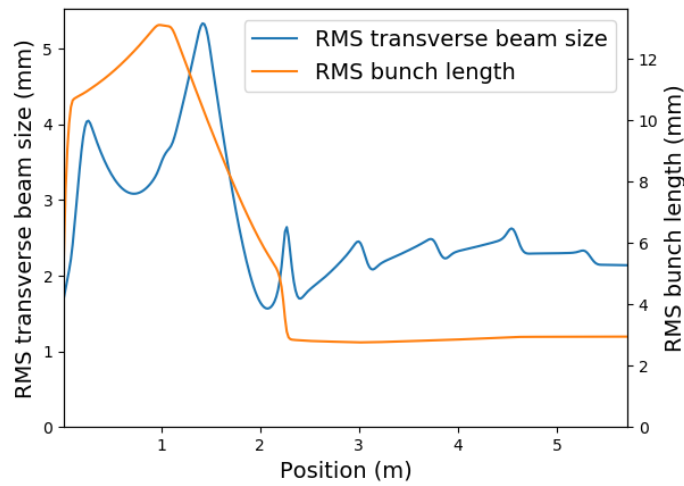


Figure 8.15: The rms beam sizes transversely and longitudinally as the bunch travels along the injector.

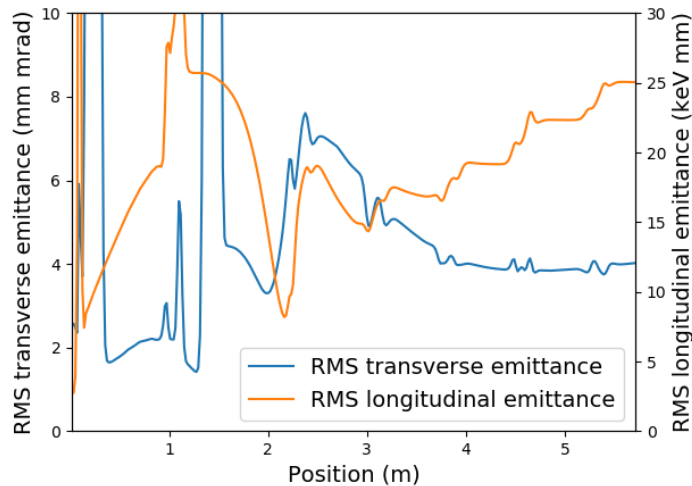


Figure 8.16: The emittances of the bunch as it travels along the injector.

The transverse emittance at the booster exit is 4 mm·mrad which meets the PERLE requirements and should be sufficient for the LHeC. This analysis shows that injector based on a high voltage

DC electron source is capable of achieving the required transverse emittances for the LHeC at the necessary bunch charges.

Polarised electron source for ERL

Providing polarised electrons has always been a challenging process, especially at relatively high average current as required for the LHeC. The only practically usable production mechanism of polarised electrons is the illumination of activated to Negative Electron Affinity (NEA) state GaAs based photocathodes with circularly polarised laser light. The vacuum requirements for these cathodes mean that this must be done in a DC electron source only. In the course of the last 30 years significant progress has been achieved in improving the performance of polarised electron sources. The maximum achievable polarisation has reached 90% and the maximum Quantum Efficiency (QE) of the photocathode at the laser wavelength of maximum polarisation has reached 6%. Meanwhile the implementation of a polarised electron source into the LHeC remains a challenge as the practical operational charge lifetime of the GaAs based photocathode does not exceed a few kC (JLAB) at an operational current of about 5 mA.

In Fig. 8.17 a preliminary design of the LHeC polarised injector is shown. In general, the design

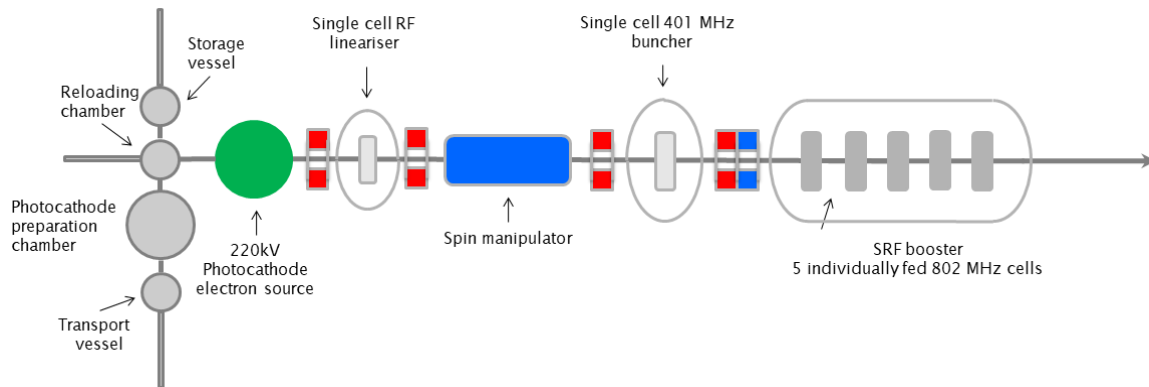


Figure 8.17: The layout of the polarised injector.

of the polarised electrons injector is close to that of the unpolarised injector and is based on a DC electron source where a photocathode is illuminated by a pulsed laser beam. The choice of a DC source is dictated by the necessity of achieving extra high vacuum, with a pressure at a level of 10^{-12} mbar, in the photocathode area. This level of vacuum is necessary for providing long lifetime of the photocathode. In order to reduce photocathode degradation caused by electron stimulated gas desorption accelerating voltage in the source is reduced to 220 kV. The main differences with unpolarised injector are the presence of a photocathode preparation system, permanently attached to the source, and a Wien filter based spin manipulator between the source and the buncher. In order to reduce depolarisation of the beam in the spin manipulator, caused by the space charge induced energy spread of the beam, an RF d is installed between the source and the spin manipulator. The injector is also equipped with a Mott polarimeter to characterise the polarisation of the beam delivered by the source.

An important consideration of the operation with interchangeable photocathodes is minimisation of the down time required for the photocathode exchange. It typically takes few hours to replace the photocathode and to characterise polarisation of the beam. For large facility like LHeC this is unacceptable. A practical solution could be operation with 2 or more electron sources which operate in rotation. Another motivation for using several electron sources is the nonlinear

dependence of photocathode charge lifetime on average beam current (JLAB), which reduces with increasing of the average current. In case of 3 electron sources 2 of them can be operated with half operation frequency 20.05 MHz in opposite phase delivering average current of 10 mA each, while the third is in stand by regime with freshly activated photocathode. The only time which is necessary to switch it on is the time required for rising the high voltage. Another advantage of using a 3 source scheme is the reduction of the average laser power deposited on the photocathode and as result relaxing requirements for the photocathode cooling. In order to implement a 3 source polarised electron injector, development of a deflection system which is able to merge the beams from different sources before the spin rotator is required.

Lasers for electron sources

In the proposed design of the LHeC injection system at least 2 lasers must be used. In the unpolarised electron injector, which is going to operate with antimionide-based photocathode, a laser with a wavelength of 532 nm is required. Typical initial QE of these photocathodes is 10% and for practical application reduction of QE up to 1 % may be expected. For polarised electron source typical QE varies from 1 % down to 0.1 % and laser with a wavelength of 780 nm is required. The optimised parameters of the required lasers are summarised in Tab. 8.12. Laser temporal profile and spot size on the photocathode are given on the basis of source optimisation for operation at 350 kV for unpolarised regime and 220 kV for polarised.

Laser beam parameter	Unit	Unpolarised mode	Polarised mode
Laser wavelength	nm	532	780
Laser pulse repetition rate	MHz	40.1	40.1
Energy in the single pulse at photocathode QE=1 %	μ J	0.12	
Average laser power at photocathode QE=1 %	W	4.7*	
Energy in the single pulse at photocathode QE=0.1 %	μ J		0.79
Average laser power at photocathode Qe=0.1 %	W		32*
Laser pulse duration	ps FWHM	118	80
Laser pulse rise time	ps	3.2	3.2
Laser pulse fall time	ps	3.2	3.2
Spot diameter on the photocathode surface	mm	6.4	8
Laser spot shape on the photocathode surface		Flat top	

Table 8.12: Parameters of the electron source drive laser.

8.6.6 Injector

???

8.6.7 Compensation of Synchrotron Radiation Losses

Depending on energy, each arc exhibits fractional energy loss due to the synchrotron radiation, which scales as γ^4/ρ^2 (see Eq. (8.3)). Arc-by-arc energy loss was previously summarised in Tab. 8.9. That energy loss has to be replenished back to the beam, so that at the entrance of each arc the accelerating and decelerating beams have the same energy. Before or after each arc, a matching section adjusts the optics from and to the linac. Adjacent to these, additional

cells are placed, hosting the RF compensating sections. The compensation makes use of a second harmonic RF at 1603.2 MHz to replenish the energy loss for both the accelerating and the decelerating beams, therefore allowing them to have the same energy at the entrance of each arc, as shown in Fig. 8.18.

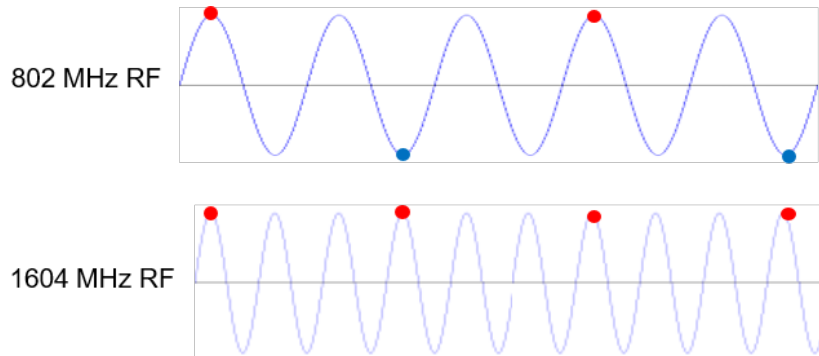


Figure 8.18: The second-harmonic RF restores the energy loss in both the accelerating and decelerating passes.

Parameters of the RF compensation cryomodules, shown in Tab. 8.13, have been extrapolated from the ILC cavity design, expecting that the higher frequency and lower gradient would support continuous operation.

Parameter	Unit	Value
Frequency	MHz	1603.2
Gradient	MV/m	30
Design		Nine cells
Cells length	mm	841
Structure length	m	1
Cavity per cryomodule		6
Cryomodule length	m	6
Cryomodule voltage	MV	150

Table 8.13: A tentative list of parameter for the compensating rf cryomodules extrapolated from the ILC design.

The compensating cryo-modules are placed into Linac 1 side of the racetrack, before the bending section of Arc 1, Arc 3, and Arc 5 and after the bending section of Arc 2, Arc 4, and Arc 6. This saves space on Linac 2 side to better fit the interaction point (IP) line and the bypasses. Note that with the current vertical separation of 0.5 m it will not be possible to stack the cryomodules on top of each other; therefore, they will occupy 36 m on the Arc 4 and Arc 6 side. Tab. 8.14 shows the energy loss for each arc and the corresponding synchrotron radiated power, along with number of cryomodules at 1603.2 MHz RF frequency required to replenish the energy loss.

Section	ΔE [MeV]	P [MW]	Cryomodules
Arc 1	3	0.2	0
Arc 2	25	1.2	0
Arc 3	81	4.0	1
Arc 4	232	11.6	2
Arc 5	389	19.4	3
Arc 6	991	49.6	7

Table 8.14: Arc-by-arc synchrotron radiated power and number of 2-nd harmonic RF cryomodules required to compensate energy loss.

Some text is missing here! and 18 m on the Arc 3 and Arc 5 side of the racetrack. Each of the compensating cavities in Arc 5 needs to transfer up to 1 MW to the beam. Although a 1 MW continuous wave klystron are available [574], the cryomodule integration and protection system will require a careful design.

8.6.8 LINAC Configuration and Infrastructure

Since the power supplied to the beam in the main linacs will be recovered, the average RF power requirements at 802 MHz are relatively small and determined by the needs to handle transients and microphonics.

The RF power required for the second-harmonic RF system however is substantial – it can be estimated from Tab. 8.9 with the nominal current of 20 mA:

some text is missing here.

8.7 Interaction Region

???

8.7.1 Layout

The basic principle of the Linac-Ring Interaction Region (IR) design remains unchanged and it is shown in Fig. 8.19: the two proton beams are brought onto intersecting orbits by strong separation and recombination dipoles. A collision of the proton beams at the Interaction Point (IP) is avoided via timing. The large crossing angle keeps the long range beam-beam effect small and separates the beams enough to allow septum quadrupoles to focus only the colliding beam (the anti-clockwise rotating LHC beam – Beam 2). The non-colliding beam (the clockwise rotating LHC beam – Beam 1) is unfocused and passes the septum quadrupoles in a field free aperture. The electron beam is brought in with an even larger angle, partly sharing the field free aperture of the septum quadrupoles with the non-colliding beam. A weak dipole in the detector region bends the electron beam into head-on collisions with the colliding proton beam. The two proton beams are also exposed to the dipole field but, due to the large beam rigidity, they are barely affected. After the interaction point a dipole with opposite polarity separates the orbits of the electron and proton beam.

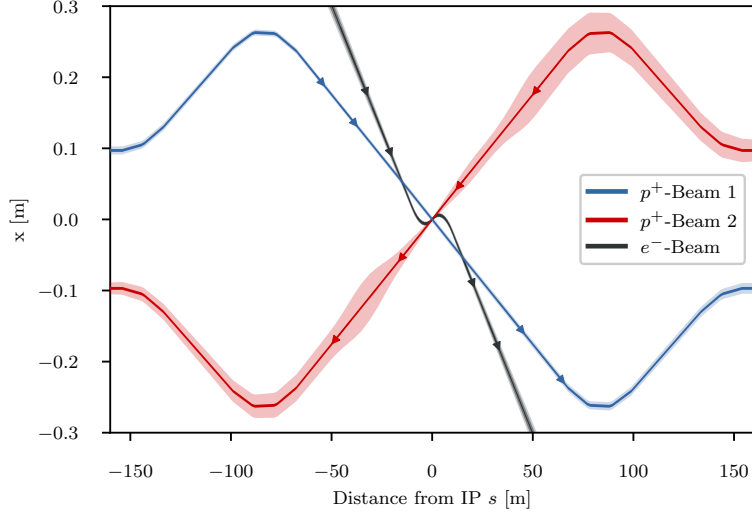


Figure 8.19: Geometry of the interaction region with 10σ envelopes. The electron beam is colliding with the focussed anti-clockwise rotating LHC beam (Beam 2) while the clockwise rotating LHC beam is unfocussed and passes the Interaction Region without interacting with the other two beams

Magnet	Gradient [T/m]	Length [m]	Free aperture radius [mm]
Q1A	252	3.5	20
Q1B	164	3.0	32
Q2 type	186	3.7	40
Q3 type	175	3.5	45

Table 8.15: Parameters of the final focus quadrupole septa. The parameters of Q1A/B and Q2 are compatible with the Nb₃Sn based designs from [576] assuming the inner protective layer of Q2 can be reduced to 5 mm thickness.

The high electron current (cf. Tab. 8.1) required to approach the goal peak luminosity of $10^{34}\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ poses a potential problem for the interaction region (IR) as it increases the already high synchrotron radiation.

The ERL parameters are not the only major change the new IR design has to account for. The first design of the quadrupole septa featured a separation of 68 mm for the two proton beams. However, this design focused strongly on providing a field free region for the non-colliding beam. Unfortunately, this led to a poor field quality for the strongly focused colliding beam. The first quadrupole Q1 was a half quadrupole design effectively acting as a combined function magnet with a dipole component of 4.45 T [575]. The sextupole field component was also prohibitively high. Consequently, a new design approach focusing on the field quality in the quadrupole aperture was necessary. The parameters relevant for the interaction region design are summarised in Tab. 8.15.

It is noteworthy that the minimum separation of the two beams at the entrance of the first quadrupole Q1A increased from 68 mm to 106 mm requiring a stronger bending of the electron beam. This would increase the already high synchrotron radiation in the detector region even more. In order to compensate this increase, it was decided to increase L^* to 15 m, an approach that was shown to have a strong leverage on the emitted power [577].

The increased separation of the two proton beams, the longer L^* and the overall longer final focus

Magnet	Field strength [T]	Interbeam distance [mm]	Length [m]	Number
D1	5.6	≥ 496 mm	9.45	6
D2	4.0	≥ 194 mm	9.45	4
IP Dipole	0.21	-	10	-

Table 8.16: Parameters of the separation and recombination dipoles. The respective interbeam distances are given for the magnet with the lowest value.

triplet make longer and stronger separation and recombination dipoles necessary. The dipoles differ from the arc dipoles in that the magnetic field in both apertures has the same direction. Consequently the cross talk between both apertures is significant and the maximum reachable field is lower. The new geometry keeps the required field below 5.6 T. The required lengths and strength of these dipoles are listed in Tab. 8.16. It should be noted that the inter-beam distance is different for each of the five magnets per side, so each magnet will likely require an individual design. The design of the D1 dipoles is further complicated by the fact that an escape line for neutral collision debris traveling down the beam pipe will be necessary [551], as well as a small angle electron tagger. These issues have not been addressed so far, further studies will require detailed dipole designs.

The first design of the LHeC interaction region featured detector dipoles occupying almost the entire drift space between the interaction point and first quadrupole. The approach was to have the softest synchrotron radiation possible to minimise the power. However, since the purpose of the dipoles is to create a spacial separation at the entrance of the first quadrupole, it is possible to make use of a short drift between dipole and quadrupole to increase the separation without increasing the synchrotron radiation power. A dipole length of $\frac{2}{3}L^*$ is the optimum in terms of synchrotron radiation power [578]. Compared to the full length dipole it reduces the power by 15.6% at the cost of a 12.5% higher critical energy. With an L^* of 15 m the optimum length of the detector dipoles is 10 m. A magnetic field of 0.21 T is sufficient to separate the electron and proton beams by 106 mm at the entrance of the first quadrupole. With these dipoles and an electron beam current of 20 mA at 49.19 GeV the total synchrotron radiation power is 38 kW with a critical energy of 283 keV to be compared with a power of 83 kW and a critical energy of 513 keV for the electron beam energy of 60 GeV. More detailed studies on the synchrotron radiation for different options and including a beam envelope for the electron beam are summarised in Tab. 8.19 below.

A schematic layout of the LHeC interaction region with the dipoles discussed above is shown in Fig. 8.20. The corresponding beam optics will be discussed in the following sections.

8.7.2 Proton Optics

As discussed above, the L^* was increased to 15 m in order to compensate the increased synchrotron radiation due to the larger separation. The final focus system is a triplet consisting of the quadrupoles Q1A and Q1B (see Tab. 8.15), three elements of the Q2 type and two of the Q3 type. Between the elements a drift space of 0.5 m was left to account for the magnet interconnects in a single cryostat. Between Q1 and Q2 as well as Q2 and Q3 a longer drift of 5 m is left for cold-warm transitions, Beam Position Monitors (BPMs) and vacuum equipment. Behind Q3, but before the first element of the recombination dipole D1, another 16 m of drift space are left to allow for the installation of non-linear correctors in case the need arises, as well as a local protection of the triplet magnets from asynchronous beam dumps caused by failures

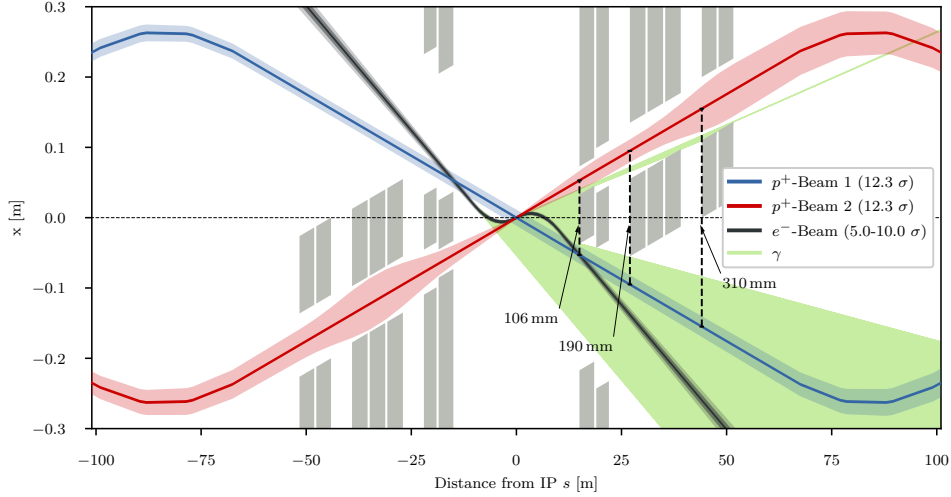


Figure 8.20: Schematic layout of the LHeC interaction region. The colliding proton beam and the electron beam are shown at collision energy while the non-colliding beam is shown at injection energy when its emittance is the largest.

of the beam dump kickers (MKD) as discussed below.

As the recombination dipoles D1 and D2 for the LHeC interaction region require more space than the current ALICE interaction region, the quadrupoles Q4 and Q5 had to be moved further away from the IP. The position of Q6 is mostly unchanged but due to a need for more focusing the length was increased by replacing it with two elements of the MQM magnet class of LHC.

With the triplet quadrupole parameters provided in Tab. 8.15 we were able to match optics with a minimum β^* of 10 cm. The corresponding optics are shown in Fig. 8.21 and feature maximum β functions in the triplet in the order of 20 km. With these large β functions, the free apertures

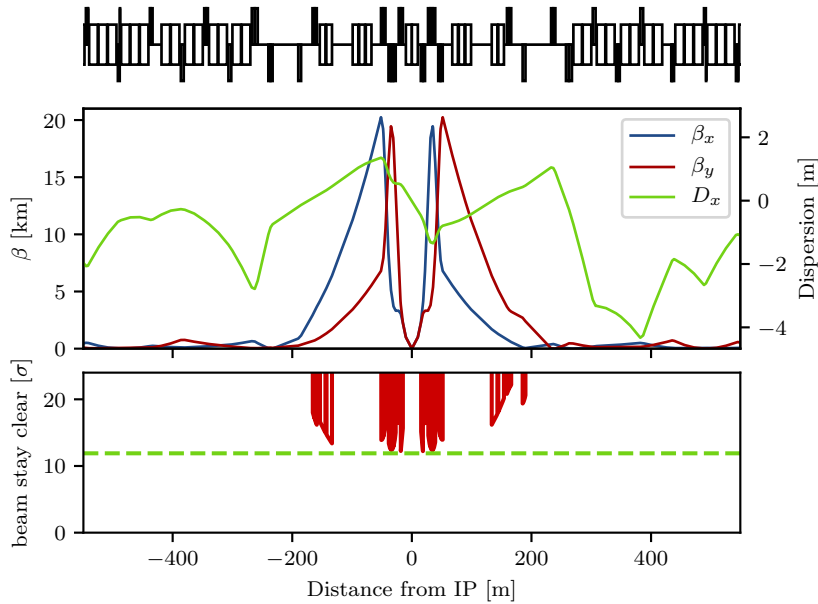


Figure 8.21: Optics (top) and beam stay clear (bottom) of the colliding beam with $\beta^* = 10$ cm.

of the quadrupoles leave just enough space for a beam stay clear of 12.3σ , the specification of the LHC. This is illustrated in Fig 8.21. However, since the LHeC is supposed to be incorporated in the HL-LHC lattice, this minimum beam stay clear requires specific phase advances from the MKD kicker to the protected aperture as detailed later. The large β functions not only drive the aperture need in the final focus system, but also the required chromaticity correction in the adjacent arcs. To increase the leverage of the arc sextupoles, the Achromatic Telescopic Squeezing scheme (ATS) developed for HL-LHC [579] was extended to the arc upstream of IP2 for the colliding beam (Beam 2) (see Fig. 8.22). This limited the optical flexibility in the matching sections of IR2, specifically of the phase advances between arc and IP2. As a consequence, the optical solution that has been found (Fig. 8.21) still has a residual dispersion of 15 cm at the IP and the polarities of the quadrupoles Q4 and Q5 on the left side of the IP break up the usual sequence of focusing and defocusing magnets. It needs to be studied whether this is compatible with the injection optics. The latest optics designs can be found at [580].

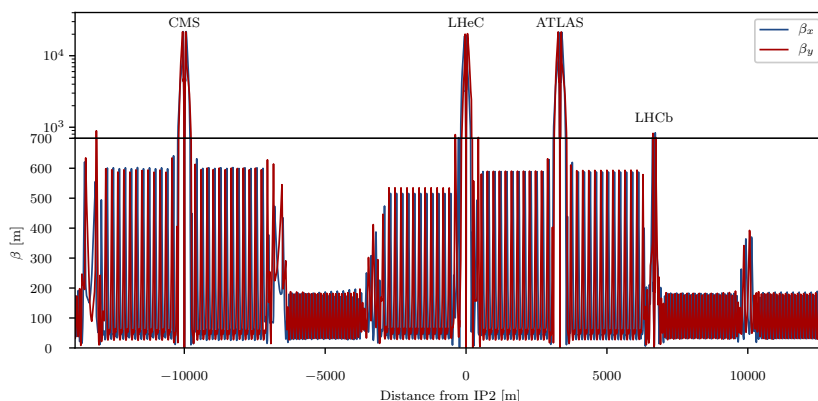


Figure 8.22: Optics of full ring of the colliding LHC proton beam (Beam 2).

The free apertures given in Tab. 8.15 include a 10 mm thick shielding layer in Q1 and 5 mm in Q2 and Q3. This is necessary to protect the superconducting coils from synchrotron radiation entering the magnets as can be seen in Fig. 8.20. The absorber must also protect the magnets from collision debris. Simulations of both synchrotron radiation and collision debris are yet to be conducted in order to confirm the feasibility of this design.

A separation between the two proton beams in time is currently foreseen, i.e. while the orbits of the two proton beams do cross, the bunches do not pass through the IP at the same time. This approach is complicated by the fact that the timing of the bunches in the other three interaction points should not be affected. The easiest way to accomplish this is by shifting the interaction point of LHeC by a quarter of a bunch separation, i.e. $6.25 \text{ ns} \times c \approx 1.87 \text{ m}$ upstream or downstream of the current ALICE IP. This will of course have an impact in the integration of the detector in the underground cavern [581], however it seems feasible [582].

The LHC protected aperture in the event of an asynchronous beam dump significantly depends on the phase advance between the MKD kicker and the local aperture protection [583]. This is due to the oscillation trajectory of bunches deflected during the kicker rise time. With a phase advance of 0° or 180° from the kicker to the protected aperture, a direct hit should be unlikely, so aperture bottlenecks should be close to that. For a beam stay clear of 12.3σ a phase advance of less than 30° from either 0° or 180° was calculated to be acceptable [583]. The major complication comes from the fact that not only the final focus system of LHeC, but also of the two main experiments ATLAS and CMS need to have to correct phase advances and since the

phase advances between IP2 (LHeC) and IP1 (ATLAS) are locked in the achromatic telescopic squeezing scheme there are few degrees of freedom to make adaptations.

The Achromatic Telescopic Squeezing (ATS) scheme [579] is a novel optical solution proposed for the HL-LHC to strongly reduce the β^* while controlling the chromatic aberrations induced, among other benefits.

The principles of the ATS as implemented for the HL-LHC are as follows: first, in the presqueeze stage, a standard matching procedure is performed in the interaction regions to obtain a value of β^* which is achievable in terms of quadrupole strengths and chromaticity correction efficiency, in the case of HL-LHC this corresponds to IR1 and IR5. A further constraint at this point is to match the arc cell phase advance on the regions adjacent to the low β^* interaction regions to exactly $\pi/2$. Later, at the collision stage, the low β^* insertions remain unchanged and instead the adjacent interaction regions contribute to the reduction of β^* , that is IR8 and IR2 for IR1, and IR4 and IR6 for IR5. The $\pi/2$ phase advance allows the propagation of β -waves in the arc. If phased correctly with the IP, these β -waves will reach their maximum at every other sextupoles, increasing the β function at their location at the same rate that the decrease in β^* . The increase of the β function at the location of the sextupoles will result in an increase of their efficiency, allowing the system to correct the high chromaticity produced by the high- β function in the inner triplet. This way, the ATS allows a further reduction of the β^* at the same time that correcting the chromaticity aberrations produced in the low β insertions.

Following the experience for HL-LHC, the ATS scheme was proposed for the LHeC project to overcome some of the challenges of this design in terms of limits in the quadrupole strengths of the interaction region and in the chromaticity correction.

A first integration of the LHeC IR into the HL-LHC lattice using the ATS scheme for the previous nominal case with $\beta^* = 10$ cm and $L^* = 10$ m was presented by extending the β wave into the arc 23 [577]. The flexibility of this design was later explored to study the feasibility of minimising β^* , to increase the luminosity, and increasing L^* , to minimise the synchrotron radiation. It was found that increasing L^* to 15 m provided a good compromise but keeping the β^* to 10 cm.

The changes made to the HLLHCV1.3 lattice [584] to obtain the LHeC lattice and the detailed matching procedure are described in Ref. [585]. At the end of this process a lattice for the required collision optics in all IRs ($\beta^*=15$ cm for IR1 and IR5 and $\beta^*=10$ cm for IR2) has been obtained, with the appropriate corrections (crossing, dispersion, tune and chromaticity). The phases between the MKD kicker in IR6 and the different low β^* triplets were also checked, resulting in 15° from the horizontal for IR1, 22° for IR2 and 26° for IR5, therefore fulfilling the $< 30^\circ$ requirement for all three IRs.

Similarly the chromaticity correction for the LHeC lattice further develops from the HL-LHC chromaticity correction scheme [585] allowing to correct the chromaticity for the case with $\beta^* = 10$ cm in IP2 within the available main sextupole strength. Lattices with $\beta^* = 7, 8$ and 9 cm and $L^* = 15$ m were also successfully matched in terms of both the β^* and the chromaticity correction. It must be noted however that these cases require a larger aperture in the inner triplet.

Dynamic aperture (DA) studies were performed to analyze the stability of the lattice designs using SixTrack [586] on a thin-lens version of the LHeC lattice at collision ($\beta^* = 0.15$ m in IP1 and IP5, $\beta^* = 10$ cm in IP2) over 10^5 turns with crossing angles on, 30 particles pairs per amplitude step of 2σ , 5 angles in the transverse plane and a momentum offset of 2.7×10^{-4} . The energy was set to 7 TeV and the normalised emittance of the proton beam to $\epsilon = 2.5 \mu\text{m}$.

No beam-beam effects were included in this study.

Previous DA studies had been performed for an earlier version of the LHeC lattice [577]. These studies did not include triplet errors of either of the low- β interaction regions, as these errors were not available at that stage. These studies were updated for the newer version of the LHeC lattice described in the previous sections and included errors on the triplets of IR1 and IR5. For the case of IR2 errors tables for the new triplet are not yet available but it was estimated that the same field quality than the triplets for the HL-LHC IR can be achieved for these magnets, and therefore the same field errors were applied but adjusted to the LHeC triplet apertures.

The initial DA resulted in 7σ but following the example of HL-LHC and FCC studies [587] two further corrections were implemented: the use of non-linear correctors to compensate for the non linear errors in the LHeC IR, and the optimisation of the phase advance between IP1 and IP5. With these corrections the DA was increased to 10.2σ , above the target of 10σ . The case for lower β^* , particularly for the case of interest with $\beta^* = 7\text{ cm}$ proved to be more challenging, as expected, when adding errors on the LHeC IR; however with the use of the latest corrections a DA of 9.6σ was achieved, that is not far off from the target. The DA versus angle for both these cases are shown in Fig. 8.23. It is important to point out that the challenge for the $\beta^*=7\text{ cm}$ case comes instead from the quadrupole aperture and gradient requirements, particularly in the first magnet.

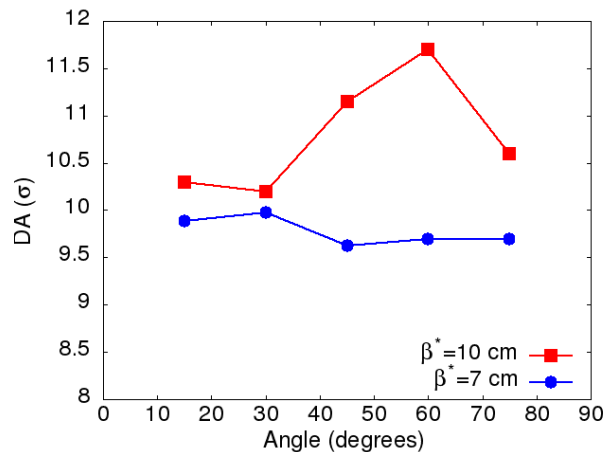


Figure 8.23: Dynamic aperture vs angle for 60 seeds for the LHeC lattice at collision for the cases $\beta^* = 10\text{ cm}$ (red) and $\beta^* = 5\text{ cm}$ in IP2.

β^* values lower than 10 cm require a completely different final focus system as the lower β^* means the beam size in the triplet will become larger. Larger apertures are required and consequently the gradients in the quadrupoles will decrease. However similar integrated focusing strengths will be required so the overall length of the triplet will increase. As this will in turn increase the β functions in the triplet further it is imperative to optimise the use of the available space. An example of available space is the drift between the detector region dipoles and the triplet magnets as shown in Fig. 8.24. The optimum dipole lengths in terms of synchrotron radiation power was determined to be $2/3 \cdot L^*$ so a drift of 5 m is left. Now it is immediately clear that this region cannot be occupied by a superconducting quadrupole septum as that would effectively decrease L^* and thus increase the synchrotron radiation power as a stronger separation is necessary. Instead it is thinkable that a normal conducting quadrupole septum can be built that either does not require a yoke or similar structure between the beams or has a very thin yoke, or a septum that has a very limited and controlled field in the region of the electron beam trajectory.

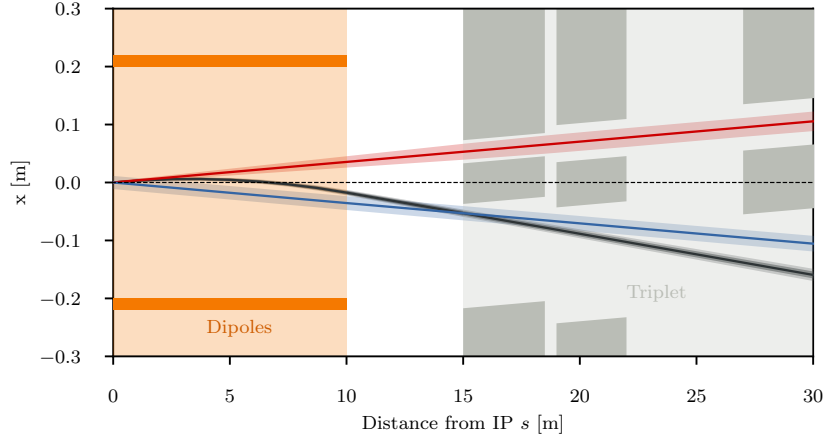


Figure 8.24: Empty space between the detector dipole and the superconducting quadrupoles of the final focus triplet.

In the later case it might even be used as part of the final focus system of the electron beam. Either way, it is clear that such a normal conducting septum must have a pole tip field way below the saturation limit of iron. The section on electron optics shows that a normal quadrupole of this kind can also have benefits in terms of synchrotron radiation, but studies remained to be done to make sure the parameters work for both cases. For our calculation a pole tip field of 1 T was assumed. For $\beta^* = 5$ cm an aperture radius of 20 mm is required at a distance of 14 m from the IP, resulting in a pole tip field of 50 T/m for the normal conducting septum called Q0. Possible ratios of apertures and gradients for the remaining triplet magnets were approximately based on the quadrupole parameters shown in Tab. 8.15, however these parameters would require a magnet design for confirmation. With the quadrupole parameters shown in Tab. 8.17 we were able to obtain triplet optics that can accommodate a beam with a minimum β^* of 5 cm.

Magnet	Gradient [T/m]	Length [m]	Aperture radius [mm]
Q0 (nc)	50	3.0	20
Q1A	110	3.5	27
Q1B	162	5.0	37
Q2	123	5.0	62
Q3	123	4.5	62

Table 8.17: Parameters of the final focus quadrupole septa required to accommodate a β^* of 5 cm. The normal conducting quadrupole is called Q0 although it has the same polarity as Q1A/B.

The corresponding optics are shown in Fig. 8.25. So from the triplet point of view it appears possible to reach lower β^* , however many assumptions need verification: First the magnetic design for the normal conducting quadrupole septum must be shown to be possible. If there is a residual field in the space of the electron beam trajectory, the impact on the electron beam and the synchrotron radiation power must be evaluated. The parameters of the modified superconducting triplet quadrupole septa, although scaled conservatively, must be confirmed. Furthermore the larger aperture radius of Q1 might require a larger separation at the entrance of Q1, increasing the synchrotron power that is already critical. Thus a full design of such magnets is required. Lastly, the interaction region must be integrated into the full ring to verify that chromaticity correction is possible. Studies in Ref. [585] that were conducted on the normal triplet without regard for aperture constraints suggest that a chromaticity correction is only

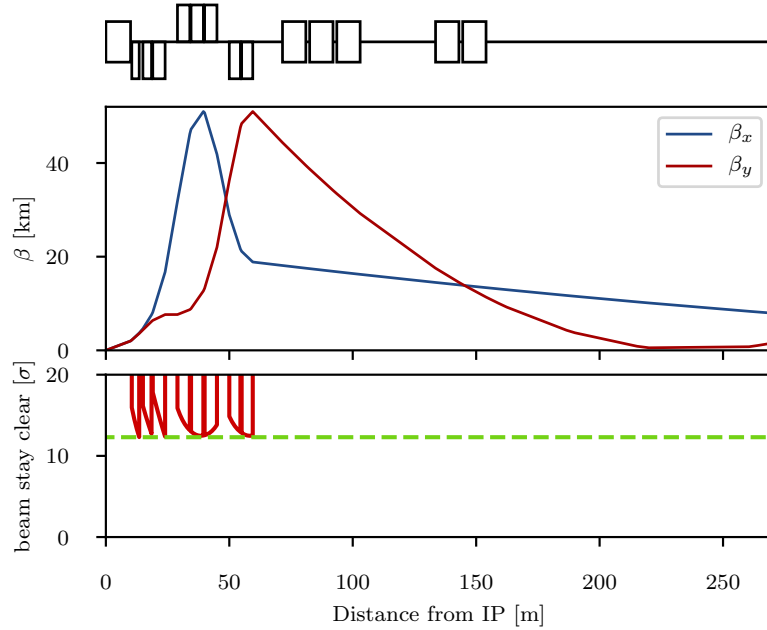


Figure 8.25: Optics (top) and beam stay clear (bottom) in the triplet region of colliding beam with $B^* = 5$ cm.

possible for a β^* down to around 7 cm.

So far the optics of the final focus system featured asymmetrically powered triplets on the two sides of the IP. This is inherited from the ALICE final focus system where the aperture is shared and the antisymmetry guarantees the same optics for both beams and similar chromaticities in both horizontal and vertical planes. In the LHeC final focus system however, the apertures of the quadrupoles are not shared between both beams, so the antisymmetry is not strictly necessary, although it eases the integration in the full ring. An alternative approach that is worth studying is a symmetric doublet. Doublets feature a large β function in one plane and a relatively low one in the other plane. Since the non-colliding proton beam is of no concern for LHeC it makes sense to create doublets on each side of the IP that have the peak β function in the horizontal plane as the chromaticity correction was limited in the vertical plane. Furthermore, in a doublet the integrated focusing strength needed is lower as fewer quadrupoles act against each other. This further reduces the chromaticity and should also reduce the overall length of the final focus system. With the space saved by the doublet it is possible to either shift the recombination dipoles D1 and D2 closer to the IP, reducing the needed integrated strengths, or even to increase L^* to further reduce the synchrotron radiation power and critical energy. In order to make best use of the available doublet quadrupole aperture, it is also thinkable to collide with flat beams. The main disadvantage of symmetric doublets is the breaking of the sequence of focusing and defocusing quadrupoles. As no changes should be made to the arcs, the left-right symmetry needs to be broken up again in one of the matching sections, either by introducing another quadrupole on one side of the IP, or by overfocusing the beam.

At collision energy the non-colliding beam has no optics specification within the straight section. Consequently the optics should transfer the beam from the left arc to the right arc without hitting the aperture and at a specific phase advance. The same is true at injection energy, but with a larger emittance, making the satisfaction of the aperture constraint more difficult. Thus it is sufficient to find working injection optics, as no squeeze will be required for this beam. This

approach of course will require some tuning as at least one arc will apply the ATS scheme at collision, but as the aperture constraint is less tight at higher energy there should be enough degrees of freedom available.

Finding injection optics appears trivial at first but is complicated by the fact that the distance between the IP and the first quadrupole magnet Q4 is larger than 159 m. A total distance of 318 m needs to be bridged without any focusing available. A solution has been found with $\beta^* = 92$ m and $\alpha^* = \pm 0.57$ with the required beam size in the quadrupole septa and Q4 [585]. The corresponding optics are shown in Fig. 8.26. For the magnets Q4 and Q5 LHC quadrupoles

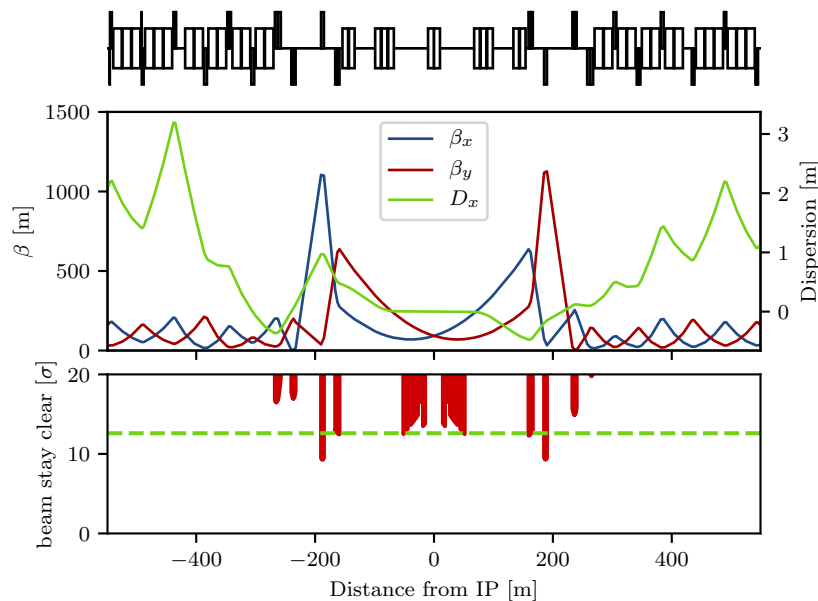


Figure 8.26: Optics (top) and beam stay clear of the non-colliding beam at injection energy. The Q5 quadrupole magnets on either side of the IP currently are aperture bottlenecks. It should be possible to mitigate this problem by replacing the magnets with longer, larger aperture magnets.

of the large aperture MQY type with 70 mm aperture diameter and a 160 T/m gradient were assumed. As can be seen in the aperture plot, the triplet quadrupole septa and Q4 are just below the minimum beam stay clear at injection of 12.6σ but it is expected that nominal aperture can be achieved With some minor optimisation. However the Q5 magnets only have a beam stay clear of about 9.2σ with little chance of decreasing the beam size without increasing it both in Q4 and in the quadrupole septa. Consequently it will be necessary to use quadrupoles with apertures larger than 106 mm and make up for the lower gradient by increasing the length or by using Nb₃Sn technology. At injection energy the remaining magnets in the IR have strengths according to the HL-LHC specification and thus do not pose any problems. However the injection optics shown in Fig. 8.26 will require some changes during the ramp as Q4, Q5 and Q6 would become too strong at collision energy. This is not considered a problem though, as the emittance shrinking will ease the aperture requirements.

The non-colliding proton beam does not need to be focused and consequently passes the quadrupole septa of the colliding beam in the field free region.

The large angle of $7200\mu\text{rad}$ between the two beams (compared to $590\mu\text{rad}$ in the high luminosity IPs) should suffice to mitigate long range beam-beam effects, considering that the shared aperture is only 30 m long as opposed to the main experiments where the shared aperture exceeds

a length of 70 m.

8.7.3 Electron Optics

First ideas of a possible layout and design of the Interaction Region IR between the LHeC lepton and proton beam have already been presented in Ref. [551]. Based on the principles explained there, a further optimisation of the beam separation scheme has been established, with the ultimate goal of lowest synchrotron radiation power and critical energy in the direct environment of the particle detector. Depending on the requests from the actual detector geometry and shielding, the flexibility of the new IR layout allows to optimise for either side.

The basic principle is – as before – based on the large ratio (approximately 140) of the proton to electron beam momentum (or beam rigidity, $B\rho = p/e$) that makes a magnetic field based separation scheme the straightforward solution to the problem, using effective dipole fields.

Boundary conditions are set however due to the limited longitudinal space, resulting from the distance of the first focusing elements of the proton lattice, located at $L^* = 15$ m, and the need for sufficient transverse separation, defined by the technical design of this first proton quadrupole. The size of the two beams and – clear enough – the power of the emitted synchrotron radiation P_{syn} and the critical energy E_{crit} have to be taken into account in addition. The well known dependencies of these two parameters on the beam energy $E_e = m_e c^2 \gamma$ and bending radius ρ are given by

$$P_{\text{syn}} = \frac{e^2 c \gamma^4}{6\pi\epsilon_0 \rho^2} \quad \text{and} \quad E_{\text{crit}} = \frac{3 \hbar c \gamma^3}{2 \rho}. \quad (8.6)$$

The schematic layout of the original design of the electron interaction region shown in Fig. 8.20 is reproduced in Fig. 8.27 (a). The long dipole magnet B, used to deflect the electron beam, is

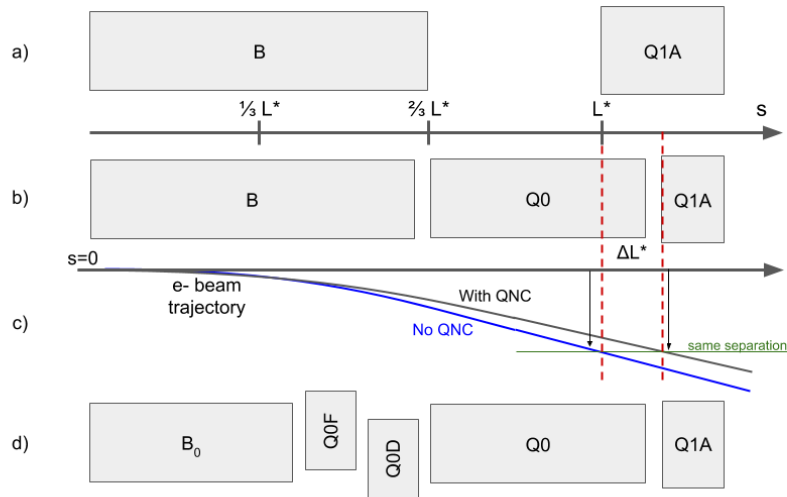


Figure 8.27: Separation scheme based on a long dipole magnet B (a) and improved layout using Q0, a normal conducting half-quadrupole as first focusing element of the proton beam (b). The last design features a doublet of off-centered quadrupoles to minimise the electron beam size at the entrance of Q1A (d).

embedded inside the detector structure which is ranging from -6 m to 4 m around the interaction point, extended by ± 1.65 m of muon chamber. Basic interaction region designs with and without

chromaticity correction were presented [588,589] but were not fully integrated in the ERL. The electron final quadrupoles were placed at 30 m from the IP [590], compatible with the proton layout described above. While this approach is straightforward, the only parameter that can be used to minimise the power of the emitted synchrotron radiation is the length of the separator-dipole field [578]. In addition, the installation of the first focusing elements of the electron beam downstream of the triplet focussing the colliding proton beam leads to a considerable increase of the electron beam size in the separation plane.

Lattices including chromaticity correction had a significant length of 150 m. However, the whole straight section between Linac and arc is only 290 m long [551] and the IR design did not include a matching and splitting section or a focus system for the spent, outgoing electron beam. Without chromaticity correction in the electron final focus, aberrations at the IP decrease luminosity by about 20% [591].

Investigations have been launched to minimise critical energy and emitted synchrotron radiation power by reducing the separation in two main steps:

- introduce a compact mirror-plate half quadrupole (QNC) in front of Q1A (on the IP side) to focus the colliding proton beam and provide a field free region for the electron and non-interacting proton beam. This reduces the required bending field of the separation dipole B for the same separation at Q1A. In addition, the normal conducting magnet QNC will act as shielding of the superconducting triplet magnets that would otherwise be subject to direct synchrotron radiation. Additional shielding is foreseen, to protect the SC magnets and avoid as much as possible backshining to the detector. In addition, sufficient space will be provided to correct the vertical orbit and coupling of the electrons coming from the solenoid.
- reduce the beam size of the electron beam by a very early focusing of the beam. As positive side effect this leads to a considerable reduction of the chromaticity of the electron lattice.

The first step is sketched in Fig. 8.27 (b) and the corresponding electron beam trajectory is shown in Fig. 8.27 (c).

The introduction of the mirror plate half quadrupole QNC allows to reduce the length of the Q1A quadrupole while conserving the total integrated gradient, therefore leaving the overall focusing properties of the proton lattice quasi untouched. The entry of Q1A is therefore moved away from the IP to relax the separation fields.

Scanning the Q1A entry position leads to either an optimum of the critical energy or to a minimum of the emitted synchrotron power. Both cases are shown in Fig. 8.28 and for each of them the new Q1A entry position has been determined. The power of the emitted radiation is reduced by up to 28%. The colliding proton beam, passing through this half quadrupole with a certain offset to guarantee sufficient beam stay clear, will receive a deflecting kick in the horizontal plane of about 90 μ rad. It supports the dipole based beam separation, provided by the so-called D1 / D2 magnets in LHC, and will be integral part of the LHC design orbit.

The resulting beam optics of the protons differs only marginally from the original version and only a slight re-match is needed. However by carefully choosing the gradient of the new magnet the parameters of the superconducting proton quadrupoles are untouched and the phase advance at the end of the interaction region lattice is conserved in both planes.

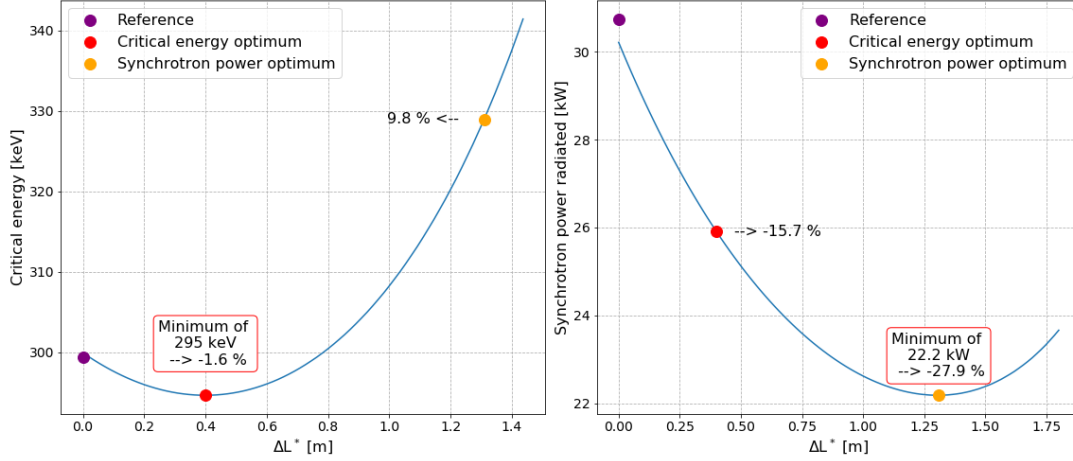


Figure 8.28: Improved critical energy and power of the synchrotron radiation for the half quadrupole based proton lattice. Left side: critical energy, right side: synchrotron radiation power. The horizontal axis refers to the shift ΔL^* of the position of the first proton superconducting magnet Q1A.

Improved Electron lattice

A further improvement of the emitted synchrotron power and critical energy is obtained by introducing an early focusing scheme of the electrons, which leads to a reduced electron beam size and thus to softer separation requirements.

The reduction of the electron beam size is obtained by installing a quadrupole doublet in the electron lattice between the separation dipole and the QNC (half-) quadrupole. A carefully matched focusing strength of this doublet will minimise the β function of the electrons at the location of Q1A. At the same time an effective dipole field, that is needed to maintain the separation of proton and electron beams, is provided by shifting the magnet centres of the doublet lenses off axis. The horizontal offset of these quadrupoles has been chosen to provide the same bending radius as the separation dipole, thus leading in first order to the same critical energy of the emitted light in all separation fields. A detailed calculation of the divergence of the photons, the geometry of the radiation fan and the position of the absorbers and collimators will be one of the essential next steps within the so-called machine-detector-interface considerations.

Fig. 8.27 (d) shows the new layout – compared to the previous version. The doublet providing the early focusing of the electron beam is embedded in the separator dipole, i.e. it is positioned at $s = 6.3$ m and acts in combination with the separation dipole. The quadrupole gradients have been chosen for optimum matching conditions of the electron beam and the transverse shift of the field centres provide the same separation dipole effect as used in the long dipole.

The early focusing of the electron beam allows for a softer separation of the beams, and leads therefore directly to a reduced critical energy E_{crit} and power P_{syn} of the emitted radiation. Fig. 8.29 shows the dependence of E_{crit} and P_{syn} on the β -function at $s = L^*$ for the electron optics for different values of the required electron beam stay-clear expressed in units of the electron beam size σ . The beam separation has been re-calculated and the critical energy and radiation power are plotted. The graphs include different assumptions for the beam size considered. Including orbit tolerances, a beam stay-clear of 20σ is considered as the most relevant case, which refers to the red curve in the graph.

In order to provide a complete study with the lattice featuring the off-centered quadrupoles, the

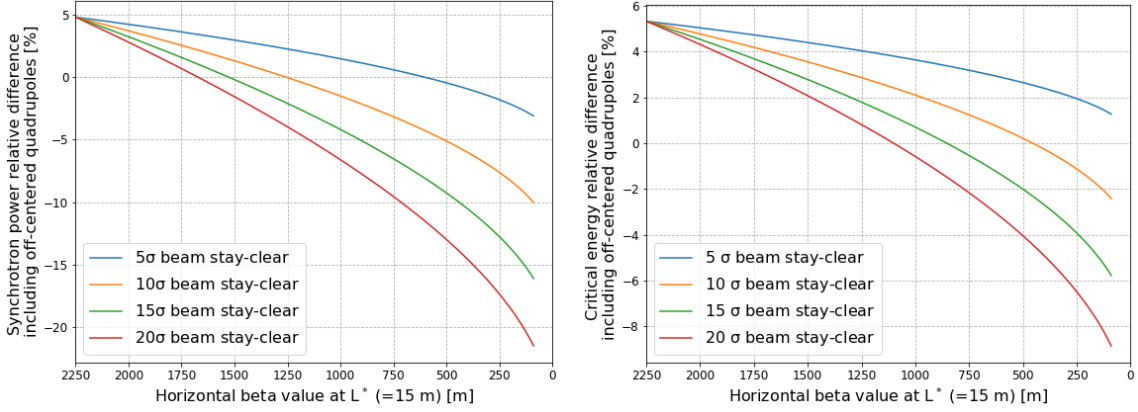


Figure 8.29: Relative difference with respect to the single dipole separation scheme for different values of the required beam stay-clear expressed in σ . Left : for the power of the emitted radiation, as function of the β -function of the electron beam at position $s=15\text{m}$. Left : for the critical energy of the emitted radiation, as function of the β -function of the electron beam at position $s=15\text{m}$. The early focusing of the electron beam allows for a much reduced separation field and thus to a reduced critical energy and power of the emitted radiation. The initial beta value is 2250 m.

new interaction region has been embedded in between the high energy end of the acceleration part of the linac and the *Arc 6* of the ERL, which marks the start of the energy recovery lattice. An optimum has been found for a beam optics with a beta function in the plane of the beam separation (i.e. horizontal) of $\beta_x = 90\text{ m}$ at $L^* \approx 15\text{ m}$

An improvement of about 9% for the critical energy and close to 25% of the radiated power is obtained, if an electron beam optics with $\beta_x = 90\text{ m}$ at the entrance of Q1A is used. For this most promising case the matched beam optics is shown in Fig. 8.30.

The lower β -function of the electron beam at the focusing elements has the additional positive feature of reducing considerably the chromaticity of the new lattice, which is a crucial parameter for the performance of the energy recovery process (details are described below in the chapter on tracking calculations). Compared to the dipole based separation and a late focusing, Q' is reduced to a level of 13% horizontally and to a level of 11% in the vertical plane. The details are listed in Tab. 8.18. Further studies will investigate the orbit correction scheme of the new IR, and an eventual interplay of the solenoid fringe field and the quadrupoles.

	Dipole based separation	Early focusing scheme
ξ_x	-116	-15
ξ_y	-294	-32

Table 8.18: Chromaticity of the dipole based separation scheme and the new lattice based on early focusing, off-axis quadrupole lenses.

The influence of the electron doublet magnets on the proton optics is marginal – as can be expected due to the large difference in beam rigidity: If uncorrected, the electron doublet creates a distortion (a so-called *beta-beat*) of the proton optics of roughly 1%. Still it has been calculated and taken into account in the context of a re-match of the proton beam optics.

Combining the two improvement factors, namely the effective lengthening of L^* due to the use of a half quadrupole in front of the superconducting triplet, and the early focusing scheme

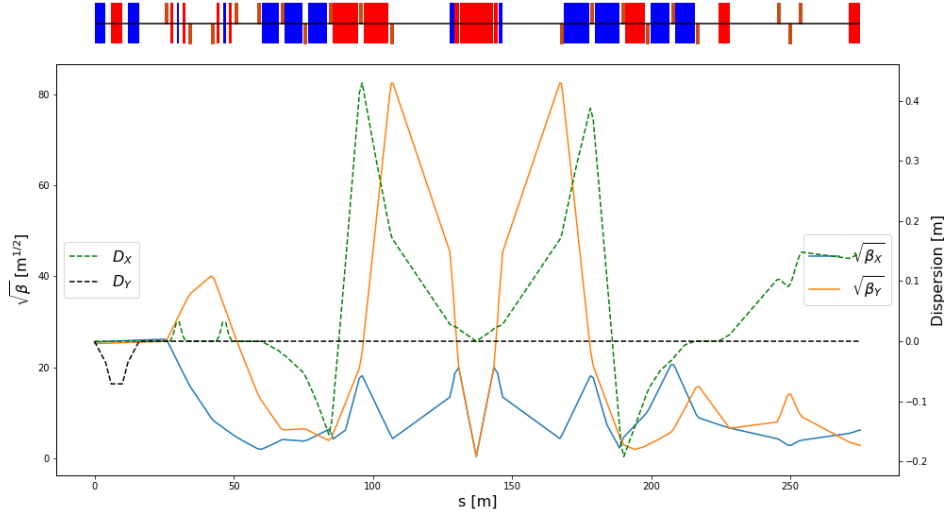


Figure 8.30: Electron beam optics for the new lattice including the early focusing scheme. The offset of the new doublet quadrupoles are chosen to provide the same separation field as in the dipole. The new optics is matched on the left side of the plot to the end of the acceleration linac. The right hand side is connected to Arc 6, the beginning of the decelerating ERL part. At the position of the first superconducting proton magnet the β -function in the (horizontal) separation plane of the electron beam is reduced to 90 m for lowest possible synchrotron radiation load.

in the lattice of the electrons, leads to an overall improvement of the interaction region with respect to synchrotron radiation power and critical energy that is shown in Fig. 8.31. The overall improvement factor is plotted with reference to the baseline dipole separation design with originally $\beta = 2250$ m at the separation point $s = L^*$. Using a normal conducting half quadrupole in combination with the early focusing scheme, the power of the emitted synchrotron radiation is reduced by 48 % for an electron beam stay-clear of 20σ .

The estimated synchrotron radiation power and critical energy for the different optimisations are plotted in Fig. 8.31 and the results are summarised in Tab. 8.19. Referring to a beam energy of 49.19 GeV and the design current of 20 mA an overall power of 16.2 kW is emitted within one half of the interaction region.

Optimised scheme	Synchrotron radiation		Critical energy	
	Radiation power [kW]	Critical energy [keV]	Radiation power [kW]	Critical energy [keV]
Reference design	30.8	300	30.8	300
Dipole length optimum	26.8	336	30.8	300
Half quadrupole optimum	22.2	331	26.1	295
Off-centered quadrupoles opti.	19.3	290	22.1	259
Half quad. + Off-centered quad. opti.	16.2	265	17.4	255

Table 8.19: Synchrotron radiation power and critical energy for the different optimised separation schemes.

Depending on the boundary conditions imposed by the integration of the particle detector, one of the two optimum layouts can be chosen – or a combination of both, i.e. an overall minimum defined by critical energy and radiated power.

The basic main parameters of the proton mirror plate half quadrupole are summarised in

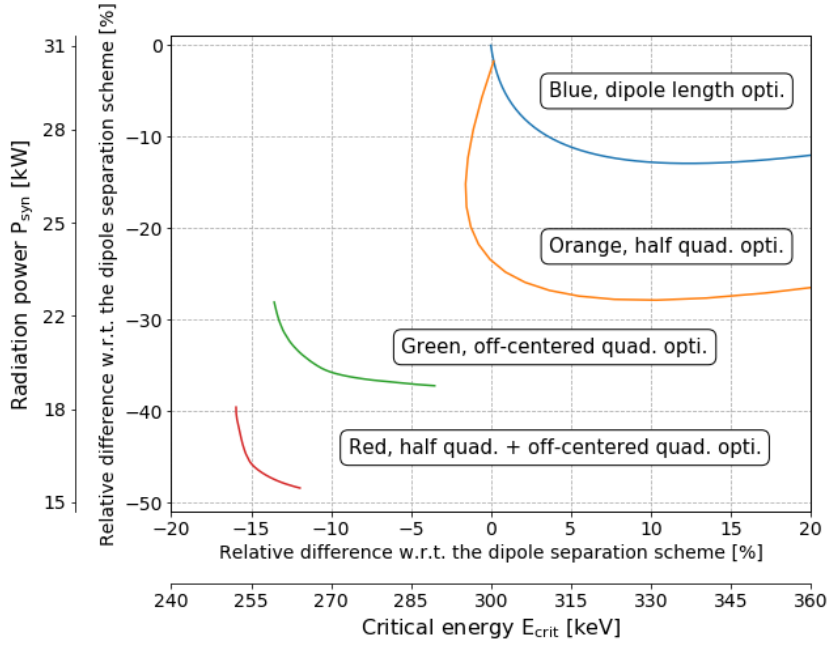


Figure 8.31: Relative differences with respect to the original single dipole separation scheme. The synchrotron radiated power is plotted as a function of the critical energy for different optimisation results : only optimising the dipole length (blue), only using a mirror quadrupole (orange), only using off-centered quadrupoles (green) and combining the mirror quadrupole with an earlier focusing (red).

Tab. 8.20 for the two optimum scenarios explained above: the optimum found for smallest synchrotron radiation power and the optimum for smallest critical energy of the emitted radiation. The values result from the optics studies of the previous sections. The presented gradients lead to a pole tip field of $B_p \approx 1.3$ T.

Half quadrupole parameter	Unit	Minimum synchrotron radiation power	Minimum critical energy
$\gamma\varepsilon_p$	mm·mrad	2.50	2.50
Gradient	T/m	48.2	50.7
Aperture radius	mm	27.0	25.6
Length	m	6.84	2.08

Table 8.20: Magnet gradient of the proposed half quadrupole for lowest synchrotron radiation power and lowest critical energy. An aperture of $15\sigma + 20\%$ beta-beating + 2 mm orbit tolerances has been assumed.

In both cases, the proton aperture radius has been chosen to include an orbit tolerance of 2 mm, a 10% tolerance on the beam size due to optics imperfections (beta-beating) and a beam size that corresponds to $n = 15\sigma$ for a proton beam normalised emittance $\varepsilon_p = 2.50\mu\text{m}$. A value that is comfortably larger than the requirements of the HL-LHC standard lattice. The injection proton optics has been taken into account and although it features a larger emittance it clearly fit in the aperture, see the red dashed line in Fig. 8.32. The electron beam and the non-colliding proton beam will pass through the field free region delimited by the mirror plate.

The aperture requirements inside the half quadrupole are determined on one side by the colliding proton beam optics in the main aperture of the magnet. The beam separation scheme and optics of electron and non-colliding proton beam on the other side have to fit into the field free region

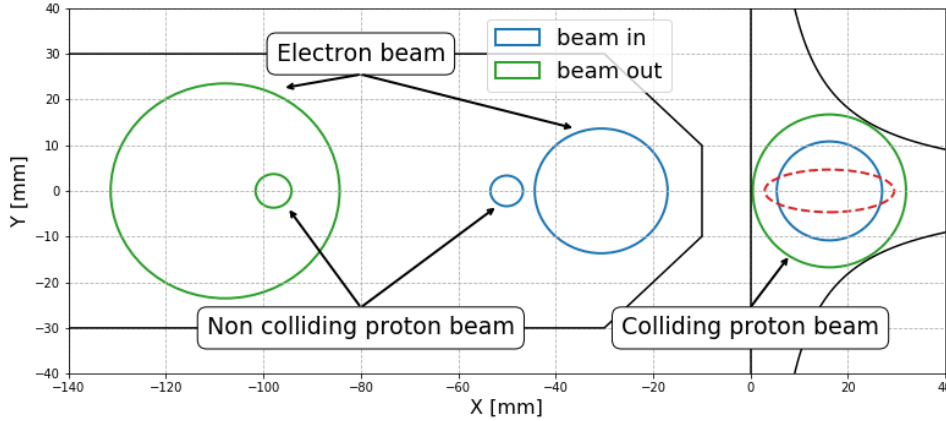


Figure 8.32: The position of the three beams at the entrance (blue) and exit (green) of the half quadrupole. The colliding proton beam is centered inside the main magnet aperture, while the second proton beam and the electrons are located in the field free region. The dashed red line represents the injection proton beam at the output of the half quadrupole.

beyond the mid plane of the mirror plate. As described below, a crossing angle of 7 mrad is assumed for the non-colliding protons. These requirements are illustrated in Fig. 8.32. For the case of smallest synchrotron radiation power, the three beams are plotted at the entrance and exit of the quadrupole lens. For both proton beams the beam size shown in the graph corresponds to 15 sigma plus 2 mm orbit tolerance and 10% beam size beating. Due to the mini-beta optics the colliding proton beam fills nearly the given aperture of the magnet. The non-colliding proton beam follows a relaxed optics with very limited aperture need. The envelope of the electron beam is shown for 20 σ beam size in both transverse planes.

In contrast to the proton half quadrupole, the doublet magnets of the early focusing scheme will house the three beams in one single aperture. In addition to the beam envelopes, the offset that has been chosen to provide the beam separation effect has to be taken into account and included in the aperture considerations.

In Fig. 8.33 the situation is visualised. On the left side the first off-center quadrupole (powered as focusing lens) is presented. Following the field direction, the electron beam is offset towards the outer side of the ring (right side of the plot) as defined by the proton beam closed orbit. The right part of the figure shows the second quadrupole (powered as defocusing lens) with the electron beam offset shifted to the other direction. In order to provide sufficient aperture for the three beams, an elliptical shape has been chosen for the vacuum chamber. It defines enough space for the beam envelopes and the off-centre design trajectories. The black ellipses correspond to the beams at the entrance of the magnet while the red shapes represent the beams at the exit. From left to right the three beams are respectively the non colliding proton beam (tiny circles), electron beam (squeezed ellipses) and the colliding proton beam. As defined before we refer to a beam size of 20 σ in case of the electrons and 15 sigma plus beta-beating plus 2 mm orbit tolerance for the colliding and non-colliding proton beam.

In this context it should be pointed out that the non-colliding proton beam, travelling in the same direction as the electrons, is shifted in time by half the bunch spacing. While the projected beam envelopes in Figs. 8.33 and 8.32 seem to overlap in the transverse plane, they are well separated by 12.5 ns, corresponding to 3.75 m, in the longitudinal direction.

The minimum required gradients and pole tip radius of the quadrupoles of the doublet are listed

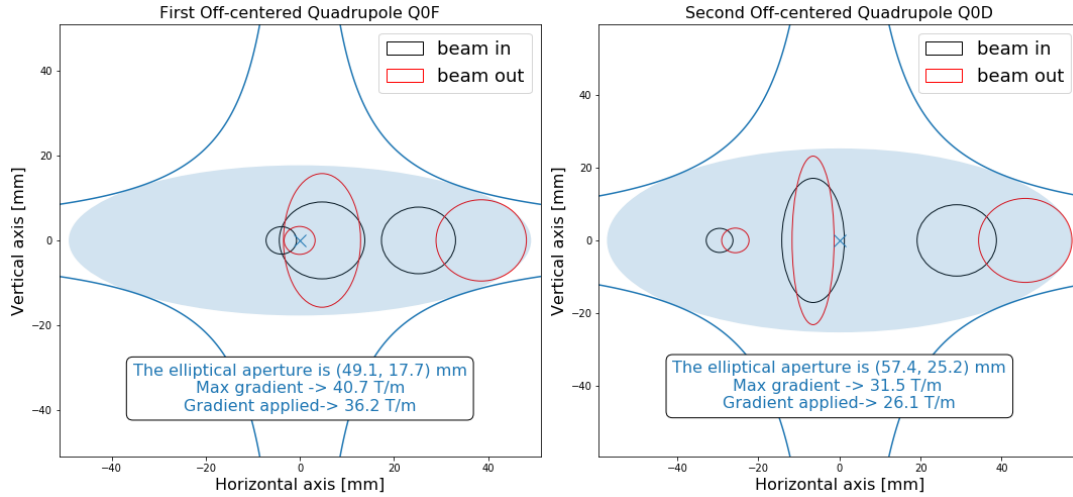


Figure 8.33: The position of the three beams at the entrance (black) and exit (red) of the electron doublet magnets. Following the internal convention, 15σ plus 20% beta beating plus 2 mm orbit tolerances beam envelopes are chosen for the proton beams. The beam size of the electrons refer to 20σ . From left to right the three beams are respectively the non colliding proton beam (tiny circles), electron beam (squeezed ellipses) and the colliding proton beam.

in Tab. 8.21. Following the increasing beam size after the IP, the two quadrupoles are optimised

Parameter	Unit	Q0F	Q0D
$\gamma\varepsilon_e$	mm-mrad	50	50
$\gamma\varepsilon_p$	mm-mrad	2.50	2.50
Max. gradient	T/m	36.2	26.1
Min. pole-tip radius	mm	28.9	38.1
Length	m	1.86	1.86

Table 8.21: Magnet gradient and pole tip aperture of the quadrupoles of the doublet for the synchrotron power optimum.

for sufficient free aperture for the colliding beams and their design orbits. Accordingly a different layout has been chosen for the magnets, to provide the best conditions for the radiation power and critical energy. An alternative approach has been studied, based on a single quadrupole design for both lenses of the doublet. While an optics solution still is possible, it does however not allow for minimum radiation power and sets more stringent requirements on the shielding and absorption of the synchrotron light fan.

The chromatic effect of the two lattice versions as a function of the momentum spread is shown in Fig. 8.35. The lattice based on a single dipole magnet and late focusing of the electron beam, shows an increase of the beta function of up 40% in the vertical plane for particles with a momentum deviation up to the design value of $\frac{\Delta p}{p} = 2.6 \cdot 10^{-4}$ (vertical cursor line in the graph) and a corresponding luminosity loss of 20% for those particles. The optimised design, based on the early focusing scheme, shows a much reduced chromatic effect and the resulting off-momentum beta-beating at the IP is limited to a few percent. As direct consequence the luminosity loss is well below the 1.5% level. A special local chromaticity correction scheme, therefore, dealing with the aberrations at IP, is thus not considered as necessary. Further studies will include the recirculation of the beam post-collision and the energy recovery performance and might nevertheless highlight the need of explicit sextupoles to mitigate the growing momentum

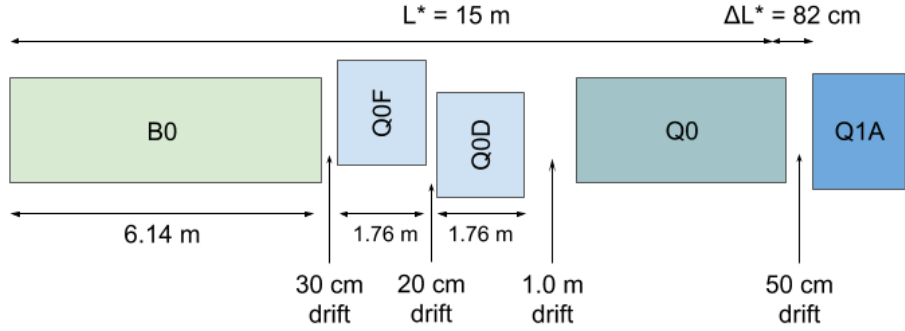


Figure 8.34: Possible optimised design featuring a 1.0 m drift between the off-centered quadrupoles and the half quadrupole in order to leave space for shielding material.

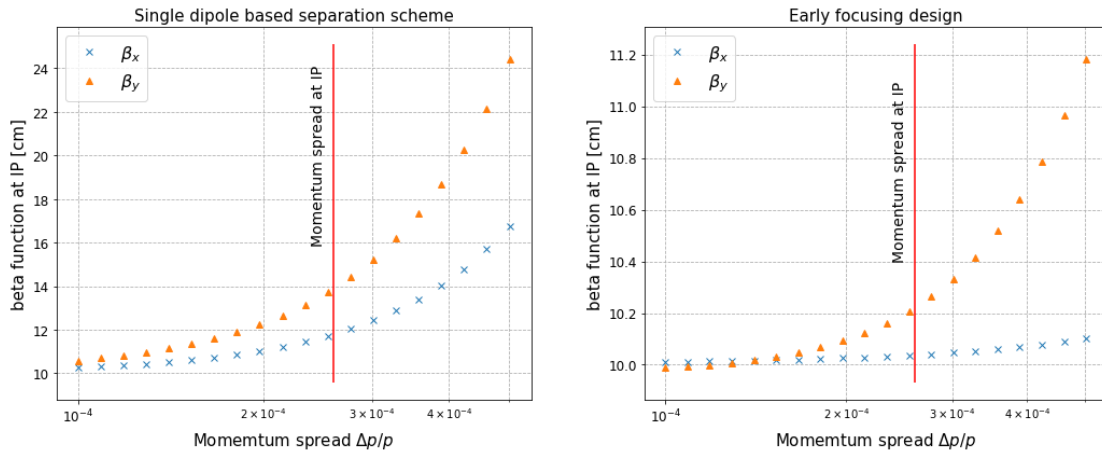


Figure 8.35: Beta function at the IP as a function of the momentum spread. Left : Situation for the single dipole based separation scheme. Right : With the design featuring an earlier focusing. The graphs show the increase of β^* due to the chromaticity of the lattice.

spread through the deceleration process and to avoid beam losses.

8.7.4 Interaction Region Magnet Design

Triplet Magnet Design

While the Q1 magnets remain in the range achievable with the well proven Nb-Ti superconductors, operated at 1.8 K, the Q2 magnets require Nb₃Sn technology at an operation temperature of 4.2 K. The working points on the load-line are given for both superconducting technologies in Fig. 8.37.

The thickness of a coil layer is limited by the flexural rigidity of the cable, which will make the coil-end design difficult. Therefore multi-layer coils must be considered. However, a thicker, multi-layer coil will increase the beam separation between the proton and the electron beams. The results of the field computation are given in Tab. 8.22. Unlike with the design proposed in the CDR of 2012 [551], the increased beam separation distance between the colliding proton beam and the electron beam makes it possible to neglect the fringe fields in the electron beam pipe. For the Q2 and Q3 magnets, the electron beam is outside of the quadrupole cold-mass

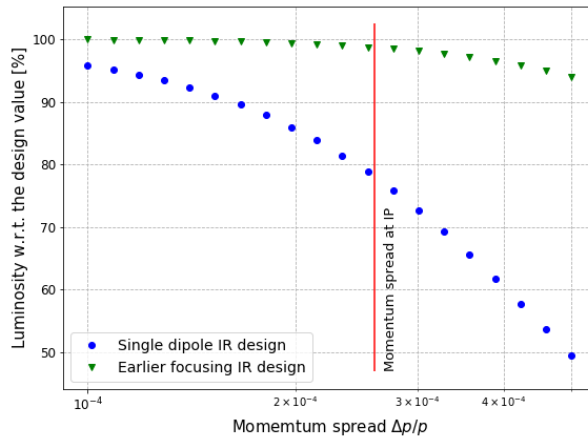


Figure 8.36: The resulting luminosity as a function of the momentum spread for the single dipole based separation scheme (blue circles) and the design featuring an earlier focusing (green triangles).

This figure is not referenced!

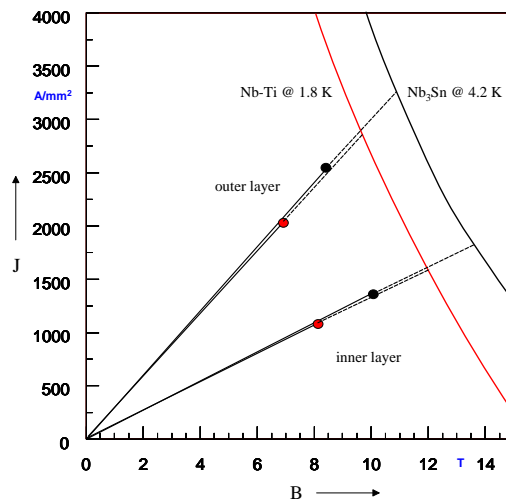


Figure 8.37: Working points on the load-line for both Nb-Ti and Nb₃Sn variants of Q1A.

and consequently, an HL-LHC inner-triplet magnet design can be adapted.

For the Nb₃Sn material we assume composite wire produced with the internal Sn process (Nb rod extrusions) [592]. The non-Cu critical current density is 2900 A/mm² at 12 T and 4.2 K. The filament size of 46 μm in Nb₃Sn strands give rise to higher persistent current effects in the magnet. The choice of Nb₃Sn would impose a considerable R&D and engineering design effort, which is however, not more challenging than other accelerator magnet projects, such as the HL-LHC.

The conceptual design of the mechanical structure of the Q1 magnets is shown in Fig. 8.38 (right). The necessary prestress in the coil-collar structure, which must be high enough to avoid unloading at full excitation, cannot be exerted with the stainless-steel collars alone. Two interleaved sets of yoke laminations (a large one comprising the area of the yoke keys and a smaller, floating lamination with no structural function) provide the necessary mechanical stability of the magnet during cooldown and excitation. Preassembled yoke packs are mounted around the collars and put under a hydraulic press, so that the keys can be inserted. The sizing

Magnet parameter	Unit	Magnet type			
		Q1A	Q1B	Q2 type	Q3 type
SC		Nb-Ti	Nb-Ti	Nb ₃ Sn	Nb ₃ Sn
R	mm	20	32	40	45
I_{nom}	A	7080	6260	7890	9260
g	T/m	252	164	186	175
LL	%	78	64	71	75
S_{beam}	mm	106-143	148-180	233-272	414-452

Table 8.22: type of superconductor (SC), field gradient (g), radius of the aperture (R , without coldbore and beam-screen), percentage on the load line of the superconductor material (LL), operational current (I_{nom}), beam separation distance (S_{beam}), **these are missing: fringe field in the aperture for the electron beam (B_{fringe}), gradient field in the aperture for the electron beam (g_{fringe}).** **Todo. Improve caption.**

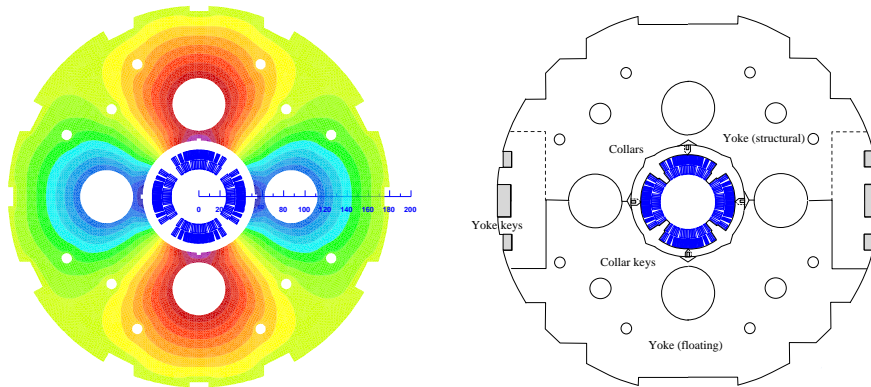


Figure 8.38: Conceptual design of the final focus septa Q1. Left: Magnetic vector potential (field lines). Right: Sketch of the mechanical structure.

of these keys and the amount of prestress before the cooldown will have to be calculated using mechanical FEM programs. This also depends on the elastic modulus of the coil, which has to be measured with a short-model equipped with pressure gauges. Special care must be taken to avoid nonallowed multipole harmonics because the four-fold symmetry of the quadrupole will not entirely be maintained.

For the Q2 and Q3 magnets, a HL-LHC inner triplet design using a bladder and key mechanical structure can be adapted.

Normal-Conducting Magnet Design

The proposed mini-beta doublet of the electron lattice, providing an early focusing of the beam, and the normal conducting proton-half quadrupole are new magnet concepts. These have been studied conceptually to determine their technical feasibility. The geometry of the QNC magnet is shown in Fig. 8.39 (left). Left of the mirror plate, the field free region will provide space for the electron beam and the non-colliding proton beam. The thickness of the mirror plate at the magnet mid-plane is 20 mm, allowing for sufficient mechanical stability at the minimal beam separation between the electron and proton beams.

Field calculations, using the magnet design code ROXIE [593] are presented in Fig. 8.39 (right). The achieved field gradient is 50 T/m for a current of 400 A, assuming a current density of

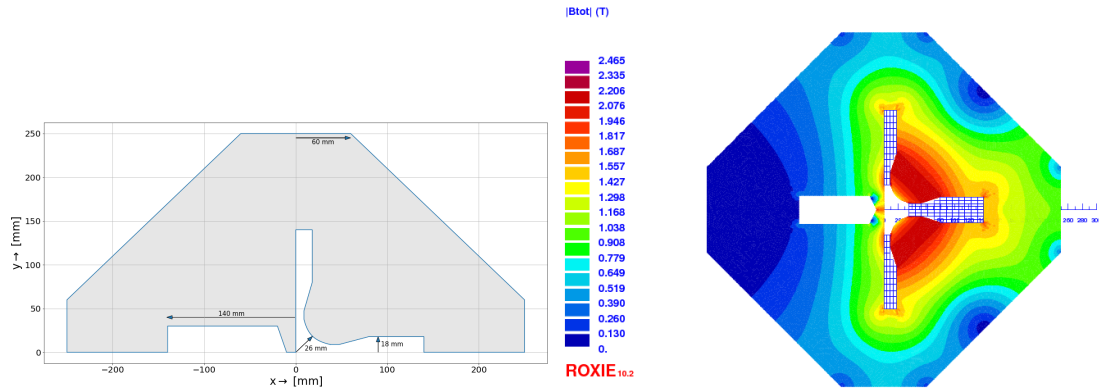


Figure 8.39: Left: Mechanical layout of the new half quadrupole for the proton beam. Right : Field distribution in the half quadrupole for the proton beam.

21.14 A/mm². This is in line with conductor geometries used for normal conducting magnets installed in the CERN injector complex, for example, ID: PXMQNDD8WC, which is rated at 860 A corresponding to 45.45 A/mm². A more comprehensive design study must also include a further reduction of the multipole field components.

The geometry of the Q0F and Q0D quadrupoles are given in Fig. 8.33 and the main specifications are provided in Tab. 8.21. A maximum magnetic field of 1.2 T at the pole tip is well within reach for a normal conducting quadrupole.

8.8 Civil Engineering

Since the beginning of the LHeC concept, various shapes and sizes of the eh collider were studied around CERN region. The conceptual design report published in 2012 focused primarily on two main options, namely the Ring-Ring and the Linac-Ring. For civil engineering, these options were studied taking into account geology, construction risks, land features as well as technical constrains and operation of the LHC. The Linac-Ring configuration was selected as preferred due to higher achievable luminosity. This chapter describes the civil engineering infrastructure required for an Energy Recovery Linac (ERL) injecting into the ALICE cavern at Point 2 LHC. Fig. 8.40 shows three options of different sizes proposed for the ERL, represented as fractions of the LHC circumference, respectively 1/3, 1/4 and 1/5 of the LHC circumference.

8.8.1 Placement and Geology

The proposed siting for the LHeC is in the North-Western part of the Geneva region at the existing CERN laboratory. The proposed Interaction Region is fully located within existing CERN land at LHC Point 2, close to the village of St. Genis, in France. The CERN area is extremely well suited to housing such a large project, with well understood ground conditions having several particle accelerators in the region for over 50 years. Extensive geological records exist from previous projects such as LEP and LHC and more recently, further ground investigations have been undertaken for the High-Luminosity LHC project. Any new underground structures will be constructed in the stable molasse rock at a depth of 100–150 m in an area with low seismic activity.

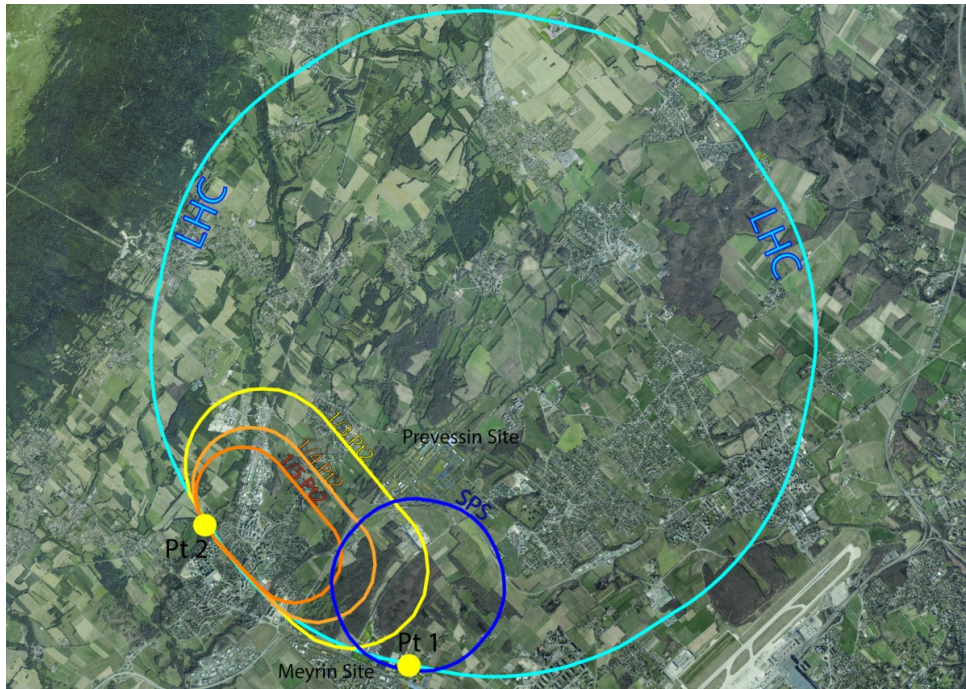


Figure 8.40: Racetrack options proposed for LHeC at Point 2 LHC. The color coding illustrated different options with 1/3, 1/4 and 1/5 of the LHC circumference, resulting in different electron beam energies.

The LHeC is situated within the Geneva basin, a sub-basin of the large molassic plateau (Fig. 8.41). The molasse formed from the erosion of the Alps and it is a weak sedimentary rock. It comprises of alternating layers of marls and sandstones (and formations of intermediate compositions), which show a high variety of strength parameters [594]. The molasse is overlaid by the Quaternary glacial moraines. A simplified geological profile of the LHC is shown in Fig. 8.42. Although placed mainly within the molasse plateau, one sector of the LHC is situated in the Jura limestone.

The physical positioning of the LHeC has been developed based on the assumption that the maximum underground volume should be placed within the molasse rock and should avoid as much as possible any known geological faults or environmentally sensitive areas. Stable and dry, the molasse is considered a suitable rock type for TBM excavation. In comparison, CERN has experienced significant issues with the underground construction of sector 3-4 in the Jura limestone. There were major issues with water ingress at and behind the tunnel face [595]. Another challenging factor for limestone is the presence of karsts. These are formed by chemical weathering of the rock and often they are filled with water and sediment, which can lead to infiltration and instability of the excavation.

The ERL will be positioned inside the LHC Ring, in order to ensure that new surface facilities are located on existing CERN land. The proposed underground structures for a Large Hadron electron Collider (LHeC) at high luminosity aiming for an electron beam energy of 60 GeV is shown in Fig. 8.43. The LHeC tunnel will be tilted similarly to the LHC at a slope of 1.4% to follow a suitable layer of molasse rock.

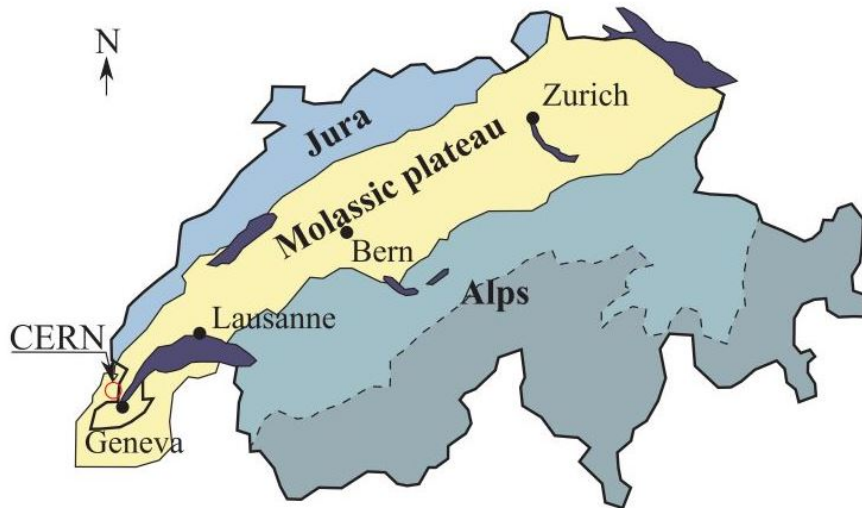


Figure 8.41: Simplified map of Swiss geology.

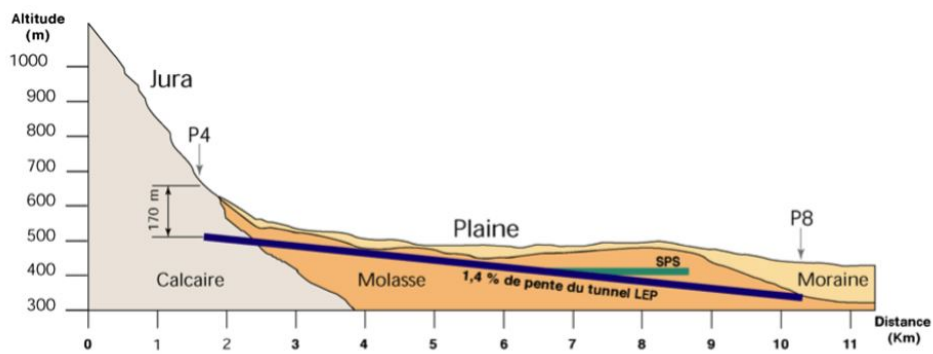


Figure 8.42: Geological profile of the LHC tunnel.

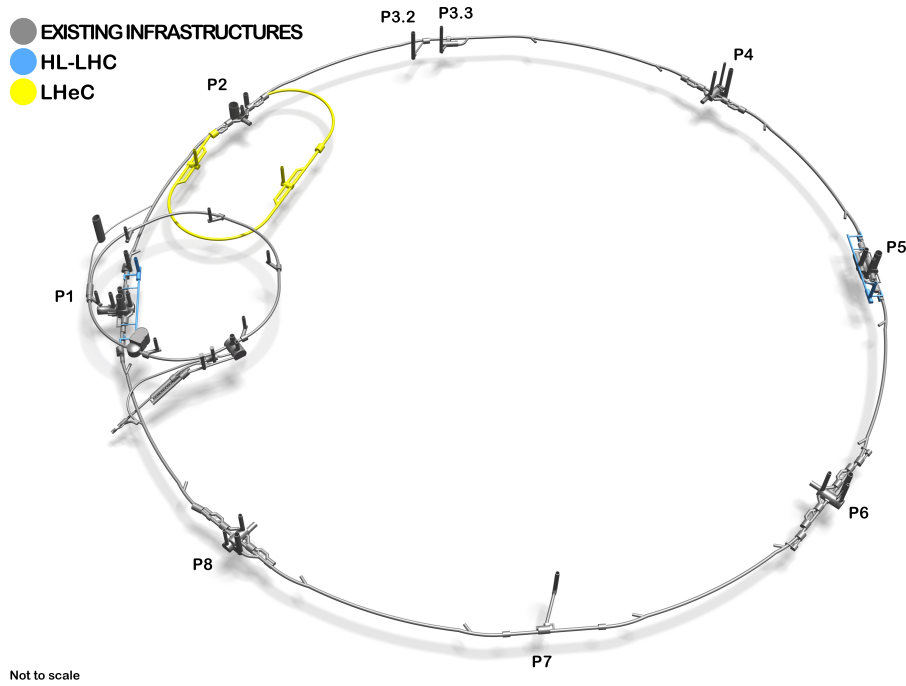


Figure 8.43: 3D Schematic showing proposed underground structures of LHeC (shown in yellow). The HL-LHC structures are highlighted in blue.

8.8.2 Underground infrastructure

The underground structures proposed for LHeC option 1/3 LHC require a tunnel approximately 9 km long of 5.5 m diameter, including two LINACs. Parallel to the main LINAC tunnels, at 10 m distance apart, there are the RF galleries, each 1070 m long. Waveguides of 1 m diameter are connecting the RF galleries and LHeC main tunnel. These structures are listed in Tab. 8.23. Two additional caverns, 25 m wide and 50 m long are required for cryogenics and technical

Structure	Quantities	Span [m]	1/3 LHC	1/5 LHC
			Length [m]	Length [m]
Machine tunnels	-	5.5	9091	5400
Service caverns	2	25	50	50
Service shafts	2	9	80	80
Injection caverns	1	25	50	50
Dump cavern	1	16.8	90	90
Junction caverns	3	16.8	20	20
RF galleries	2	5.5	1070	830
Waveguide connections	50	1	10	10
Connection tunnels	4	3	10	10

Table 8.23: List of underground structures for LHeC for two different options with 1/3 or 1/5 of the LHC circumference.

services. These are connected to the surface via two 9 m diameter shafts, provided with lifts to allow access for equipment and personnel. Additional caverns are needed to house injection facilities and a beam dump. The underground structures proposed for LHeC option 1/5 LHC are the same as for 1/3 option with the exception of the main tunnel which would be 5.4 km

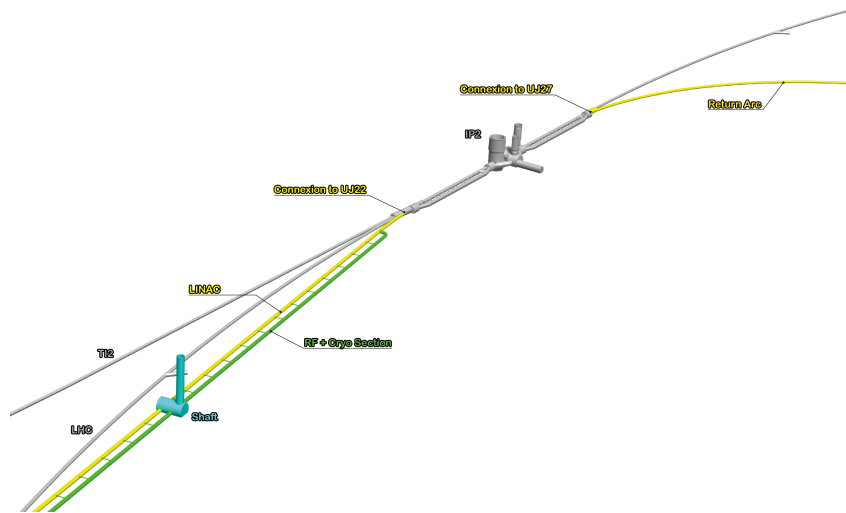


Figure 8.44: ERL injection area into IP2 and junction cavern

long connected to RF galleries, each 830 m long.

In addition to the new structures, the existing LHC infrastructure also requires modifications. To ensure connection between LHC and LHeC tunnels, the junction caverns UJ22 and UJ27 need to be enlarged (Fig. 8.44). Localised parts of the cavern and tunnel lining will be broken out to facilitate the excavation of the new spaces and the new connections, requiring temporary support.

Infrastructure works for LEP were completed in 1989, for which a design lifespan of 50 years was specified. If LHC is to be upgraded with a higher energy, refurbishment and maintenance works are needed to re-use the existing infrastructure.

Shaft locations were chosen such that the surface facilities are located on CERN land. The scope for surface sites is still to be defined. New facilities are envisaged for housing technical services such as cooling and ventilation, cryogenics and electrical distribution.

8.8.3 Construction Methods

A Tunnel Boring Machines (TBM) would be utilised for the excavation of the main tunnel to achieve the fastest construction. When ground conditions are good and the geology is consistent, TBMs can be two to four times faster than conventional methods. A double shield TBM could be employed, installing pre-cast segments as primary lining, and injection grouting behind the lining.

For the excavation of the shafts, caverns and connection tunnels, conventional techniques could be used. Similar construction methods used during HL-LHC construction can be adopted for LHeC, for example using roadheaders and rockbreakers. Some of these machinery could be seen in Fig. 8.45 showing the excavation works at point 1 HL-LHC. One main constraint that dictated what equipment to be used for the HL-LHC excavation, was the vibration limit. Considering the sensitivity of the beamline, diesel excavators have been modified and equipped with an electric motor in order to reduce vibrations that could disrupt LHC operation. A similar equipment could also be needed for LHeC if construction works are carried out during operation of the LHC.



Figure 8.45: Left: Roadheader being used for shaft excavation at HL-LHC Point 1. Right: Rockbreaker used for cavern excavation at HL-LHC Point 1.

Existing boreholes data around IP2 shows that the moraines layer can be 25–35 m deep before reaching the molasse. Temporary support of the excavation, for example using diaphragm walls is recommended. Once reaching a stable ground in dry conditions, common excavation methods can be adopted. The shaft lining will consist of a primary layer of shotcrete with rockbolts and an in-situ reinforced concrete secondary lining, with a waterproofing membrane in between the two.

8.8.4 Cost estimates

A detailed cost estimate was prepared for a 9.1 km ERL located at Point 2 of LHC, using the same measure prices as for FCC. More recently for LHeC, the cost figures were adapted to fit the smaller version, the 5.4 km racetrack at point 2 (option 1/5 LHC).

The civil engineering costs amount to about 25% of the total project costs. In particular, for a 9.1 km ERL (1/3 LHC option) the civil engineering was estimated to 386 MCHF and for a 5.4 km configuration (1/5 LHC) the costs is 289 MCHF. These estimates include the fees for preliminary design, approvals and tender documents (12%), site investigations (2%) and contractor's profit (3%). The costs mentioned do not include surface structures. Where possible, existing surface infrastructure will be re-used.

Chapter 9

Technology of ERL and PERLE

9.1 Energy Recovery Linac Technology - Status and Prospects

In instances where high beam power is required, the concept of energy recovery presents an attractive solution. Energy recovering linacs (ERLs) are a class of novel accelerators which are uniquely qualified to meet the demands for a wide variety of applications by borrowing features from traditional architectures to generate linac quality beams with near storage ring efficiency [596]. After acceleration through a linac section, the electrons in an ERL are returned 180° out of phase with respect to the radio frequency (RF) accelerating field for energy recovery. The beam deposits energy into cavity fields, which can then accelerate newly injected bunches, thereby effectively canceling the beam loading effects of the accelerated beam. Therefore ERLs can accelerate very high average currents with only modest amounts of RF power. Because the beam is constantly being renewed, it never reaches an equilibrium state. Consequently this provides flexibility to manipulate the phase space and tailor the beam properties for a specific application. Further, since the energy of the decelerated beam is approximately equal to the injection energy, the dump design becomes considerably easier.

9.1.1 ERL Applications

Historically, nearly all ERLs built and operated were used to drive a free-electron laser (FEL). The requirement for high peak current bunches necessitated bunch compression and handling the attendant beam dynamical challenges. In recent years, ERLs have turned from being drivers of light sources toward applications for nuclear physics experiments, Compton backscattering sources and strong electron cooling. Unlike an FEL, these latter use cases require long, high charge bunches with small energy spread. Where once a short bunch length was the key performance metric, now there is a premium on maintaining a small correlated energy spread (with a commensurately long bunch).

9.1.2 Challenges

Energy recovery linacs are not without their own set of challenges. In the following sections a brief survey of some of the most relevant are given. These include collective effects, such as space charge, the multipass beam breakup (BBU) instability, coherent synchrotron radiation (CSR) and the microbunching instability (μ BI), beam dynamic issues such as halo, the interaction of

the beam with the RF system and other environmental impedances as well as issues related to common transport lines.

Space Charge

The role of space charge forces (both transverse and longitudinal) often dictate many operational aspects of the machine. Maintaining beam brightness during the low energy injection stage is vitally important. In addition to the low energy, ERL injectors must also preserve beam quality through the merger system that directs the beam to the linac axis. Once injected into the linac, the beam energy at the front end is often still low enough that space charge forces cannot be neglected. Just as important is the longitudinal space charge (LSC) force which manifests itself by an energy spread asymmetry about the linac on-crest phase [597]. The LSC wake acts to accelerate the head of the bunch while decelerating the tail. Operating on the rising part of the waveform leads to a decrease in the correlated energy spread, while accelerating on the falling side leads to an increase. These observations inform where acceleration, and how the longitudinal match, is performed.

Beam Breakup Instability

The beam breakup instability is initiated when a beam bunch passes through an RF cavity off-axis, thereby exciting dipole higher-order modes (HOMs). The magnetic field of an excited mode deflects following bunches traveling through the cavity. Depending on the details of the machine optics, the deflection produced by the mode can translate into a transverse displacement at the cavity after recirculation. The recirculated beam induces, in turn, an HOM voltage which depends on the magnitude and direction of the beam displacement. Thus, the recirculated beam completes a feedback loop which can become unstable if the average beam current exceeds the threshold for stability [598]. Beam breakup is of particular concern in the design of high average current ERLs utilizing superconducting RF (SRF) technology. If not sufficiently damped by the HOM couplers, dipole modes with quality factors several orders of magnitude higher than in normal conducting cavities can exist, providing a threat for BBU to develop. For single pass ERLs, beam optical suppression techniques – namely, interchanging the horizontal and vertical phase spaces to break the feedback loop between the beam and the offending HOM – are effective at mitigating BBU [599].

Coherent Synchrotron Radiation

Coherent synchrotron radiation poses a significant challenge for accelerators utilizing high brightness beams. When a bunch travels along a curved orbit, fields radiated from the tail of the bunch can overtake and interact with the head. Rather than the more conventional class of head-tail instabilities where the tail is affected by the actions of the head, CSR is a tail-head instability. The net result is that the tail loses energy while the head gains energy leading to an undesirable redistribution of particles in the bunch. Because the interaction takes place in a region of dispersion, the energy redistribution is correlated with the transverse positions in the bend plane and can lead to projected emittance growth. While there has been much progress in recent years to undo the effects of CSR in the bend plane with an appropriate choice of beam optics [600], it is more difficult to undo the gross longitudinal distortion caused by the CSR wake. This is particularly true in applications where the intrinsic energy spread is small and/or where the

effect can accumulate over multiple recirculations. One possible mitigation is shielding the CSR wake using an appropriately sized beam pipe [601].

Microbunching Instability

Microbunching develops when an initial density modulation, either from shot noise or from the drive laser, is converted to energy modulations through short-range wakefields such as space charge and CSR. The energy modulations are then transformed back to density modulations through the momentum compaction of the lattice. Danger arises when a positive feedback is formed and the initial modulations are enhanced. This phenomenon has been studied extensively, both theoretically and experimentally, in bunch compressor chicanes [602, 603]. Only recently has there been a concerted effort to study the microbunching instability in recirculating arcs [604–606]. Because the beam is subject to space charge and/or CSR throughout an ERL, density modulations can be converted to energy modulations. And because of the native momentum compaction of the lattice (in arcs, spreaders/recombiners, chicanes, etc.) those energy modulations may be converted back to density modulations. Therefore, ERLs offer potentially favorable conditions for seeding the microbunching instability, which requires careful attention in the early design stages.

Halo

Halo is defined as the relatively diffuse and potentially irregularly distributed components of beam phase space that can reach large amplitudes. It is of concern because ERL beams are manifestly non-Gaussian and can have beam components of significant intensity beyond the beam core [607]. Though sampling large amplitudes, halo responds to the external focusing of the accelerator transport system in a predictable manner. It is therefore not always at large spatial amplitude, but will at some locations instead be small in size but strongly divergent. Halo can therefore present itself as *hot spots* in a beam distribution, and thus may be thought of as a lower-intensity, co-propagating beam that is mismatched to the core beam focusing, timing, and energy. Beam loss due to halo scraping is perhaps the major operational challenge for higher-power ERLs. Megawatt-class systems must control losses at unshielded locations to better than 100 parts-per-million to stay within facility radiation envelopes. Scaling to 100 MW suggests that control must be at the part-per-million level. This has been demonstrated – but only at specific locations within an ERL [608].

RF Transients

Dynamic loading due to incomplete energy recovery is an issue for all ERLs [609]. In some machines it is due to unintentional errors imposed on the energy recovered beam; for instance, path length errors in large-scale systems. In other machines, such as high power ERL-based FEL drivers, it is done intentionally. In cases where there is the potential for rapid changes in the relative phase of the energy recovered beam, dynamic loading would be difficult to completely control using fast tuners. In such cases adequate headroom in the RF power will have to be designed into the system. These transient beam-loading phenomena are widely unrecognized and/or neglected. RF drive requirements for an ERL are often viewed as *minimal*, because in steady-state operation the recovered beam notionally provides RF power for acceleration. It has however been operationally established that RF drive requirements for ERLs are defined

not by the steady-state, but rather by beam transients and environmental/design factors such as microphonics [610]. As a result, the RF power required for stable ERL operation can differ dramatically from naïve expectations.

Wakefields and Interaction of Beam with Environment

As with other system architectures intended to handle high-brightness beams, ERLs can be performance-limited by wakefield effects. Not only can beam quality be compromised by interaction of the beam with environmental impedances, there is also significant potential for localized power deposition in beamline components. Resistive wall and RF heating have proven problematic during ERL operation in the past [611]. Extrapolation of this experience to higher bunch charges and beam powers leads to serious concern regarding heating effects. Careful analysis and management of system component impedances is required.

Multi-turn, Common Transport

Future systems must evolve to utilize multiple turns; it is a natural cost optimization method [612] and multi-turn systems can in principle provide performance equal to that of 1-pass up/down ERLs at significantly lower cost. In addition to the use of multiple turns, cost control motivates use of extended lengths of common transport, in which both accelerated and recovered passes are handled simultaneously using the same beam lines. This presents unique challenges for high energy ERLs, like LHeC in particular, where energy loss due to synchrotron radiation cannot be ignored and causes an energy mismatch for common transport lines. But addressing these challenges will open up exciting new opportunities for ERLs. In addition to PERLE and LHeC, a multi-turn ERL design from Daresbury illustrates the manner in which the cost/complexity optimum lies toward shorter linacs, more turns, and multiple beams in fewer beam lines [613]. This also drives the use of multiple turns in stacking rings for hadron cooling; the more turns the cooling beam can be utilized, the lower the current required from the driver ERL, which mitigates challenges associated with source lifetime [614].

9.1.3 ERL Landscape

One way to view the current state of ERLs globally is the so-called *ERL landscape* shown in Fig. 9.1 [615]. Every data point represents a machine that demonstrated energy recovery and is positioned in (maximum) energy and (average) current parameter space. For clarity, the plot is restricted to continuous-wave (CW), SRF-based ERLs only and includes legacy machines, those under construction and currently in operation as well as the LHeC and PERLE (proposed). The size of the marker is indicative of the charge per bunch while a black line around the marker indicates it was/is a *true ERL*. That is, where the beam power exceeds the installed RF power (they are represented in the plot by the three FEL drivers that were designed, built, commissioned and operated at Jefferson Laboratory).

A cursory look at Fig. 9.1 illustrates several of the challenges facing the next generation of ERLs. While getting from the current state-of-the-art to the LHeC requires only a modest increase in average current, it requires a significant increase in bunch charge and addressing the consequent collective effects [616]. Most significantly, however, is the leap in energy from systems that have operated in the 100 MeV range to several tens of GeV. Note that PERLE is strategically positioned to address incremental changes in both average current, bunch charge

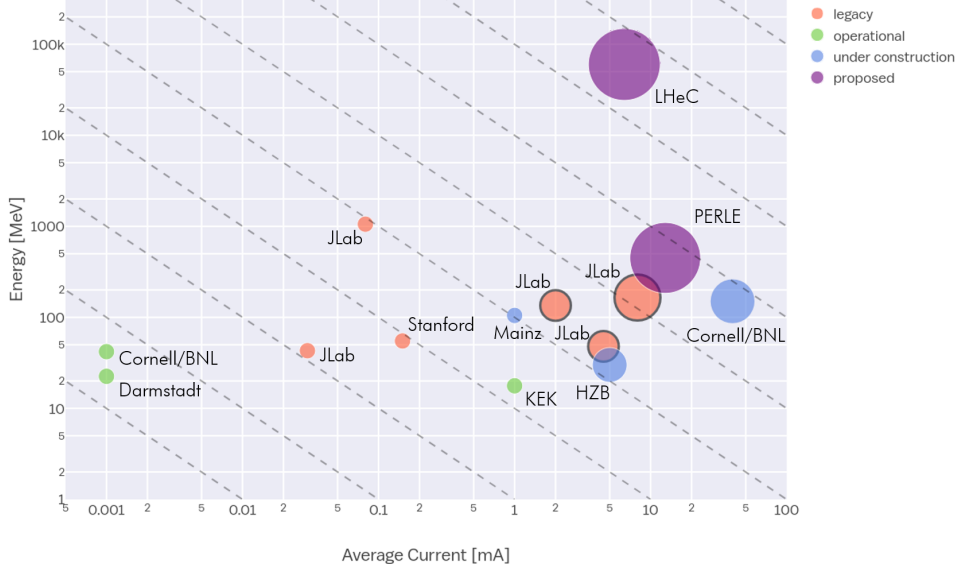


Figure 9.1: The *ERL landscape*, where data points are restricted to CW, SRF-based ERLs. The dashed lines represent lines of constant beam power – starting from 10 W in the lower left and going to 10 GW in the upper right. Note that both axes use a log scale.

and energy. As such, it provides a convenient test bed facility to address the issues described previously [617]. Several ERLs are still in the nascent stages and as they ramp up beam power, will also be valuable in advancing the state-of-the-art. For instance, though it uses a Fixed Field Alternating Gradient (FFAG) arc, the Cornell/Brookhaven ERL Test Accelerator (CBETA) will address multi-turn energy recovery for the first time in an SRF system [618]. Note that with only minor modifications Jefferson Laboratory’s Continuous Electron Beam Accelerator Facility (CEBAF) could be operated with multi-pass energy recovery at several GeV using common transport with the same topology as LHeC (i.e. bisected linacs of equal energy gain with arcs vertically separated by energy using spreaders and recombiners) [619].

9.2 PERLE

Chapter 10

Experimentation at the LHeC

10.1 Introduction

The LHeC Conceptual Design Report [1] contained a very detailed description of a core detector concept for the LHeC. At the time of writing, the target luminosity was of order $10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ and, whilst evidence was building, the Higgs boson had yet to be discovered. A detector design based on established technologies either in use by the LHC General Purpose Detectors or being developed for their upgrades was found to be adequate to realise the physics priorities of the project at the time and could comply with the *ep* machine constraints at an affordable cost, provided the angular acceptance was sufficient (nominally to within 1° of the beamline).

This chapter provides a short overview of a revised detector design, with more detail on those aspects which have been substantially updated since the 2012 version (notably the central tracking). To a large extent, the considerations in the CDR are still valid and are taken forward here. However, this update also profits from the evolution of the design in the subsequent years in light of changes in the experiment's interaction region and running conditions, the updated and longer term physics priorities with the higher achievable luminosities, and also introduces new technologies where they are becoming available. In more detail, the major considerations which motivate an update of the detector with respect to the 2012 baseline are:

- The design instantaneous luminosity has been extended considerably. The increased luminosity to the level of $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ translates into a higher pile-up, reaching a maximum of around 5, compared with 0.1 previously. Whilst this is still far from the values of order 200 planned for the HL-LHC, it still has implications in terms of unfolding the hardest scattering processes from multiple overlaid minimum bias events, in particular pushing the design towards higher granularity. It also requires a reassessment of radiation hardness requirements, including the use of more radiation hard detectors in specific regions.
- The increased luminosity and the confirmation of a Higgs boson discovery at a mass of around 125 GeV open new opportunities for the LHeC to provide a set of precision measurements of Higgs properties, in particular, percent-level measurements of many of its couplings. The possibility of obtaining world-leading measurements of couplings to beauty and charm place a heavy emphasis on the inner tracking and vertexing. The tracking region has therefore been extended radially. The requirement to maximise the acceptance for Higgs decays places an even heavier requirement on angular coverage than was the case in 2012, with forward tracking and vertexing being of particular importance.

- The fast development of detector technologies and related infrastructure in some areas necessitates a fresh look at the optimum choices. Most notably, silicon detector technologies have advanced rapidly in response to both commercial and particle physics requirements. The low material budget and potential high granularity and radiation hardness offered by monolithic active pixel sensor (MAPS) solutions such as HV-CMOS are particularly attractive and can reasonably be assumed to be in wide use in future particle physics collider detector contexts.
- There have been changes in the interaction region and the shape and nature of the magnetic fields in which the LHeC detector is required to operate. In particular, the dipole field, required to steer the electron beam and allow for head-on collisions, permeates the inner parts of the detector throughout its longitudinal extent, bringing corresponding challenges.
- The long term, high energy, high luminosity world collider physics program, including FCC and possibilities in the Far East as well as the ultimate use of the LHC in pp mode for two more decades, will require precise, independent, measurements to determine PDFs over an even wider range of x and Q^2 than has previously been possible. The implication for the LHeC is a need to further improve and extend the detector acceptance and performance, especially in the forward region.
- Options in which the LHeC center of mass energy is increased require a further reinforcement of the detector design in the forward (outgoing proton) direction, increasing the overall size of the detector. In particular the calorimetry depth scales so as to fully contain particles from very high energy forward-going hadronic showers and to allow for precise measurements of actual and missing energy.

The design described in the following addresses the points above, leading to a somewhat revised and more ambitious baseline tracking detector design than was the case in 2012. Whilst they are both realisable in terms of technology readiness, in some sense the 2012 and 2020 versions can be considered as two example solutions to the LHeC detector needs, towards the lower and higher ends of the spectrum of performance and cost, respectively. The design is performed using the DD4HEP [620] framework.

The updated detector requirements point towards the need for higher spatial resolution, improved precision in energy and momentum measurements and enhanced primary and secondary vertexing capabilities. The design must be optimised for accurate measurements of hadronic jets and missing transverse energy, as well as isolated charged and neutral particle production. Both the overall event kinematics (much larger proton than electron beam energy) and the specific acceptance requirements for the key Higgs production process imply an asymmetric design with enhanced hadronic final state detection capabilities in the forward direction (i.e. at low azimuthal angles θ). A dipole magnet bends the electron beam into head-on collision with the colliding proton beam and after the interaction point a further dipole with opposite polarity separates the orbits of the electron and proton beam. These weak bending dipoles are placed outside of the tracker and electromagnetic calorimeter regions. The resulting synchrotron radiation fan has to be given free space and the beam pipe geometry is designed specifically to accommodate it. The residual synchrotron radiation background requires an advanced detector layout such that all components can tolerate the load.

10.2 Overview of Main Detector Elements

A side projection overview of the revised detector design is shown in figure 10.1, illustrating the main detector components. The overall size remains compact by recent standards, with overall dimensions of approximately 13 m in length and 9 m in diameter, small compared with ATLAS (45×25 m) and even CMS (21×15 m). The inner silicon tracker contains a central barrel component ('Tracker'), with additional disks in the forward and backward directions ('Tracker Fwd' and 'Tracker Bwd', respectively). It is surrounded at larger radii by the Electromagnetic Barrel ('EMC-Barrel') and in the forward and backward directions by the electromagnetic forward and backward plug calorimeters ('FEC-Plug-Fwd' and 'BEC-Plug-Bwd', respectively). The solenoid magnet is placed at radii immediately outside the EMC-Barrel, and is housed in a cryostat, which it shares with the weak dipole, which is required by the machine to achieve head-on collisions of the electron beam with the colliding proton beam. The Hadronic-Barrel calorimeter (HCAL-Barrel) is located at radii beyond the solenoid and dipole, whilst the forward and backward hadronic plug detectors (FHC-Plug-Fwd and BHC-Plug-Bwd, respectively) lie beyond their electromagnetic counterparts in the longitudinal coordinate.

The Muon Detector forms a near-hermetic envelope around all other parts of the main detector. It has a mixture of triggering and measurement-focused layers using similar technologies to those employed by ATLAS, as described in the 2012 CDR. It is not discussed further here.

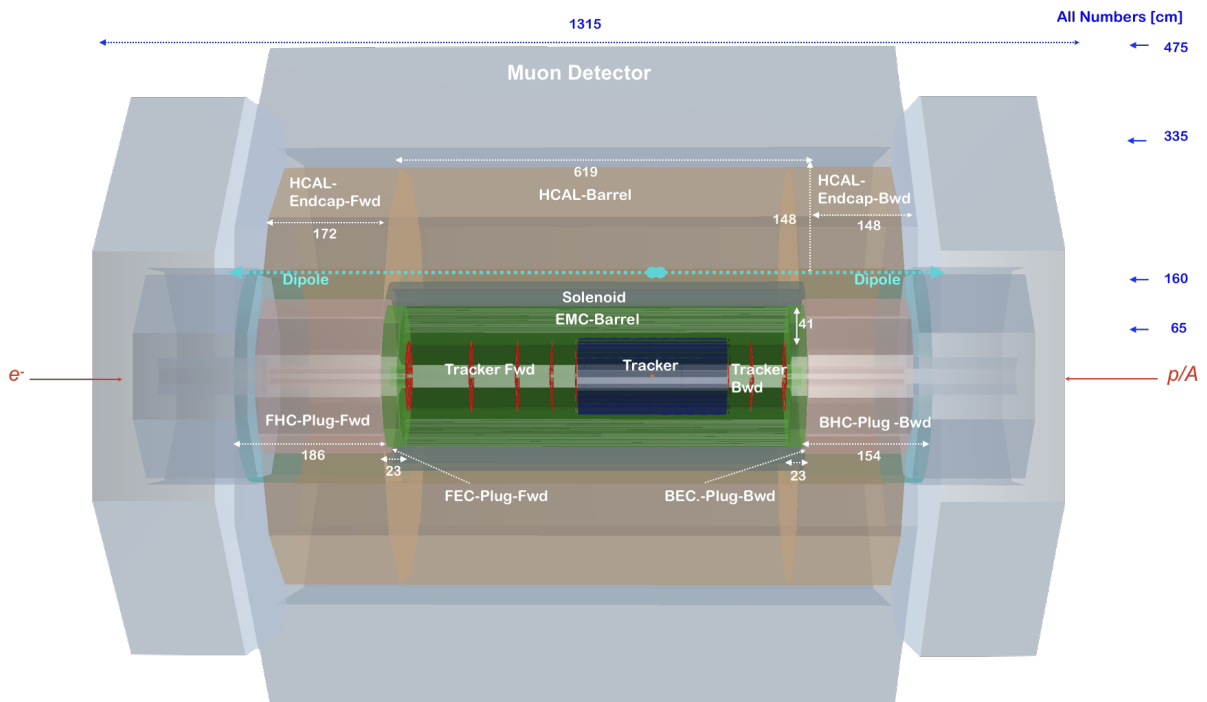


Figure 10.1: Side view of the new baseline LHeC detector concept, providing an overview of the main detector components and their locations. See text for details.

A magnified view of the inner part of the detector, including the magnet elements, is shown in figure 10.2. The solenoid and steering dipoles enclose the electromagnetic calorimeters and the tracker setup completely, the steering dipoles extending over the full 10 m length of the inner detector and forward and backward plugs. If liquid argon is chosen for the sensitive material in the EMC as in the 2012 design, the EMC will be mounted inside the cryostat, alongside the solenoid and dipoles. The hadronic calorimeter components remain outside the cryostat and

magnet elements under all circumstances.

PRN - DID THE MAGNET DESIGN CHANGE RELATIVE TO 2012? IF SO, DO WE HAVE A FIELD MAP ETC (CF FIG 12.13, 12.14 OF THE CDR)?

PRN - WHAT ARE THE STRENGTHS OF THE MAGNETS AND CAN WE GIVE DETAIL ON THE CRYO? IN TALKS I WRITE 0.15 - 0.3T FOR THE DIPOLES AND 3.5T (NbTi/Cu) FOR THE SOLENOID, IN 4.6K LIQUID HELIUM.

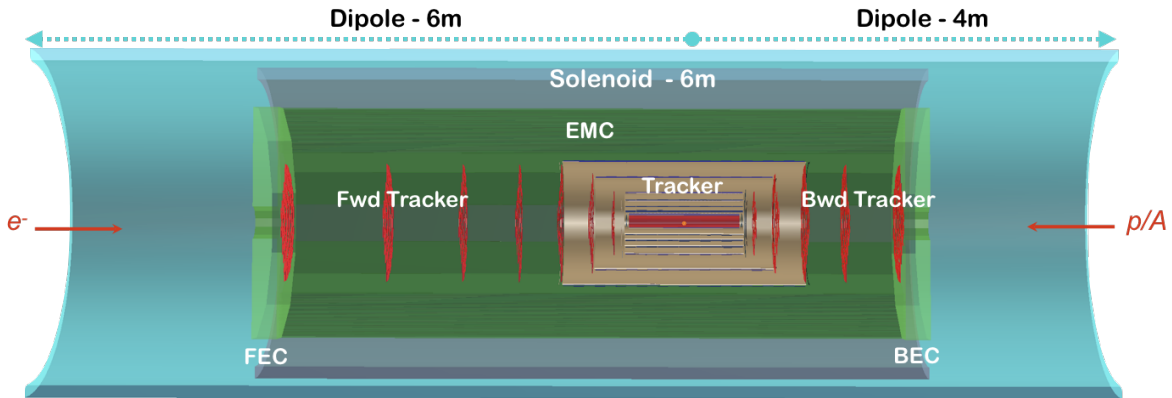


Figure 10.2: Zoomed side projection of the central part of the updated detector design, illustrating the solenoid and electron-beam-steering dipoles. See text for further details

PRN: IS THE BEAMPIPE DESIGN AS PER THE 2012 CDR? I ASSUMED SO IN THE BELOW.

Exploiting the current state of the art, the beam pipe is constructed of beryllium of 2.5 – 3 mm thickness. As in the 2012 CDR, the beam pipe has an asymmetric shape in order to accommodate the synchrotron radiation fan from the dipole magnets. It is thus 2.2 cm distant from the interaction region, except in the outer rear direction of the synchrotron fan, where it is increased to 10.0 cm with a semi-elliptical profile. The beam pipe shape has implications for the design of the inner detector components, as illustrated in figure 10.3. The first layer of the barrel tracker follows the circular-elliptical beam pipe shape as closely as possible, with the profiles of subsequent layers reverting to a circular geometry.

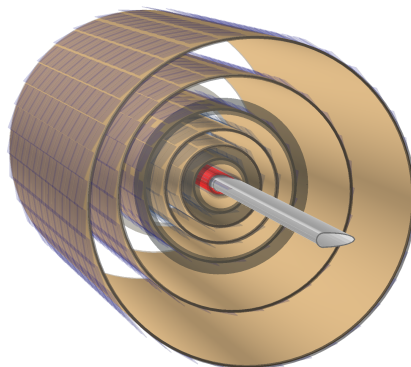


Figure 10.3: End-on view of the arrangement of the inner barrel tracker layers around the beam pipe.

10.3 Inner Tracking

A schematic view of the updated tracking region is shown in figure 10.4. The layouts in the central, forward and backward directions have been separately optimised using the tkLayout performance estimation tool for silicon trackers [621]. The result is seven concentric barrel layers with the innermost layer approximately 3 cm from the beam line and approximately equal radial spacing thereafter, supplemented by seven forward wheels and five backward wheels of which, respectively, four and two are mounted beyond the central tracker enclosure.

HV-CMOS MAPS sensors are employed, restricting dead material associated with the sensors to 0.1 mm. The strip detector sensors have a larger thickness of 0.2 mm. The exact silicon solutions chosen change with radial distance from the interaction point, so as to provide the highest spatial resolution in the layers closest to the interaction point. The barrel is formed from one layer of pixel-wafers, with three layers of macro-pixels between 10 cm and 30 cm and a further three layers of strip-sensors beyond 30 cm. Full details of the different layers, including the technologies used and mounting strategy, are given in the tables in figure 10.5.

PRN CAN WE GIVE PITCHES ETC?

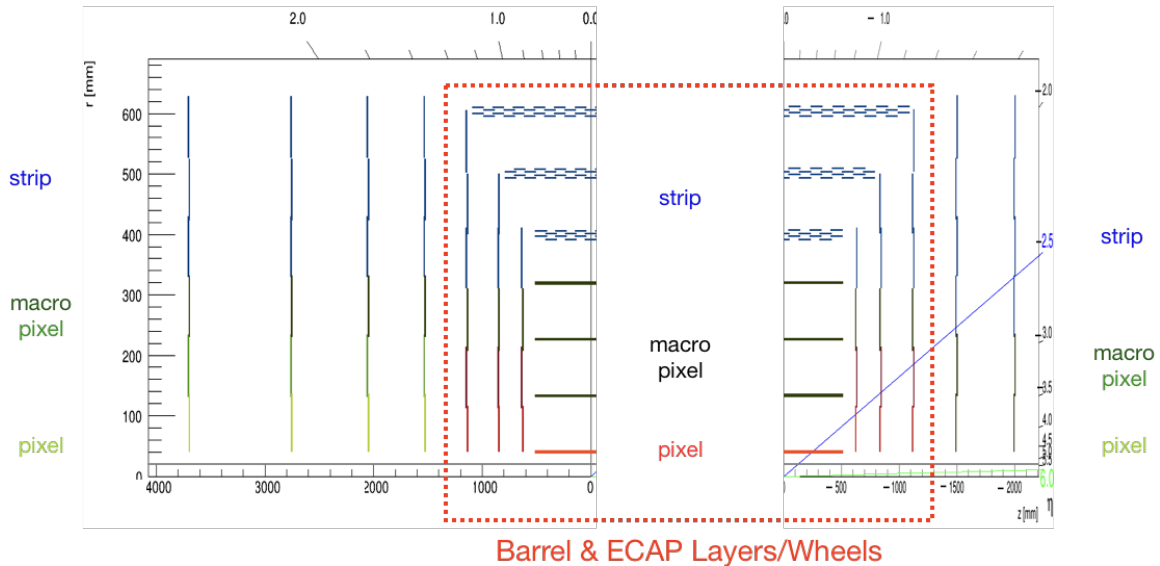


Figure 10.4: Schematic side-view of the tracker, subdivided into forward and backward parts and including disks as well as barrel components. The layers/wheels forming the barrel part are enclosed by the red-dotted box. The innermost pixel layers are colored red, the macro-pixel layers are shown in black and the strip detectors in blue. For the forward and backward wheels (outside the dashed red box), the pixels, macro-pixels and strip detectors are shown in light green, dark green and blue, respectively.

Sensor Overview								
Sensorname	sensorType	numStripsAcross	numSegments	numROCK	numROCY	sensorLayout	numSensors	sensorThickness [mm]
Pixel_BRLO_module0	pixel	512	1370	1	3	mono	1	0.1
Pixel_InnerFwd_module0	pixel	1352	1522	3	3	mono	1	0.1
Pixel_InnerFwd_module1	pixel	1442	1007	3	2	mono	1	0.1
Pixel_Fwd_module0	pixel	2067	1800	4	4	mono	1	0.1
Pixel_Fwd_module1	pixel	1514	1000	3	2	mono	1	0.1
MacroPixel_module0	macroPixel	1536	256	3	1	mono	1	0.1
MacroPixel_InnerFwd_module0	macroPixel	1480	258	3	1	mono	1	0.1
MacroPixel_Fwd_module0	macroPixel	1531	250	3	1	mono	1	0.1
Strip_Fwd_module	strip	3072	10	6	10	mono	1	0.2
Strip_Outer_module	strip	3072	2	6	2	mono	1	0.2

Sensor Mount for Barrel Layers and Wheel Rings (from lower to higher Radii)				
Barrel Layers	ECAP Wheel1 - Ring Structure	ECAP Wheel2 - Ring Structure	ECAP Wheel3 - Ring Structure	FWD/BWD Wheels - Ring Structure
Pixel_BRLO_module0	Pixel_InnerFwd_module0	Pixel_InnerFwd_module0	Pixel_InnerFwd_module0	Pixel_Fwd_module0
MacroPixel_module0	Pixel_InnerFwd_module1	Pixel_InnerFwd_module1	Pixel_InnerFwd_module1	Pixel_Fwd_module1
MacroPixel_module0	MacroPixel_InnerFwd_module0	MacroPixel_InnerFwd_module0	MacroPixel_InnerFwd_module0	MacroPixel_Fwd_module0
MacroPixel_module0	Strip_Fwd_module	Strip_Fwd_module	Strip_Fwd_module	Strip_Fwd_module
Strip_Outer_module		Strip_Fwd_module	Strip_Fwd_module	Strip_Fwd_module
Strip_Outer_module			Strip_Fwd_module	Strip_Fwd_module
Strip_Outer_module				Strip_Fwd_module

Figure 10.5: Summary of the layout details for each of the tracker modules. The first table gives the sensor type, multiplicity per layer and number of readout channels in the two coordinates in the sensor plane and details of the sensor layout and thickness. The second table summarises the mounting strategy. PRN NOT SURE I UNDERSTOOD THIS! PLEASE CHECK I INTERPRETED THE COLUMNS RIGHT. ITS ALSO NOT OBVIOUS TO ME THAT ITS CONSISTENT WITH TABLE 10.1? POSSIBLY THIS COULD EVEN BE DROPPED AND A FEW WORDS ADDED IN THE TEXT INSTEAD?

Tracker _{LHeC}	Inner Barrel			ECAP			Fwd Tracker			Bwd Tracker			Total
	pix	pix _m	strip	pix	pix _m	strip	pix	pix _m	strip	pix	pix _m	strip	
¹⁾	±3.3	±2.1	±1.4	±4.1/1.8	±2.4/1.5	±2./1.	5.3/2.6	3.5/2.2	3.1/1.6	-4./-2.6	-2.9/-2.2	-2.5/-1.6	5.3/-4.6
η_{max}/min	1	3	3	2	1	1-3	2	1	3	2	1	3	
#Layers _{Barrel}													
#Rings													
#Modules/Sensors	320	4420	3352	192	192	552	144	144	560	36	36	140	10088
Total Si area [m ²]	0.3	4.6	17.6	0.8	1.0	3.3	0.6	0.7	3.9	0.2	0.2	1.0	34.2
#Read-out-Channels	224.5	1738	20.6	322.4	36.6	17.0	323.9	55.1	17.2	81.0	13.8	4.3	2854.4
$\sigma^{r-\phi}$ [μm]	7.5	9.5	9.5	7.5-9.5	9.5	9.5	7.5-9.5	9.5	9.5	7.5-9.5	9.5	9.5	
σ^z [μm]	15	115	2.9k	15-30	115-2.9k	2.9k	15-30	115-2.9k	2.9k	15-30	115-2.9k	2.9k	
average X_0/Δ_I [%]	7.2/2.2			3.0/1.0			2.5/0.8			0.9/0.3			
Beam pipe inclusive													35 / 23

¹⁾ Based on tklayout calculations [ref.]

Table 10.1: Summary of the main properties of the tracker modules in the revised LHeC detector configuration based on calculations performed using tkLayout. For each module, the rows correspond to the pseudorapidity coverage, numbers of barrel and disk layers, numbers of sensors, total area covered by silicon sensors, numbers of readout channels, resolutions in the ($r - \phi$) plane and in z and the average material budget in terms of radiation lengths and interaction lengths. Where appropriate, the numbers are broken down into separate contributions from pixels, macro-pixels and strips. PRN: HOW DO THE MATERIAL BUDGET NUMBERS IN THIS TABLE RELATE TO THOSE IN FIGURE 10.8? PRN: SWITCHED THIS TO LANDSCAPE SO IT FITS IN THE PAGE. THE FONTS CAN NOW INCREASE IN SIZE TO MATCH THE CALO TABLE, BUT I DON'T KNOW HOW TO DO A GLOBAL REPLACE IN OVERLEAF

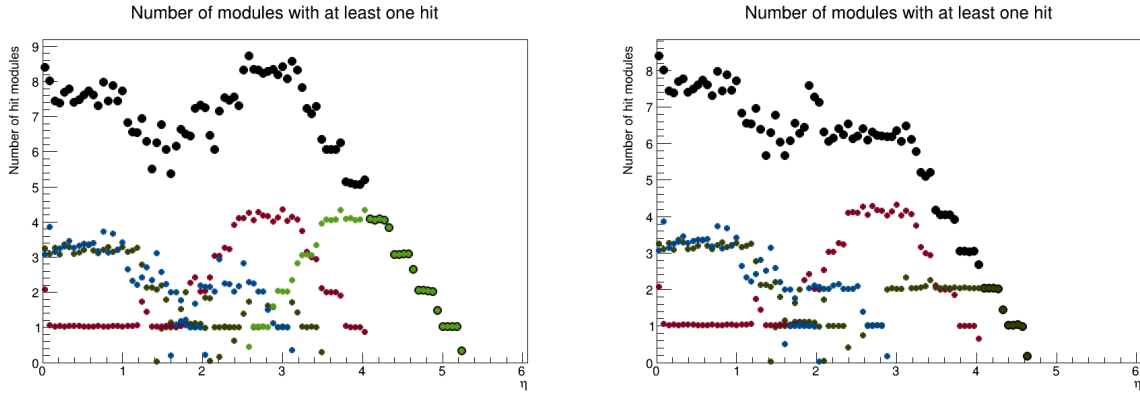


Figure 10.6: Numbers of silicon layers that provide acceptance for charged particles as a function of absolute value of pseudorapidity in the forward (left) and backward (right) directions, summed across the central, forward and backward trackers. The distributions are broken down according to sensor type, with colour coding of red for pixels, light or dark green for macro-pixels, blue for strips and black for the sum.

Table 10.1 summarises the overall basic properties of the tracker modules, including total numbers of channels and total area of silicon coverage, as well as spatial resolutions and material budgets. The inner barrel has a pseudorapidity coverage $|\eta| < 3.3$ for hits in at least one layer, increasing to $|\eta| < 4.1$ when the endcaps are also taken into account. The additional disks beyond the central tracker enclosure extend the coverage to $\eta = 5.3$ and $\eta = -4.0$ in the forward and backward directions, respectively. Figure 10.6 shows these features in more detail, displaying the numbers of layers that provide acceptance as a function of pseudorapidity in both the forward and backward directions, also broken down into different sensor types. Charged particles are sampled in between 6 and 8 layers throughout the entire range $-3 < \eta < 4$, with sampling in at least two layers provided for $-4 < \eta < 5$.

As can be seen in table 10.1, spatial resolutions in the $(r-\phi)$ plane are at the level of $7.5-9.5 \mu\text{m}$ for all of the tracking modules. These resolutions are propagated using tkLayout to produce simulated charged particle transverse momentum resolutions, as shown in figure 10.7. Both active and passive material contributions are included, with a 2.5 mm beam pipe thickness. An excellent resolution ($\delta p_T/p_T$) at the level of 1–2% is achieved over a wide range of pseudorapidity and transverse momentum. The precision degrades slowly in the forward direction, remaining at the sub 10% level up to very forward pseudorapidities $\eta \sim 4.5$. Central tracks with transverse momenta up to 1 TeV are measured with 10 – 20% precision.

PRN THIS ONLY COVERED POSITIVE ETA. ANYTHING TO SAY ABOUT THE BACKWARD REGION?

PRN IT WOULD BE NICE TO SAY WHAT IS THE PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT OVER THE 2012 CDR. HOWEVER, I DON'T THINK THERE'S A DIRECT COMPARISON FIGURE THERE (FIG 12.21 WAS $\Delta p_T / p_T \cdot 2 \cdot \theta$).

PRN DO WE HAVE ANYTHING TO SAY ABOUT IMPACT PARAMETER RESOLUTION, EVEN IF ITS JUST THAT ITS IMPROVED COMPARED WITH 2012?

The total material budget contribution from the sensors summed across all layers is given in table 10.1. This is largest for the inner barrel, where it amounts to 7.2% of a radiation length. The sensors in the central tracker endcap and the forward and backward tracking rings contribute 3.0%, 2.5% and 0.9% of a radiation length, respectively. These material contributions are all small on the scale of the average $0.35X_0$ contributed by the beam pipe. The material budget

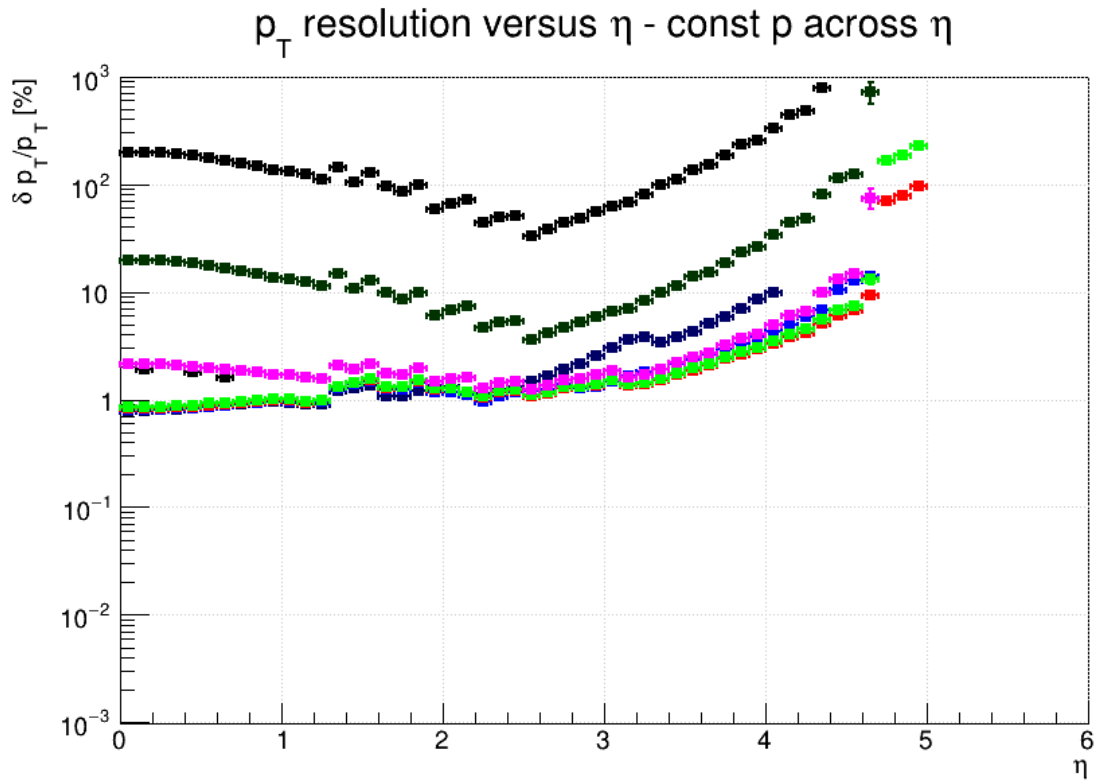


Figure 10.7: Simulated transverse momentum track resolution using all modules in the revised LHeC tracking system. Results are shown in terms of fractional p_T resolution as a function of pseudorapidity for several constant momenta, $p = 100$ MeV (Black), 1 GeV (Dark Blue), 2 GeV (Light Blue), 5 GeV (Red), 10 GeV (Light Green), 100 GeV (Magenta), 1 TeV (Dark Green) and 10 TeV (Black, top). PRN I GOT CONFUSED ABOUT THE COLOURS HERE. MANY LOOK BLACK!

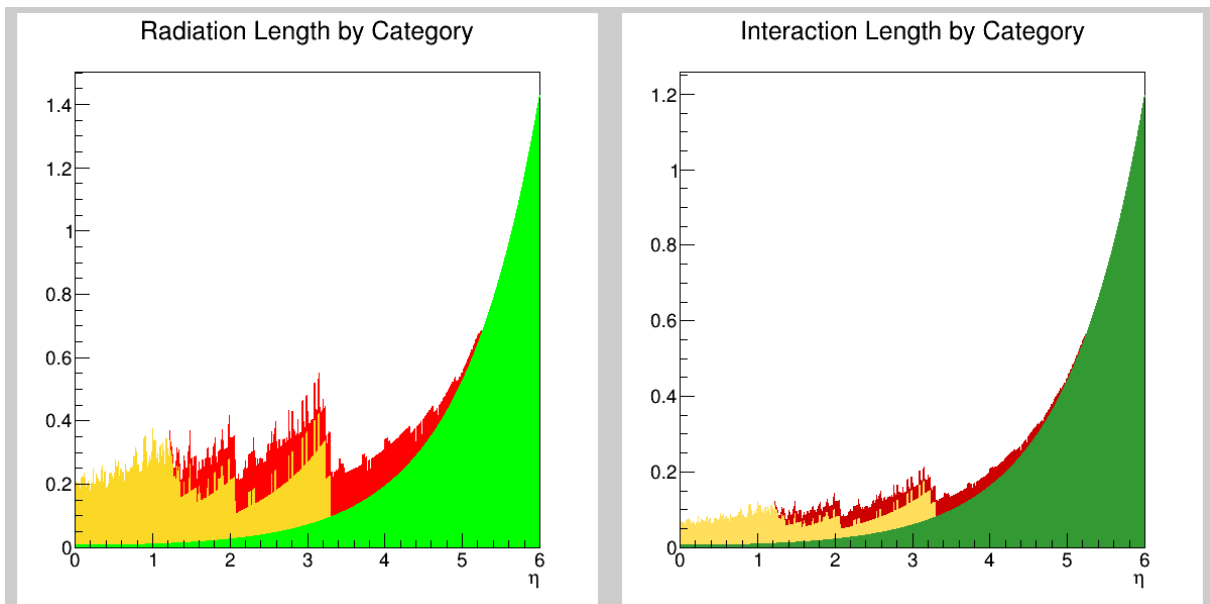


Figure 10.8: Material contributions from the tracking modules as a function of pseudorapidity. Results are given in terms of radiation lengths (left) and hadronic interaction lengths (right). The results are broken down into contributions from barrel modules (yellow) and endcap / additional disk modules (red) and are compared with the contribution from the 2.5 mm beam pipe (green).

simulations, propagated for the full system and including passive contributions, are shown in figure 10.8. The use of thin sensors keeps the total material to the level of $0.2-0.4X_0$ throughout the entire tracking region up to $\eta \sim 5$.

PRN CAN WE EXPLAIN THE PASSIVE CONTRIBUTIONS INCLUDED? - SEE ALSO COMMENT IN CAPTION TO TABLE 10.1 ON HOW THE TABLE AND FIGURE RELATE.

10.4 Calorimetry

PRN PLEASE CHECK I INTERPRETED ALL THIS RIGHT! IT WOULD BE GOOD TO ADD FURTHER DETAIL IF POSSIBLE.

The 2012 CDR detector design leaned heavily on current technologies employed by ATLAS for calorimetry in the barrel region, adopting a lead / liquid argon sampling electromagnetic calorimeter with an accordion geometry and a steel / scintillating tile sampling hadronic component. For the updated detector described here, an alternative solution of a lead / scintillator electromagnetic calorimeter has been investigated. This has the advantage of removing the need for cryogenics, whilst maintaining an acceptable performance level. The hadronic calorimeter retains the steel and scintillating tile design, similar to ATLAS. As in the 2012 CDR, plug sampling calorimeters are also incorporated at large $|\eta|$, the forward and backward components using tungsten and lead absorber material, respectively, with both using silicon based sensitive readout layers. The steel structures in the central and plug calorimetry close the outer field of the central solenoid. The main features of the new calorimeter layout are summarised in table 10.2. The pseudorapidity coverage of the electromagnetic barrel is $-1.4 < \eta < 2.4$, whilst the hadronic barrel and its end cap cover $-1.5 < \eta < 1.9$. Also including the forward and backward plug modules, the total coverage is very close to hermetic, spanning $-5.0 < \eta < 5.5$. The total depth of the electromagnetic section is 30 radiation lengths in the barrel and backward regions, increasing to almost $50X_0$ in the forward direction where particle and energy densities are highest. The hadronic calorimeter has a depth of between 7.1 and 9.6 interaction lengths, with the largest values in the forward plug region.

PRN CAN WE GIVE ABSORBER AND ACTIVE MATERIAL LAYER THICKNESSES, NUMBERS OF LAYERS ETC?

PRN COULD WE ADD AN EXAMPLE RESOLUTION CURVE VERSUS ENERGY TO BACK UP THE NUMBERS IN THE TABLE? ALSO NOT COMPLETELY SURE I CORRECTLY INTERPRETED WHAT WAS DONE TO PRODUCE THOSE, SO WOULD BE GOOD TO ADD SOME DETAIL OF HOW THE GEANT4 ANALYSIS WAS DONE.

The performance of the new calorimeter layout has been simulated by evaluating the mean simulated response to electromagnetic and hadronic objects with various specific energies using GEANT4 ?? and interpreting the results as a function of energy in terms of sampling (a) and material (b) terms in the usual form $\sigma_E/E = a/\sqrt{E} \oplus b$. The results are summarised in table 10.2. The response of the barrel electromagnetic calorimeter to electrons in terms of both sampling ($a = 12.4\%$) and material ($b = 1.9\%$) terms is only slightly worse than that achieved with liquid argon sampling in the 2012 CDR. The resolutions of the forward and backward electromagnetic plug calorimeters are comparable to those achieved in the 2012 design. A similar pattern holds for the hadronic response, with sampling terms at the sub-50% level and material terms of typically 5% throughout the barrel end-caps and forward and backward plugs.

PRN NOT SURE I UNDERSTAND THE PERFORMANCE NUMBERS - WE ARE SHOWING A WORSE APPARENT PERFORMANCE IN THE BARREL REGION THAN 2012. MAYBE THERE ARE OTHER REASONS FOR THIS THAT WE SHOULD INCLUDE (EG MORE DETAILED PASSIVE MATERIAL SIMULATIONS?).

Calo_{LHeC} [Readout, Absorber]	FHC [Si, W]	FEC [Si, W]	EMC [Sci, Pb]	HCAL [Sci, Fe]			BEC [Si, Pb]	BHC [Si, Cu]
	Plug Fwd	Plug Fwd	Barrel	Ecap Fwd	Barrel	Ecap Bwd	Plug Bwd	Plug Bwd
$\eta_{max/min}$	5.5/1.9	5.1/2.0	2.4/-1.4	1.9/1.0	1.6/-0.7	-1.5/-1.0	-4.4/-4.5	-4.5/-5.0
¹⁾ σ_E/E [%]	51.8/5.4	17.8/1.4	12.4/1.9	46.5/3.8	48.23/5.6	51.7/4.3	14.4/2.8	49.5/7.9
²⁾ $= \mathbf{a}/\sqrt{E} \oplus \mathbf{b}$				38.3.5/5.3	39.7/8.4	36.1.5/7.4		
Λ_I / X_0	$\Lambda_I = 9.6$	$X_0 = 48.8$	$X_0 = 30.2$	$\Lambda_I = 8.2$	$\Lambda_I = 8.3$	$\Lambda_I = 7.1$	$X_0 = 30.9$	$\Lambda_I = 9.2$
Area Si/Sci [m^2]	1354	187	1174	1403	3853	1209	187	745

¹⁾ GEANT4 simulation based fits using crystal ball function

²⁾ GEANT4 simulation based fits using gaussian function (within $\pm 2\sigma$)

Table 10.2: Basic properties and simulated resolutions of all calorimeter modules in the new LHeC detector configuration. For each of the modules, the rows indicate the absorber and sensitive materials, the pseudorapidity coverage, the contributions to the simulated resolution from the sampling (a) and material (b) terms in the form a/b , the depth in terms of radiation or interaction lengths and the total area covered by the sensitive material. PRN SHOULD IT BE OBVIOUS WHY THERE ARE TWO SETS OF RESOLUTION NUMBERS FOR THE HCAL? ALSO I DIDN'T UNDERSTAND WHAT THE 1,2 FOOTNOTES SPECIFICALLY REFER TO

10.5 Forward and Backward Detectors

In the 2012 CDR, initial plans for beamline instrumentation were provided for the LHeC. In the backward direction, low angle electron and photon calorimeters were placed with the primary intention of measuring luminosity via the Bethe-Heitler process $ep \rightarrow eXp$ and the side-effect of providing an electron tagger to identify photoproduction ($\gamma p \rightarrow X$) processes at intermediate y values. The current design carries forward the 2012 version of this backward instrumentation, though it will need to be revisited in the future in light of the synchrotron load in the updated magnet design.

In the forward direction, Roman pot detectors were included in the region of $z \sim 420$ m, capable of detecting scattered protons over a range of fractional energy loss $10^{-3} < \xi < 3 \times 10^{-2}$ and wide transverse momentum acceptance, based on extensive previous work in the LHC context by the FP420 collaboration. This also forms the basis of forward proton tagging in the revised design. However, as is the case at ATLAS and CMS / TOTEM, further Roman pot detectors in the region of 200 m and (with HL-LHC optics) perhaps around 320 m would extend the acceptance towards higher ξ values up to around 0.2 allowing the study of diffractive processes $ep \rightarrow eXp$ where the dissociation system X has a mass extending into the TeV regime. It is worth noting that Roman pot technologies have come of age at the LHC, with the TOTEM collaboration operating 14 separate detectors at its high point. Silicon sensor designs borrowed from the innermost regions of the ATLAS and CMS vertexing detectors have been used, providing high spatial resolution and radiation hardness well beyond the needs of LHeC. Very precise timing detectors based on fast silicon or Cerenkov radiation signals from traversing protons in quartz or diamond have also been deployed. It is natural that these advances and the lessons from their deployment at the LHC will be used to inform the next iteration of the LHeC design.

The forward beamline design also incorporates a zero angle calorimeter, designed primarily to detect high energy leading neutrons from semi-inclusive processes in ep scattering and to

determine whether nuclei break up in eA events. This component of the detector was not considered in detail in 2012 and is therefore discussed here.

10.5.1 Zero-Degree (Neutron) Calorimeter

The Zero-Degree Calorimeter (ZDC) measures final state neutral particles produced at angles near the incoming hadron beam direction. They typically have large longitudinal momentum ($x_F \gg 10^{-2}$), but with transverse momentum of order of Λ_{QCD} . Such a calorimeter has been instrumented in experiments for ep collisions (H1 and ZEUS) and for pp , pA and AA collisions at RHIC (STAR and PHENIX) and at the LHC (ATLAS, CMS, ALICE and LHCf at the ATLAS IP). The detector's main focus is to study the soft-hard interplay in the QCD description of ep and eA collisions by studying the dependence of forward-going particles with small transverse momentum on the hard variables e.g. Q^2 and x . The detector also allows the tagging of spectator neutrons to detect nuclear breakup in eA collisions. It also enables the precise study of the EMC effect by using neutron-tagged DIS on small systems, such as $e^3He \rightarrow ed + n \rightarrow eX + n$. For heavier ions, several tens of neutrons may enter within the aperture of the ZDC. Inclusive π^0 production has been measured by the LHCf experiments for pp collisions. It is of great interest to compare with DIS measurements at the same proton energies. Precise understanding of the inclusive spectrum of the forward-going particles is a key ingredient in simulating air showers from ultra-high energy cosmic rays.

Physics requirement for forward neutron and π^0 production measurement

It is known from various HERA measurements that the slope parameter b is about 8 GeV^{-2} in the exponential parameterisation e^{bt} of the t distribution of leading neutrons. In order to precisely determine the slope parameter it is necessary to measure the transverse momentum of the neutrons up to or beyond 1 GeV. The aperture for forward neutral particles does not have to be very large, thanks to the large boost on the proton and heavy ion beam. For example, collisions with $E_p = 7 \text{ TeV}$ need 0.14 mrad for $p_T = 1 \text{ GeV}$ neutrons at $E_{particle}/E_{beam} \equiv x_F = 1.0$, or 0.56 mrad for $x_F = 0.25$.

The energy or x_F resolution for neutrons would not be a dominant factor thanks to the high energy of the produced particles. The energy resolution of a neutron with $x_F = 0.1$ is about 2% for cutting-edge hadron calorimeters with $\sigma_E/E = 50\%/\sqrt{E}$, where E is in GeV. Such a resolution can be achieved if non-unity e/h can be compensated either by construction of the calorimeter or by software weighting, and if the size of the calorimeter is large enough so that shower leakage is small.

On the other hand, the resolution requirement on the transverse momentum is rather stringent. For example, 1 mm resolution on hadronic showers from the neutron measured at 100 m downstream from the interaction point corresponds to 0.01 mrad or 70 MeV, which is rather moderate ($\leq 10\%$ resolution for large p_T hadrons with $p_T > 700 \text{ MeV}$). For smaller p_T it is more appropriate to evaluate the resolution in terms of $t \simeq -(1 - x_F)p_T^2$ i.e. $\Delta t \simeq 2(\Delta p_T)p_T$ at $x_F = 1$. At $t = 0.1 \text{ GeV}^2$ or $p_T \simeq 300 \text{ MeV}$, Δt is about 50%. A shower measurement with significantly better than 1 mm position resolution, therefore, would improve the t -distribution measurement significantly.

According to the current LHC operation conditions with $\beta^* = 5 \text{ cm}$, the beam spread is $8 \times 10^{-5} \text{ rad}$ or 0.56 GeV. This is much larger than the required resolution in p_T . It is, therefore, neither possible to measure the particle flow nor control the acceptance of the forward aperture.

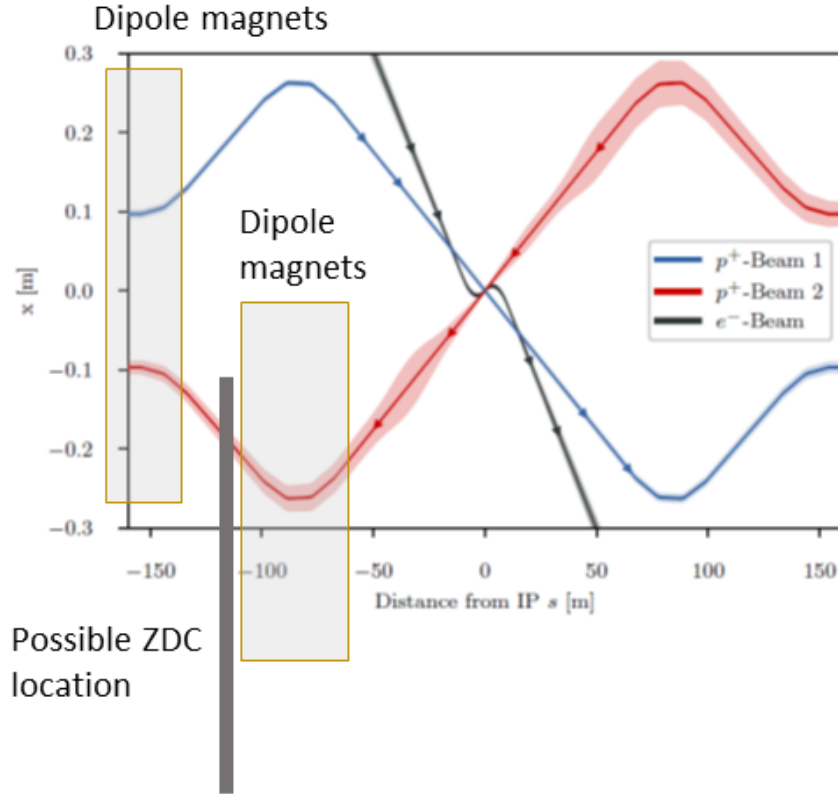


Figure 10.9: Possible location of a ZDC for the linac–ring design of LHeC. The solid rectangle represents the ZDC. The two boxes in front of and behind the ZDC indicate the locations for bending magnets.

For precision measurement of forward particles, it is necessary to have runs with $\beta^* \geq 1$ m, corresponding to $\sigma(p_T) < 70$ MeV.

The calorimeter should be able to measure more than 30 neutrons of 5 TeV for tagging spectator neutrons from heavy-ion collisions. The dynamic range of the calorimeter should exceed 100 TeV with good linearity.

As for π^0 measurements, the LHCf experiment has demonstrated that a position resolution of $200 \mu\text{m}$ on electromagnetic showers provides good performance for the inclusive photon spectrum measurements [622]. This also calls for fine segmentation sampling layers.

ZDC location for the Linac-Ring IP design

According to the IP design, a possible location for the ZDC is after the first bending of the outgoing colliding proton beam at around $Z = 110$ m, where no beam magnet is placed (see Fig. 10.9). It is anyhow planned to place a neutral particle dump around this location in order to protect accelerator components. A ZDC could serve as the first absorbing layer at zero degrees.

The aperture to the ZDC would be determined by the last quadrupole magnet at around $z = 50$ m. Assuming a typical aperture for the LHC magnets of 35 mm, the aperture could be as large as 0.7 mrad. The horizontal aperture of the dipole magnets between 75 and 100 m would be larger

since otherwise the magnets receive significant radiation from neutral particles produced from the collisions at the IP. Even if the aperture is limited by the vertical aperture of the last dipole at $z = 100$ m, the aperture is 0.35 mrad, corresponding to 2.4 GeV in p_T for 7 GeV particles. This fulfills the physics requirement.

The space for the ZDC location in the transverse direction should be at least $\pm 2\lambda_I$ to avoid large leakage of hadronic showers. This can be achieved if the proton beam traverses inside the calorimeter, about 20 cm from the centre of the calorimeter. The total size of the calorimeter could then be $60 \times 60 \times 200$ cm or larger according to the current layout of the beam and accelerator components. This would provide about $\pm 3\lambda_I$ in the transverse direction and about $10\lambda_I$ in depth.

Radiation requirement for the ZDC

It can safely be assumed that the energy spectrum of the neutral particles produced in ep and pp events are very similar. According to the LHCf simulation, their tungsten–scintillator sandwich calorimeter receives about 30 Gy/nb $^{-1}$ or 10^8 events/nb $^{-1}$ assuming $\sigma_{pp}^{tot} = 100$ mb, i.e. 3×10^{-7} Joule/event. This means that about 1/4 of the total proton beam energy (7 TeV $\simeq 1.12 \times 10^{-6}$ Joule/event) is deposited in 1 kg material in pp collisions. The ep total cross section is 68 μ b or 680 kHz at 10^{34} cm 2 s $^{-1}$. A 7 TeV beam or 1.12×10^{-6} Joule/event corresponds to 0.76 Joule/s at this instantaneous luminosity. A quarter of the total dose is then about 0.2 Gy/sec or 0.02 Gy/nb, which is in accordance with the expectation from $\sigma_{pp}^{tot} \simeq 10^3 \sigma_{ep}^{tot}$. The contribution from beam-gas interactions is estimated to be much smaller ($O(100$ kHz)).

Assuming that the ZDC is always operational during LHeC running, one year of ep operation amounts to 2.5 MGy/year assuming 10^7 sec operation, or $O(10$ MGy) throughout the lifetime of the LHeC operation. This approximately corresponds to $10^{14} - 10^{15}$ 1 MeV neutron equivalent.

Possible calorimeter design

The high dose of $O(10$ MGy) requires calorimeters based on modern crystals (e.g. LYSO) or silicon as sampling layers, at least for the central part of the calorimeter where the dose is concentrated. Since we also need very fine segmentation for photons, it is desirable to use finely segmented silicon pads of order of 1 mm. As for the absorbers, tungsten should be used for good position resolution of photons and the initial part of hadronic showers.

In the area outside the core of the shower i.e. well outside the aperture, the dose may be much smaller and small scintillator tiles could be used for absorbers, which allows measurements with good e/h ratio. If we choose a uniform design using silicon across the detector, the segmentation of the outer towers could be order of a few cm, which still makes it possible to use software compensation technology developed for ILC calorimeters. It may also be possible to use lead instead of tungsten for outer towers to reduce the cost.

10.5.2 Detector Design for a Low Energy FCCeh

PRN I MOVED THIS TO HERE BUT HAVEN'T DONE ANYTHING ELSE WITH I. NOT SURE WHETHER IT REALLY FITS IN THE CURRENT DOCUMENT, BUT IF WE WANT TO KEEP IT, IT COULD FIT AS A SHORT SECTION HERE?

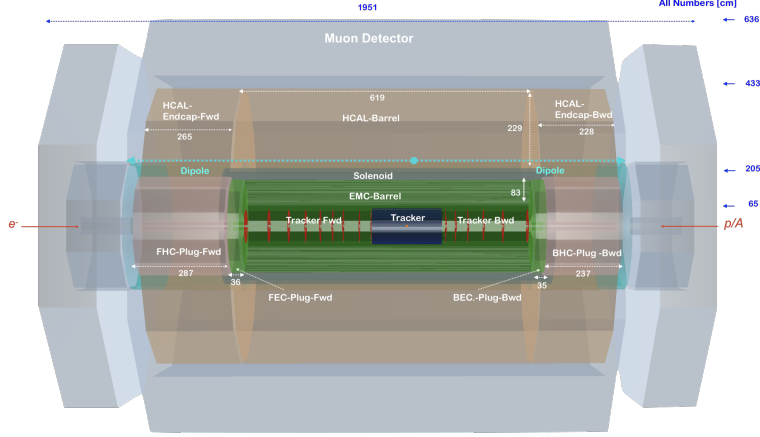


Figure 10.10: Side view of a lowE-FCCeh ($E_p = 20\text{TeV}$) concept detector designed using the DD4hep framework [ref.] showing essential measures. The principal layout is similar to the LHeC detector. As well as the choice of materials (warm version). The experiment solenoid is placed again between the ECAL-Barrel and Hadronic-Barrel calorimeter (HCAL-Barrel) and housed in a cryostat common with the beam steering dipoles extending over the full length of the HCAL-Barrel and HCAL-Plug-forward/backward. The sizes has been chosen such that the solenoid/dipoles and ECAL-Barrel systems as well as the whole tracker serve also after an upgrade of beam energy to $E_p = 50\text{TeV}$ and an upgrade of detector accordingly.

Calo FCC_{lowE}^{eh} [Readout, Absorber]	FHC [Si, W]	FEC [Si, W]	EMC [Sci, Pb]	HCAL [Sci, Fe]			BEC [Si, Pb]	BHC [Si, Cu]
	Plug Fwd	Plug Fwd	Barrel	Ecap Fwd	Barrel	Ecap Bwd	Plug Bwd	Plug Bwd
$\eta_{max/min}$	5.8/1.8	5.4/1.8	2.8/-1.7	2.0/0.8	1.6/-0.8	-1.4/-1.8	-5.1/-5.2	-5.2/-5.6
¹⁾ σ_E/E [%]	61.9/0.5	26.5/0.4	12.6/1.1	38.9/3.3	42.4/4.2	40.6/3.5	24.7/0.4	46.7/4.4
²⁾ $= \mathbf{a}/\sqrt{E} \oplus \mathbf{b}$				38.4/3.6	41.3/4.6	38.4/4.2		
Λ_I / X_0	$\Lambda_I = 15.5$	$X_0 = 84.7$	$X_0 = 66.2$	$\Lambda_I = 12.7$	$\Lambda_I = 11.3$	$\Lambda_I = 11.0$	$X_0 = 50.2$	$\Lambda_I = 14.7$
Area Si/Sci [m^2]	2479	364	2915	4554	12298	3903	438	1994

¹⁾ GEANT4 simulation based fits using crystal ball function

²⁾ GEANT4 simulation based fits using gaussian function (within $\pm 2\sigma$)

Table 10.3: lowE-FCCeh Main Calorimeter Properties

10.6 Detector Installation and Infrastructure

The usual constraints that apply to HEP detector integration and assembly studies, are made here also. They hold even tighter since the detector has to be installed in the shortest allowable time, given by the duration of an LHC machine shutdown, which is typically two years. Since the new LHeC detector would be installed at the place of IP2, see Fig. 10.11, time needed to remove the old detector and its services has to be added to the overall schedule. Thus the only realistic possibility to accomplish the timely dismantling of the old detector and the installation of the new one is to complete as much as possible the assembling and testing of the LHeC detector on surface, where the construction can proceed without impacting on the LHC physics runs. Condition for doing this, is the availability of equipped free space at LHC-P2 surface, namely a large assembly hall with one or two cranes. To save time, most of the detector components have been designed to match the handling means available on site, i.d. bridge crane in surface hall and experiment cavern. Nevertheless, a heavy lifting facility (about 300 tons capacity) will be rented for the time needed to lower the heaviest detector components, such as HCal barrel and plug modules. Large experience with this will be acquired during LHC Long Shutdown 3, when a significant part of ATLAS and CMS detectors will be replaced by new elements. At CMS, for instance, a new Endcap Calorimeter weighing about 220 tons will be lowered into the experiment



Figure 10.11: View on the hall surface infrastructure at Point 2, near St. Genis.

cavern, a scenario very close to what is here envisaged for the LHeC detector assembly.

The detector has been split in the following main parts for assembly purposes:

- Coil cryostat, including the superconducting coil, the two integrated dipoles and eventually the EMCal.
- Five HCal tile calorimeter barrel modules, fully instrumented and cabled (5).
- Two HCal plugs modules, forward and backward (2).
- Two EMCal plugs, forward and backward (2).
- Inner Tracking detector (1).
- Beam-pipe (1).
- Central Muon detector (1 or 2).
- Endcaps Muon detector (2).

The full detector, including the Muon chambers, fits inside the former L3 detector Magnet Yoke, once the four large doors are taken away. The goal is to prevent losing time in dismantling the L3 Magnet barrel yoke and to make use of its sturdy structure to hold the detector central part on a platform supported by the magnet crown, whilst the Muon chambers will be inserted into lightweight structures (space-frames) attached to the inner surface of the octagonal L3 magnet.

The assembly on surface of the main detector elements, as previously defined, can start at any time, providing that the surface facilities are available, without sensible impact on the LHC run. The Coil system commissioning on site ($t=0$) could require 3 months and preparation for lowering three months, including some contingency. In the same time window, the L3 Magnet will be freed up and prepared for the new detector¹. Lowering of the main detector components into the cavern, illustrated in Fig. 10.12, is supposed to take one week per piece (15 pieces in

¹ The actual delay depends on the level of activation and the procedure adopted for dismantling the existing detector. Here again the experience acquired during the long shutdown (LS) 2 with the upgrades of ALICE and LHCb and later with ATLAS and CMS upgrades during LS3 will provide important insight for defining procedures and optimising the schedule.

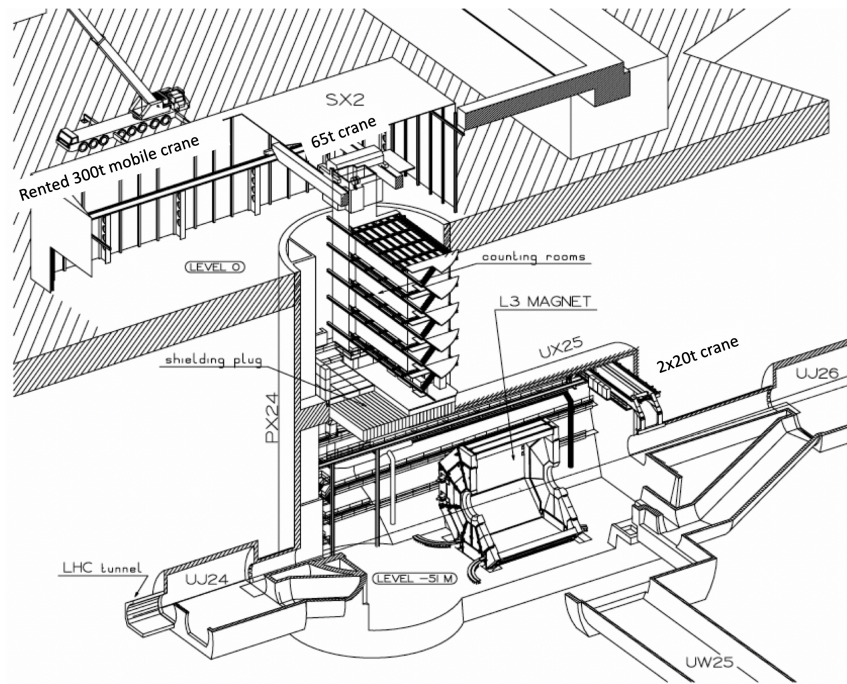


Figure 10.12: View on the cavern infrastructure at Point 2. In the centre one recognises the support structure of the magnet of the L3 experiment which is thought to house and support also the LHeC detector, not least for its removal would cost significant extra time.

total). Underground integration of the central detector elements inside the L3 Magnet would require about 6 months, cabling and connection to services some 8 to 10 months, in parallel with the installation of the Muon chambers, the Tracker and the Calorimeter Plugs. Fig. 10.13 shows the installed complete detector housed in the L3 magnet support.

The total estimated time, from the starting of the testing of the Coil system on surface to the commissioning of the detector underground is thus 20 months. The beam-pipe bake out and vacuum pumping could take another 3 months and the final detector check-out one additional month. Some contingency (2 - 3 months in total) is foreseen at the beginning and the end of the installation period. A sketch of the installation schedule is provided in Fig. 10.14

Concerning the detector infrastructures, not much can be said at this stage. The LHeC detector superconducting coil will need cryogenics services and a choice has to be made between purchasing a dedicated liquid helium refrigeration plant or profit of the existing LHC cryogenics infrastructures to feed the detector magnet. Electrical and water cooling network present at LHC-P2 are already well sized for the new detector and only minor interventions are expected there.

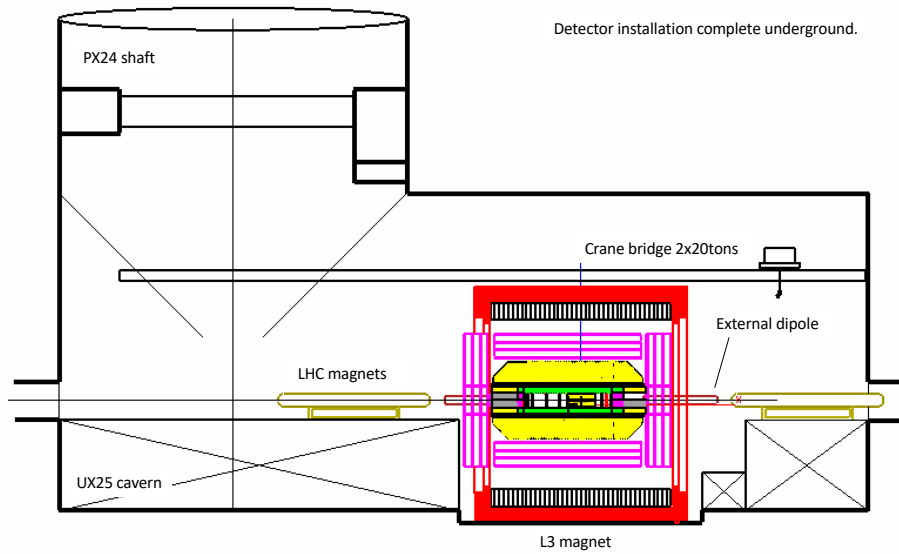


Figure 10.13: View on the LHeC detector, housed in the L3 magnet support structure, after installation at the interaction point.

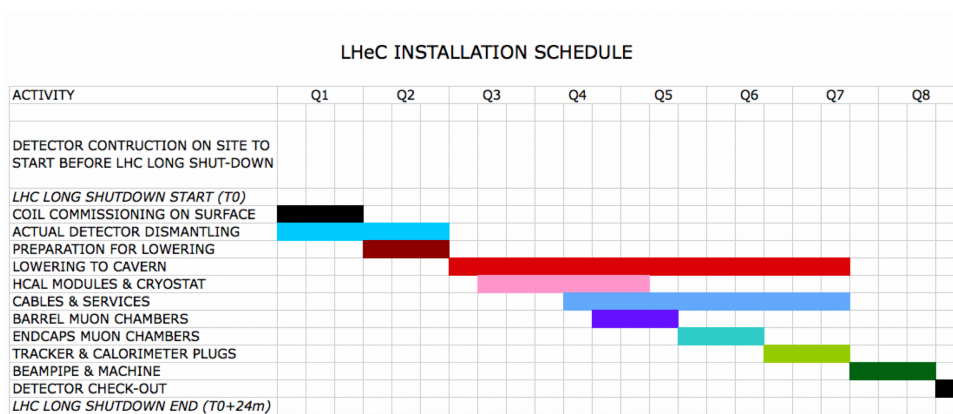


Figure 10.14: Time schedule of the sequential installation of the LHeC detector in point 2 as described in the text.

Chapter 11

Conclusions

Summary and conclusions.

Appendix A

Statement of the International Advisory Committee

End of 2014, the CERN Directorate appointed an International Advisory Committee (IAC) for advice on the direction of energy frontier electron-hadron scattering at CERN, for their mandate see below. The committee and its chair, em. DG of CERN Herwig Schopper, was reconfirmed when a new DG had been appointed. The IAC held regular sessions at the annual LHeC workshops in which reports were heard by the co-coordinators of the project, Oliver Brüning and Max Klein. Its work and opinion shaped the project development considerably and it was pivotal for the foundation of the PERLE project. The committee was in close contact and advised especially on the documents, on the LHeC [5,7] and PERLE [8], submitted end of 2018 to the update of the European strategy on particle physics. In line with the present updated LHeC design report and the strategy process, which began in 2018 and is due to conclude in spring 2020, the IAC formulated a brief report to the CERN DG, in which its observations and recommendations have been summarised. This report was also sent to the members of the European particle physics strategy group. It is reproduced here.

Report by the IAC on the LHeC to the DG of CERN

The development of the LHeC project was initiated by CERN and ECFA, in cooperation with NuPECC. It culminated in the publication of the Conceptual Design Report (CDR), arXiv:1206.2913 in 2012, which received by now about 500 citations. In 2014, the CERN Directorate invited our committee to advise the CERN Directorate, and the Coordination Group, on the directions of future energy frontier electron-hadron scattering as are enabled with the LHC and the future FCC (for the mandate see below). In 2016, Council endorsed the HL-LHC, which offers a higher LHC performance and strengthened the interest in exploring the Higgs phenomenon. In view of the imminent final discussions for the European Road Map for particle physics, a short summary report is here presented.

Main Developments 2014–2019

A series of annual workshops on the LHeC and FCC-eh was held, and this report is given following the latest workshop <https://indico.cern.ch/event/835947>, October 24/25, 2019.

Based on recent developments concerning the development of the LHC accelerator and physics, and the progress in technology, a new default configuration of the LHeC and FCC-eh has been worked out with a tenfold increased peak luminosity goal, of $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, as compared to the CDR. A comprehensive paper, “The LHeC at the HL-LHC”, is being finalised for publication this year.

Within this work, it has been shown that the LHeC represents the cleanest, high resolution microscope the world can currently build, a seminal opportunity to develop and explore QCD, to study high precision Higgs and electroweak physics and to substantially extend the range and prospects for accessing BSM physics, on its own and in combination of pp with ep. The LHeC, in eA scattering mode, has a unique discovery potential on nuclear structure, dynamics and QGP physics.

Intense eh collisions with LHeC and FCC-eh are enabled through a special electron-beam race-track arrangement with energy recovery linac (ERL) technology. If LHeC were to be considered either on its own merits, or as a bridge project to FCC-eh, it seemed important to find a configuration, which could be realised within the existing CERN budget. Several options were studied and found.

Before a decision on such a project can be taken, the ERL technology has to be further developed. Considerable progress has been made in the USA, and a major effort is now necessary to develop it further in Europe. An international collaboration (ASTeC, BINP, CERN, Jefferson Lab, Liverpool, Orsay) has been formed to realise the first multi-turn 10 MW ERL facility, PERLE at Orsay, with its main parameters set by the LHeC and producing the first encouraging results on 802 MHz cavity technology, for the CDR see arXiv:1705.08783.

This radically new accelerator technology, ERL, has an outstanding technical (SRF), physics (nuclear physics) and industrial (lithography, transmutations, ..) impact, and offers possible applications beyond ep (such as a racetrack injector or ERL layout for FCC-ee, a high energy FEL or $\gamma\gamma$ collider).

In conclusion it may be stated

- The installation and operation of the LHeC has been demonstrated to be commensurate with the currently projected HL-LHC program, while the FCC-eh has been integrated into the FCC vision;
- The feasibility of the project as far as accelerator issues and detectors are concerned has been shown. It can only be realised at CERN and would fully exploit the massive LHC and HL-LHC investments;
- The sensitivity for discoveries of new physics is comparable, and in some cases superior, to the other projects envisaged;
- The addition of an ep/A experiment to the LHC substantially reinforces the physics program of the facility, especially in the areas of QCD, precision Higgs and electroweak as well as heavy ion physics;
- The operation of LHeC and FCC-eh is compatible with simultaneous pp operation; for LHeC the interaction point 2 would be the appropriate choice, which is currently used by ALICE;

- The development of the ERL technology needs to be intensified in Europe, in national laboratories but with the collaboration of CERN;
- A preparatory phase is still necessary to work out some time-sensitive key elements, especially the high power ERL technology (PERLE) and the prototyping of Intersection Region magnets.

Recommendations

i) It is recommended to further develop the ERL based ep/A scattering plans, both at LHC and FCC, as attractive options for the mid and long term programme of CERN, resp. Before a decision on such a project can be taken, further development work is necessary, and should be supported, possibly within existing CERN frameworks (e.g. development of SC cavities and high field IR magnets).

ii) The development of the promising high-power beam-recovery technology ERL should be intensified in Europe. This could be done mainly in national laboratories, in particular with the PERLE project at Orsay. To facilitate such a collaboration, CERN should express its interest and continue to take part.

iii) It is recommended to keep the LHeC option open until further decisions have been taken. An investigation should be started on the compatibility between the LHeC and a new heavy ion experiment in Interaction Point 2, which is currently under discussion.

After the final results of the European Strategy Process will be made known, the IAC considers its task to be completed. A new decision will then have to be taken for how to continue these activities.

Herwig Schopper, Chair of the Committee,

Geneva, November 4, 2019

Mandate of the International Advisory Committee

Advice to the LHeC Coordination Group and the CERN directorate by following the development of options of an ep/eA collider at the LHC and at FCC, especially with: Provision of scientific and technical direction for the physics potential of the ep/eA collider, both at LHC and at FCC, as a function of the machine parameters and of a realistic detector design, as well as for the design and possible approval of an ERL test facility at CERN. Assistance in building the international case for the accelerator and detector developments as well as guidance to the resource, infrastructure and science policy aspects of the ep/eA collider. (December 2014)

Members of the Committee

Sergio Bertolucci (Bologna)	Max Klein (Liverpool, coordinator)
Nichola Bianchi (INFN, now Singapore)	Shin-Ichi Kurokawa (KEK)
Frederick Bordy (CERN)	Victor Matveev (JINR Dubna)
Stan Brodsky (SLAC)	Aleandro Nisati (Rome I)
Oliver Brüning (CERN, coordinator)	Leonid Rivkin (PSI Villigen)
Hesheng Chen (Beijing)	Herwig Schopper (CERN, em.DG, Chair)
Eckhard Elsen (CERN)	Jürgen Schukraft (CERN)
Stefano Forte (Milano)	Achille Stocchi (Orsay)
Andrew Hutton (Jefferson Lab)	John Womersley (ESS Lund)
Young-Kee Kim (Chicago)	

Bibliography

- [1] LHeC Study Group Collaboration, J. L. Abelleira Fernandez *et al.*, *J. Phys.* G39 (2012) 075001, [arXiv:1206.2913](#).
- [2] G. Apollinari, I. Béjar Alonso, O. Bruening, P. Fessia, M. Lamont, L. Rossi and L. Tavian, *CERN Yellow Rep. Monogr.* 4 (2017) 1–516.
- [3] L. Rossi and O. Bruening, “Progress with the High Luminosity LHC project at CERN,” in *Proceedings, 10th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC2019): Melbourne, Australia, May 19-24, 2019*, p. MOYPLM3. 2019.
- [4] D. Angal-Kalinin *et al.*, *J. Phys.* G45 (2018) 065003, [arXiv:1705.08783](#).
- [5] LHeC and P. Collaboration, .
- [6] LHeC, PERLE Collaboration, O. Bruening and M. Klein, *J. Phys.* G46 (2019) 123001.
- [7] L. Collaboration, .
- [8] P. Collaboration, .
- [9] S. Hossenfelder, *Lost in math*. Basic Books, New York, 2018.
- [10] G. Altarelli, *Frascati Phys. Ser.* 58 (2014) 102, [arXiv:1407.2122](#).
- [11] J. De Hondt, .
- [12] FCC Collaboration, A. Abada *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C79 (2019) 474.
- [13] FCC Collaboration, A. Abada *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* ST 228 (2019) 261–623.
- [14] FCC Collaboration, A. Abada *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* ST 228 (2019) 755–1107.
- [15] C.-S. S. Group, .
- [16] CEPC Study Group Collaboration, M. Dong *et al.*, [arXiv:1811.10545](#).
- [17] R. P. Feynman, .
- [18] E. D. Bloom *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 23 (1969) 930–934.
- [19] M. Breidenbach, J. I. Friedman, H. W. Kendall, E. D. Bloom, D. H. Coward, H. C. DeStaebler, J. Drees, L. W. Mo and R. E. Taylor, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 23 (1969) 935–939.
- [20] R. P. Feynman, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 23 (1969) 1415–1417. [494(1969)].
- [21] J. D. Bjorken and E. A. Paschos, *Phys. Rev.* 185 (1969) 1975–1982.
- [22] C. Y. Prescott *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* 77B (1978) 347–352. [6.31(1978)].
- [23] S. Weinberg, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 19 (1967) 1264.
- [24] B. H. Wiik, *Acta Phys. Polon.* B16 (1985) 127–147.
- [25] M. Klein and R. Yoshida, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* 61 (2008) 343–393, [arXiv:0805.3334](#).
- [26] A. De Rujula, S. L. Glashow, H. D. Politzer, S. B. Treiman, F. Wilczek and A. Zee, *Phys. Rev.* D10 (1974) 1649.
- [27] FCC Collaboration, A. Abada *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* ST 228 (2019) 1109–1382.
- [28] F. Marhauser *et al.*, “802 MHz ERL Cavity Design and Development,” in *Proceedings, 9th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC 2018): Vancouver, BC Canada, April 29-May 4, 2018*, p. THPAL146. 2018.
- [29] V. N. Litvinenko, T. Roser and M. Chamizo Llatas, [arXiv:1909.04437](#).
- [30] O. Bruening, *CERN-Acc-Note-2018-0061* (2018) .

- [31] A. Bogacz, *Talk at ERL Workshop, Berlin* (2019) .
- [32] O. Bruning, J. Jowett, M. Klein, D. Pellegrini, D. Schulte and F. Zimmermann, .
- [33] F. Bordry *et al.*, .
- [34] R. Abdul Khalek, S. Bailey, J. Gao, L. Harland-Lang and J. Rojo, *Eur. Phys. J. C*78 (2018) 962, [arXiv:1810.03639](#).
- [35] R. Abdul Khalek, S. Bailey, J. Gao, L. Harland-Lang and J. Rojo, [arXiv:1906.10127](#).
- [36] J. Butterworth *et al.*, *J. Phys. G*43 (2016) 023001, [arXiv:1510.03865](#).
- [37] H. Paukkunen and P. Zurita, *JHEP* 12 (2014) 100, [arXiv:1402.6623](#).
- [38] C. Schmidt, J. Pumplin, C. P. Yuan and P. Yuan, *Phys. Rev. D*98 (2018) 094005, [arXiv:1806.07950](#).
- [39] T. J. Hobbs, B.-T. Wang, P. M. Nadolsky and F. I. Olness, *PoS DIS2019* (2019) 247, [arXiv:1907.00988](#).
- [40] B.-T. Wang, T. J. Hobbs, S. Doyle, J. Gao, T.-J. Hou, P. M. Nadolsky and F. I. Olness, *Phys. Rev. D*98 (2018) 094030, [arXiv:1803.02777](#).
- [41] R. D. Ball, V. Bertone, M. Bonvini, S. Marzani, J. Rojo and L. Rottoli, *Eur. Phys. J. C*78 (2018) 321, [arXiv:1710.05935](#).
- [42] xFitter Developers' Team Collaboration, H. Abdolmaleki *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*78 (2018) 621, [arXiv:1802.00064](#).
- [43] M. Bonvini and S. Marzani, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 120 (2018) 202003, [arXiv:1802.07758](#).
- [44] M. Klein, "Future Deep Inelastic Scattering with the LHeC," in *From My Vast Repertoire ...: Guido Altarelli's Legacy*, A. Levy, S. Forte and G. Ridolfi (eds.), pp. 303–347. 2019. [arXiv:1802.04317](#).
- [45] NNPDF Collaboration, R. Abdul Khalek, J. J. Ethier and J. Rojo, *Eur. Phys. J. C*79 (2019) 471, [arXiv:1904.00018](#).
- [46] A. M. Cooper-Sarkar and K. Wichmann, *Phys. Rev. D*98 (2018) 014027, [arXiv:1803.00968](#).
- [47] xFitter Developers' Team Collaboration, H. Abdolmaleki *et al.*, [arXiv:1907.01014](#).
- [48] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 109 (2012) 012001, [arXiv:1203.4051](#).
- [49] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*77 (2017) 367, [arXiv:1612.03016](#).
- [50] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *JHEP* 05 (2014) 068, [arXiv:1402.6263](#).
- [51] CMS Collaboration, S. Chatrchyan *et al.*, *JHEP* 02 (2014) 013, [arXiv:1310.1138](#).
- [52] G. Zweig, .
- [53] H. Fritzsch, M. Gell-Mann and H. Leutwyler, *Phys. Lett.* 47B (1973) 365–368.
- [54] D. J. Gross and F. Wilczek, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 30 (1973) 1343–1346. [,271(1973)].
- [55] H. D. Politzer, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 30 (1973) 1346–1349. [,274(1973)].
- [56] G. Dissertori, *Adv. Ser. Direct. High Energy Phys.* 26 (2016) 113–128, [arXiv:1506.05407](#).
- [57] Particle Data Group Collaboration, M. Tanabashi *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D*98 (2018) 030001.
- [58] D. d'Enterria *et al.*, *PoS ALPHAS2019* (2019) 001, [arXiv:1907.01435](#).
- [59] K. H. Streng, T. F. Walsh and P. M. Zerwas, *Z. Phys. C*2 (1979) 237.
- [60] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*67 (2010) 1–24, [arXiv:0911.5678](#).
- [61] S. D. Ellis and D. E. Soper, *Phys. Rev. D*48 (1993) 3160–3166, [arXiv:hep-ph/9305266](#).
- [62] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*13 (2000) 397, [arXiv:hep-ex/9812024](#).
- [63] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*19 (2001) 289, [arXiv:hep-ex/0010054](#).
- [64] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*542 (2002) 193, [arXiv:hep-ex/0206029](#).
- [65] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*33 (2004) 477, [arXiv:hep-ex/0310019](#).
- [66] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*37 (2004) 141, [arXiv:hep-ex/0401010](#).
- [67] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*653 (2007) 134, [arXiv:0706.3722](#).
- [68] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*65 (2010) 363, [arXiv:0904.3870](#).
- [69] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*75 (2015) 65, [arXiv:1406.4709](#).
- [70] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*77 (2017) 215, [arXiv:1611.03421](#).
- [71] ZEUS Collaboration, J. Breitweg *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*479 (2000) 37, [arXiv:hep-ex/0002010](#).

- [72] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*23 (2002) 13, [arXiv:hep-ex/0109029](#).
- [73] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*547 (2002) 164, [arXiv:hep-ex/0208037](#).
- [74] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*35 (2004) 487, [arXiv:hep-ex/0404033](#).
- [75] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys. B*765 (2007) 1, [arXiv:hep-ex/0608048](#).
- [76] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*649 (2007) 12, [arXiv:hep-ex/0701039](#).
- [77] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*70 (2010) 965, [arXiv:1010.6167](#).
- [78] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*691 (2010) 127, [arXiv:1003.2923](#).
- [79] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JHEP* 03 (2017) 156, [arXiv:1609.05331](#).
- [80] K. Rabbertz, *Springer Tracts Mod. Phys.* 268 (2017) pp.1–214.
- [81] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *JHEP* 09 (2017) 020, [arXiv:1706.03192](#).
- [82] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *JHEP* 05 (2018) 195, [arXiv:1711.02692](#).
- [83] J. Currie, T. Gehrmann and J. Niehues, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 117 (2016) 042001, [arXiv:1606.03991](#).
- [84] J. Currie, T. Gehrmann, A. Huss and J. Niehues, *JHEP* 07 (2017) 018, [arXiv:1703.05977](#).
- [85] T. Gehrmann *et al.*, *PoS RADCOR2017* (2018) 074, [arXiv:1801.06415](#).
- [86] T. Kluge, K. Rabbertz and M. Wobisch, “FastNLO: Fast pQCD calculations for PDF fits,” in *Deep inelastic scattering. Proceedings, 14th International Workshop, DIS 2006, Tsukuba, Japan, April 20-24, 2006*, pp. 483–486. 2006. [arXiv:hep-ph/0609285](#).
http://lss.fnal.gov/cgi-bin/find_paper.pl?conf-06-352.
- [87] fastNLO Collaboration, D. Britzger, K. Rabbertz, F. Stober and M. Wobisch, “New features in version 2 of the fastNLO project,” in *Proceedings, 20th International Workshop on Deep-Inelastic Scattering and Related Subjects (DIS 2012): Bonn, Germany, March 26-30, 2012*, pp. 217–221. 2012. [arXiv:1208.3641](#).
- [88] D. Britzger *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*79 (2019) 845, [arXiv:1906.05303](#).
- [89] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*77 (2017) 791, [arXiv:1709.07251](#).
- [90] H1, ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*75 (2015) 580, [arXiv:1506.06042](#).
- [91] R. Kogler, *Measurement of jet production in deep-inelastic e p scattering at HERA*. PhD thesis, Hamburg U., 2011.
- [92] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JINST* 12 (2017) P02014, [arXiv:1607.03663](#).
- [93] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, [arXiv:1910.04482](#).
- [94] J. R. Ellis, E. Gardi, M. Karliner and M. A. Samuel, *Phys. Lett. B*366 (1996) 268–275, [arXiv:hep-ph/9509312](#).
- [95] S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. D*85 (2012) 034038, [arXiv:1111.6175](#). [Erratum: *Phys. Rev. D*86,079903(2012)].
- [96] S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 109 (2012) 042002, [arXiv:1203.5312](#).
- [97] S. J. Brodsky and L. Di Giustino, *Phys. Rev. D*86 (2012) 085026, [arXiv:1107.0338](#).
- [98] M. Mojaza, S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 110 (2013) 192001, [arXiv:1212.0049](#).
- [99] S. J. Brodsky, M. Mojaza and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. D*89 (2014) 014027, [arXiv:1304.4631](#).
- [100] S. J. Brodsky and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. D*86 (2012) 054018, [arXiv:1208.0700](#).
- [101] X.-G. Wu, Y. Ma, S.-Q. Wang, H.-B. Fu, H.-H. Ma, S. J. Brodsky and M. Mojaza, *Rept. Prog. Phys.* 78 (2015) 126201, [arXiv:1405.3196](#).
- [102] X.-G. Wu, J.-M. Shen, B.-L. Du, X.-D. Huang, S.-Q. Wang and S. J. Brodsky, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* 108 (2019) 103706, [arXiv:1903.12177](#).
- [103] S. J. Brodsky, G. P. Lepage and P. B. Mackenzie, *Phys. Rev. D*28 (1983) 228.
- [104] M. Gell-Mann and F. E. Low, *Phys. Rev.* 95 (1954) 1300–1312.
- [105] S. J. Brodsky and P. Huet, *Phys. Lett. B*417 (1998) 145–153, [arXiv:hep-ph/9707543](#).
- [106] S.-Q. Wang, S. J. Brodsky, X.-G. Wu, J.-M. Shen and L. Di Giustino, *Phys. Rev. D*100 (2019) 094010, [arXiv:1908.00060](#).
- [107] T. Gehrmann, N. Häfliger and P. F. Monni, *Eur. Phys. J. C*74 (2014) 2896, [arXiv:1401.6809](#).
- [108] Particle Data Group Collaboration, M. Tanabashi *et al.*, “2019 Update of the Review of Particle Physics,” in *ref. [57] and online at pdglive.lbl.gov*.

- [109] Flavour Lattice Averaging Group Collaboration, S. Aoki *et al.*, [arXiv:1902.08191](#).
- [110] D. Boito, M. Golterman, K. Maltman, J. Osborne and S. Peris, *Phys. Rev. D* **91** (2015) 034003, [arXiv:1410.3528](#).
- [111] Gfitter Group Collaboration, M. Baak, J. Cúth, J. Haller, A. Hoecker, R. Kogler, K. Mönig, M. Schott and J. Stelzer, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **74** (2014) 3046, [arXiv:1407.3792](#).
- [112] P. Azzi *et al.*, *CERN Yellow Rep. Monogr.* **7** (2019) 1–220, [arXiv:1902.04070](#).
- [113] I. Abt, A. M. Cooper-Sarkar, B. Foster, V. Myronenko, K. Wichmann and M. Wing, *Phys. Rev. D* **96** (2017) 014001, [arXiv:1704.03187](#). [*Phys. Rev. D* **96**, 014001 (2017)].
- [114] M. Dasgupta and G. P. Salam, *J. Phys. G* **30** (2004) R143, [arXiv:hep-ph/0312283](#).
- [115] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **46** (2006) 343–356, [arXiv:hep-ex/0512014](#).
- [116] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **767** (2007) 1–28, [arXiv:hep-ex/0604032](#).
- [117] D. Kang, C. Lee and I. W. Stewart, *Phys. Rev. D* **88** (2013) 054004, [arXiv:1303.6952](#).
- [118] Z.-B. Kang, X. Liu and S. Mantry, *Phys. Rev. D* **90** (2014) 014041, [arXiv:1312.0301](#).
- [119] D. Kang, C. Lee and I. W. Stewart, *PoS DIS2015* (2015) 142.
- [120] G. Abelof, R. Boughezal, X. Liu and F. Petriello, *Phys. Lett. B* **763** (2016) 52–59, [arXiv:1607.04921](#).
- [121] S. Höche, S. Kuttimalai and Y. Li, *Phys. Rev. D* **98** (2018) 114013, [arXiv:1809.04192](#).
- [122] J. Currie, T. Gehrmann, E. W. N. Glover, A. Huss, J. Niehues and A. Vogt, *JHEP* **05** (2018) 209, [arXiv:1803.09973](#).
- [123] T. Gehrmann, A. Huss, J. Mo and J. Niehues, [arXiv:1909.02760](#).
- [124] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **29** (2003) 497–513, [arXiv:hep-ex/0302034](#).
- [125] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B* **639** (2006) 21–31, [arXiv:hep-ex/0603014](#).
- [126] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* **76** (2007) 072011, [arXiv:0706.3809](#).
- [127] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **864** (2012) 1–37, [arXiv:1205.6153](#).
- [128] M. Klasen, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **74** (2002) 1221–1282, [arXiv:hep-ph/0206169](#).
- [129] M. Gluck, E. Reya and A. Vogt, *Phys. Rev. D* **46** (1992) 1973–1979.
- [130] K. Sasaki, T. Ueda and T. Uematsu, *CERN Proc.* **1** (2018) 7.
- [131] O. Behnke, A. Geiser and M. Lisovskyi, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* **84** (2015) 1–72, [arXiv:1506.07519](#).
- [132] O. Zenaiev, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **77** (2017) 151, [arXiv:1612.02371](#).
- [133] H1, ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *JHEP* **09** (2015) 149, [arXiv:1503.06042](#).
- [134] H1, ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **78** (2018) 473, [arXiv:1804.01019](#).
- [135] A. J. Larkoski, I. Moult and B. Nachman, [arXiv:1709.04464](#).
- [136] *Les Houches 2017: Physics at TeV Colliders Standard Model Working Group Report*. 2018. [arXiv:1803.07977](#). <http://lss.fnal.gov/archive/2018/conf/fermilab-conf-18-122-cd-t.pdf>.
- [137] F. Ringer, *PoS ALPHAS2019* (2019) 010.
- [138] I. I. Balitsky and L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* **28** (1978) 822–829. [*Yad. Fiz.* **28**, 1597 (1978)].
- [139] E. A. Kuraev, L. N. Lipatov and V. S. Fadin, *Sov. Phys. JETP* **45** (1977) 199–204. [*Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.* **72**, 377 (1977)].
- [140] L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. Phys. JETP* **63** (1986) 904–912. [*Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.* **90**, 1536 (1986)].
- [141] V. S. Fadin and L. N. Lipatov, *Phys. Lett. B* **429** (1998) 127–134, [arXiv:hep-ph/9802290](#).
- [142] M. Ciafaloni and G. Camici, *Phys. Lett. B* **430** (1998) 349–354, [arXiv:hep-ph/9803389](#).
- [143] J. Blumlein and A. Vogt, *Phys. Rev. D* **58** (1998) 014020, [arXiv:hep-ph/9712546](#).
- [144] D. A. Ross, *Phys. Lett. B* **431** (1998) 161–165, [arXiv:hep-ph/9804332](#).
- [145] Y. V. Kovchegov and A. H. Mueller, *Phys. Lett. B* **439** (1998) 428–436, [arXiv:hep-ph/9805208](#).
- [146] E. Levin, *Nucl. Phys. B* **545** (1999) 481–504, [arXiv:hep-ph/9806228](#).
- [147] N. Armesto, J. Bartels and M. A. Braun, *Phys. Lett. B* **442** (1998) 459–469, [arXiv:hep-ph/9808340](#).
- [148] M. Ciafaloni, *Nucl. Phys. B* **296** (1988) 49–74.
- [149] B. Andersson, G. Gustafson and J. Samuelsson, *Nucl. Phys. B* **467** (1996) 443–478.

- [150] J. Kwiecinski, A. D. Martin and P. J. Sutton, *Z. Phys.* C71 (1996) 585–594, [arXiv:hep-ph/9602320](#).
- [151] J. Kwiecinski, A. D. Martin and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev.* D56 (1997) 3991–4006, [arXiv:hep-ph/9703445](#).
- [152] G. P. Salam, *JHEP* 07 (1998) 019, [arXiv:hep-ph/9806482](#).
- [153] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai and G. P. Salam, *JHEP* 10 (1999) 017, [arXiv:hep-ph/9907409](#).
- [154] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai and G. P. Salam, *Phys. Rev.* D60 (1999) 114036, [arXiv:hep-ph/9905566](#).
- [155] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Lett.* B576 (2003) 143–151, [arXiv:hep-ph/0305254](#).
- [156] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Lett.* B587 (2004) 87–94, [arXiv:hep-ph/0311325](#).
- [157] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev.* D68 (2003) 114003, [arXiv:hep-ph/0307188](#).
- [158] M. Ciafaloni, D. Colferai, G. P. Salam and A. M. Stasto, *JHEP* 08 (2007) 046, [arXiv:0707.1453](#).
- [159] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys.* B575 (2000) 313–329, [arXiv:hep-ph/9911273](#).
- [160] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys.* B599 (2001) 383–423, [arXiv:hep-ph/0011270](#).
- [161] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys.* B621 (2002) 359–387, [arXiv:hep-ph/0109178](#).
- [162] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys.* B674 (2003) 459–483, [arXiv:hep-ph/0306156](#).
- [163] G. Altarelli, R. D. Ball and S. Forte, *Nucl. Phys.* B799 (2008) 199–240, [arXiv:0802.0032](#).
- [164] R. S. Thorne, *Phys. Rev.* D64 (2001) 074005, [arXiv:hep-ph/0103210](#).
- [165] A. Sabio Vera, *Nucl. Phys.* B722 (2005) 65–80, [arXiv:hep-ph/0505128](#).
- [166] M. Bonvini, S. Marzani and T. Peraro, *Eur. Phys. J.* C76 (2016) 597, [arXiv:1607.02153](#).
- [167] V. Bertone, S. Carrazza and J. Rojo, *Comput. Phys. Commun.* 185 (2014) 1647–1668, [arXiv:1310.1394](#).
- [168] M. Bonvini, S. Marzani and C. Muselli, *JHEP* 12 (2017) 117, [arXiv:1708.07510](#).
- [169] R. Gandhi, C. Quigg, M. H. Reno and I. Sarcevic, *Phys. Rev.* D58 (1998) 093009, [arXiv:hep-ph/9807264](#).
- [170] IceCube Collaboration, M. G. Aartsen *et al.*, *JINST* 12 (2017) P03012, [arXiv:1612.05093](#).
- [171] J. Kwiecinski, A. D. Martin and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev.* D59 (1999) 093002, [arXiv:astro-ph/9812262](#).
- [172] IceCube Collaboration, M. G. Aartsen *et al.*, *Nature* 551 (2017) 596–600, [arXiv:1711.08119](#).
- [173] T. K. Gaisser, *Cosmic rays and particle physics*. 1990. <http://www.cambridge.org/uk/catalogue/catalogue.asp?isbn=0521326672>.
- [174] IceCube Collaboration, M. G. Aartsen *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 113 (2014) 101101, [arXiv:1405.5303](#).
- [175] G. Gelmini, P. Gondolo and G. Varieschi, *Phys. Rev.* D61 (2000) 056011, [arXiv:hep-ph/9905377](#).
- [176] A. Bhattacharya, R. Enberg, Y. S. Jeong, C. S. Kim, M. H. Reno, I. Sarcevic and A. Stasto, *JHEP* 11 (2016) 167, [arXiv:1607.00193](#).
- [177] L. N. Hand, D. G. Miller and R. Wilson, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* 35 (1963) 335.
- [178] G. Miller *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D5 (1972) 528.
- [179] E. M. Riordan, A. Bodek, M. Breidenbach, D. L. Dubin, J. E. Elias, J. I. Friedman, H. W. Kendall, J. S. Poucher, M. R. Sogard and D. H. Coward, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 33 (1974) 561.
- [180] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C71 (2011) 1579, [arXiv:1012.4355](#).
- [181] G. Altarelli and G. Martinelli, *Phys. Lett.* 76B (1978) 89–94.
- [182] M. Gluck, E. Hoffmann and E. Reya, *Z. Phys.* C13 (1982) 119.
- [183] C. Ewerz and O. Nachtmann, *Annals Phys.* 322 (2007) 1670–1726, [arXiv:hep-ph/0604087](#).
- [184] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C74 (2014) 2814, [arXiv:1312.4821](#).
- [185] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D85 (2012) 072004, [arXiv:1109.5141](#).
- [186] G. Altarelli, *Nuovo Cim.* C035N1 (2012) 1–8, [arXiv:1106.3189](#).
- [187] J. Blumlein and M. Klein, “Kinematics and resolution at future e p colliders,” in *1990 DPF Summer Study on High-energy Physics: Research Directions for the Decade (Snowmass 90) Snowmass, Colorado, June 25-July 13, 1990*, pp. 549–551. 1990.
- [188] J. Blumlein and M. Klein, *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.* A329 (1993) 112–116.

- [189] S. Bentvelsen, J. Engelen and P. Kooijman, “Reconstruction of (x, Q^{*2}) and extraction of structure functions in neutral current scattering at HERA,” in *Workshop on Physics at HERA Hamburg, Germany, October 29-30, 1991*, pp. 23–42. 1992.
- [190] U. Bassler and G. Bernardi, *Nucl. Instrum. Meth.* A426 (1999) 583–598, [arXiv:hep-ex/9801017](#).
- [191] A. Accardi *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* A52 (2016) 268, [arXiv:1212.1701](#).
- [192] A. V. Belitsky, X.-d. Ji and F. Yuan, *Phys. Rev.* D69 (2004) 074014, [arXiv:hep-ph/0307383](#).
- [193] N. N. Nikolaev and B. G. Zakharov, *Z. Phys.* C49 (1991) 607–618. [,733(1990)].
- [194] N. Nikolaev and B. G. Zakharov, *Z. Phys.* C53 (1992) 331–346.
- [195] N. N. Nikolaev and B. G. Zakharov, *J. Exp. Theor. Phys.* 78 (1994) 598–618. [Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.105,1117(1994)].
- [196] N. N. Nikolaev, B. G. Zakharov and V. R. Zoller, *Z. Phys.* A351 (1995) 435–446.
- [197] A. H. Mueller, *Nucl. Phys.* B415 (1994) 373–385.
- [198] A. H. Mueller and B. Patel, *Nucl. Phys.* B425 (1994) 471–488, [arXiv:hep-ph/9403256](#).
- [199] U. Amaldi and K. R. Schubert, *Nucl. Phys.* B166 (1980) 301–320.
- [200] S. Munier, A. M. Stasto and A. H. Mueller, *Nucl. Phys.* B603 (2001) 427–445, [arXiv:hep-ph/0102291](#).
- [201] N. Armesto and A. H. Rezaeian, *Phys. Rev.* D90 (2014) 054003, [arXiv:1402.4831](#).
- [202] H. Kowalski and D. Teaney, *Phys. Rev.* D68 (2003) 114005, [arXiv:hep-ph/0304189](#).
- [203] H. Kowalski, L. Motyka and G. Watt, *Phys. Rev.* D74 (2006) 074016, [arXiv:hep-ph/0606272](#).
- [204] G. Watt and H. Kowalski, *Phys. Rev.* D78 (2008) 014016, [arXiv:0712.2670](#).
- [205] Y. Hatta, B.-W. Xiao and F. Yuan, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 116 (2016) 202301, [arXiv:1601.01585](#).
- [206] T. Altinoluk, N. Armesto, G. Beuf and A. H. Rezaeian, *Phys. Lett.* B758 (2016) 373–383, [arXiv:1511.07452](#).
- [207] H. Mantysaari, N. Mueller and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev.* D99 (2019) 074004, [arXiv:1902.05087](#).
- [208] F. Salazar and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev.* D100 (2019) 034007, [arXiv:1905.03763](#).
- [209] H. Mantysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 117 (2016) 052301, [arXiv:1603.04349](#).
- [210] H. Mantysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev.* D94 (2016) 034042, [arXiv:1607.01711](#).
- [211] H. Mantysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Lett.* B772 (2017) 832–838, [arXiv:1703.09256](#).
- [212] H. Mantysaari and B. Schenke, *Phys. Rev.* D98 (2018) 034013, [arXiv:1806.06783](#).
- [213] J. Cepila, J. G. Contreras and J. D. Tapia Takaki, *Phys. Lett.* B766 (2017) 186–191, [arXiv:1608.07559](#).
- [214] D. Bendova, J. Cepila and J. G. Contreras, *Phys. Rev.* D99 (2019) 034025, [arXiv:1811.06479](#).
- [215] M. Krelina, V. P. Goncalves and J. Cepila, *Nucl. Phys.* A989 (2019) 187–200, [arXiv:1905.06759](#).
- [216] H1 Collaboration, C. Adloff *et al.*, *Z. Phys.* C76 (1997) 613–629, [arXiv:hep-ex/9708016](#).
- [217] ZEUS Collaboration, J. Breitweg *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C1 (1998) 81–96, [arXiv:hep-ex/9709021](#).
- [218] P. Newman and M. Wing, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* 86 (2014) 1037, [arXiv:1308.3368](#).
- [219] V. N. Gribov, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 29 (1969) 483–487. [Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.56,892(1969)].
- [220] J. C. Collins, *Phys. Rev.* D57 (1998) 3051–3056, [arXiv:hep-ph/9709499](#). [Erratum: Phys. Rev.D61,019902(2000)].
- [221] A. Berera and D. E. Soper, *Phys. Rev.* D53 (1996) 6162–6179, [arXiv:hep-ph/9509239](#).
- [222] L. Trentadue and G. Veneziano, *Phys. Lett.* B323 (1994) 201–211.
- [223] N. Armesto, P. R. Newman, W. Slominski and A. M. Stasto, *Phys. Rev.* D100 (2019) 074022, [arXiv:1901.09076](#).
- [224] H. Khanpour, *Phys. Rev.* D99 (2019) 054007, [arXiv:1902.10734](#).
- [225] H1 Collaboration Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur.Phys.J.* C48 (2006) 715–748, [arXiv:hep-ex/0606004](#).
- [226] ZEUS Collaboration Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl.Phys.* B816 (2009) 1–61, [arXiv:0812.2003](#).
- [227] H1 Collaboration Collaboration, F. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur.Phys.J.* C72 (2012) 2074, [arXiv:1203.4495](#).
- [228] H1, ZEUS Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C72 (2012) 2175, [arXiv:1207.4864](#).
- [229] ZEUS Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B713 (2005) 3–80, [arXiv:hep-ex/0501060](#).

- [230] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 48 (2006) 749–766, [arXiv:hep-ex/0606003](#).
- [231] ZEUS Collaboration Collaboration, S. Chekanov *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B831 (2010) 1–25, [arXiv:0911.4119](#).
- [232] H1 Collaboration, F. Aaron *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C71 (2011) 1578, [arXiv:1010.1476](#).
- [233] V. N. Gribov and L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* 15 (1972) 675–684. [*Yad. Fiz.*15,1218(1972)].
- [234] V. N. Gribov and L. N. Lipatov, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* 15 (1972) 438–450. [*Yad. Fiz.*15,781(1972)].
- [235] G. Altarelli and G. Parisi, *Nucl. Phys.* B126 (1977) 298–318.
- [236] Y. L. Dokshitzer, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 46 (1977) 641–653. [*Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.*73,1216(1977)].
- [237] J. C. Collins and W.-K. Tung, *Nucl. Phys.* B278 (1986) 934.
- [238] R. S. Thorne and W. K. Tung, [arXiv:0809.0714](#).
- [239] J. F. Owens, *Phys. Rev.* D30 (1984) 943.
- [240] M. Gluck, E. Reya and A. Vogt, *Z. Phys.* C53 (1992) 651–656.
- [241] R. S. Thorne and R. G. Roberts, *Phys. Rev.* D57 (1998) 6871–6898, [arXiv:hep-ph/9709442](#).
- [242] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B754 (2016) 214–234, [arXiv:1511.00502](#).
- [243] D. Britzger, J. Currie, T. Gehrmann, A. Huss, J. Niehues and R. Žlebčík, *Eur. Phys. J.* C78 (2018) 538, [arXiv:1804.05663](#).
- [244] Z. Nagy, *Phys. Rev.* D68 (2003) 094002, [arXiv:hep-ph/0307268](#).
- [245] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Teramond, H. G. Dosch and J. Erlich, *Phys. Rept.* 584 (2015) 1–105, [arXiv:1407.8131](#).
- [246] G. F. de Teramond, H. G. Dosch and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev.* D87 (2013) 075005, [arXiv:1301.1651](#).
- [247] V. de Alfaro, S. Fubini and G. Furlan, *Nuovo Cim.* A34 (1976) 569.
- [248] G. Veneziano, *Nuovo Cim.* A57 (1968) 190–197.
- [249] A. Deur, S. J. Brodsky and G. F. de Teramond, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* 90 (2016) 1–74, [arXiv:1604.08082](#).
- [250] G. Grunberg, *Phys. Lett.* 95B (1980) 70. [Erratum: *Phys. Lett.*110B,501(1982)].
- [251] J. D. Bjorken, *Phys. Rev.* 148 (1966) 1467–1478.
- [252] A. Deur *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 93 (2004) 212001, [arXiv:hep-ex/0407007](#).
- [253] A. Deur, Y. Prok, V. Burkert, D. Crabb, F. X. Girod, K. A. Griffioen, N. Guler, S. E. Kuhn and N. Kvaltine, *Phys. Rev.* D90 (2014) 012009, [arXiv:1405.7854](#).
- [254] A. Deur *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D78 (2008) 032001, [arXiv:0802.3198](#).
- [255] S. J. Brodsky and H. J. Lu, *Phys. Rev.* D51 (1995) 3652–3668, [arXiv:hep-ph/9405218](#).
- [256] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Teramond and A. Deur, *Phys. Rev.* D81 (2010) 096010, [arXiv:1002.3948](#).
- [257] A. Deur, S. J. Brodsky and G. F. de Teramond, *Phys. Lett.* B750 (2015) 528–532, [arXiv:1409.5488](#).
- [258] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Teramond, A. Deur and H. G. Dosch, *Few Body Syst.* 56 (2015) 621–632, [arXiv:1410.0425](#).
- [259] A. Deur, V. Burkert, J.-P. Chen and W. Korsch, *Phys. Lett.* B650 (2007) 244–248, [arXiv:hep-ph/0509113](#).
- [260] A. Deur, V. Burkert, J. P. Chen and W. Korsch, *Phys. Lett.* B665 (2008) 349–351, [arXiv:0803.4119](#).
- [261] S. J. Brodsky, *J. Phys. Conf. Ser.* 1137 (2019) 012027.
- [262] G. P. Lepage and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Lett.* 87B (1979) 359–365.
- [263] A. V. Efremov and A. V. Radyushkin, *Phys. Lett.* 94B (1980) 245–250.
- [264] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. De Teramond and H. G. Dosch, *Phys. Lett.* B729 (2014) 3–8, [arXiv:1302.4105](#).
- [265] S. J. Brodsky, *Few Body Syst.* 57 (2016) 703–715, [arXiv:1601.06328](#).
- [266] R. S. Sufian, G. F. de Teramond, S. J. Brodsky, A. Deur and H. G. Dosch, *Phys. Rev.* D95 (2017) 014011, [arXiv:1609.06688](#).
- [267] HLFHS Collaboration, G. F. de Teramond, T. Liu, R. S. Sufian, H. G. Dosch, S. J. Brodsky and A. Deur, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 120 (2018) 182001, [arXiv:1801.09154](#).
- [268] T. Gutsche, V. E. Lyubovitskij, I. Schmidt and A. Vega, *Phys. Rev.* D91 (2015) 114001, [arXiv:1501.02738](#).
- [269] T. Gutsche, V. E. Lyubovitskij and I. Schmidt, *Phys. Rev.* D94 (2016) 116006, [arXiv:1607.04124](#).

- [270] H. G. Dosch, G. F. de Téramond and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev. D*91 (2015) 085016, [arXiv:1501.00959](#).
- [271] S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Téramond, H. G. Dosch and C. Lorcé, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A*31 (2016) 1630029, [arXiv:1606.04638](#).
- [272] M. Nielsen, S. J. Brodsky, G. F. de Téramond, H. G. Dosch, F. S. Navarra and L. Zou, *Phys. Rev. D*98 (2018) 034002, [arXiv:1805.11567](#).
- [273] G. F. de Téramond, H. G. Dosch and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev. D*91 (2015) 045040, [arXiv:1411.5243](#).
- [274] ANDY Collaboration, L. C. Bland *et al.*, [arXiv:1909.03124](#).
- [275] A. H. Mueller, *Nucl. Phys. B*335 (1990) 115–137.
- [276] S. Carrazza, S. Forte, Z. Kassabov, J. I. Latorre and J. Rojo, *Eur. Phys. J. C*75 (2015) 369, [arXiv:1505.06736](#).
- [277] J. Rojo and F. Caola, “Parton distributions and small- x QCD at the Large Hadron Electron Collider,” in *Proceedings, 17th International Workshop on Deep-Inelastic Scattering and Related Subjects (DIS 2009): Madrid, Spain, April 26-30, 2009*, p. 222, Science Wise Publ. Science Wise Publ., Berlin, Germany, 2009. [arXiv:0906.2079](#).
- [278] J. Bartels, K. J. Golec-Biernat and H. Kowalski, *Phys. Rev. D*66 (2002) 014001, [arXiv:hep-ph/0203258](#).
- [279] K. J. Golec-Biernat and S. Sapeta, *Phys. Rev. D*74 (2006) 054032, [arXiv:hep-ph/0607276](#).
- [280] K. Golec-Biernat and S. Sapeta, *JHEP* 03 (2018) 102, [arXiv:1711.11360](#).
- [281] J. Gao, L. Harland-Lang and J. Rojo, *Phys. Rept.* 742 (2018) 1–121, [arXiv:1709.04922](#).
- [282] S. Forte, E. Laenen, P. Nason and J. Rojo, *Nucl. Phys. B*834 (2010) 116–162, [arXiv:1001.2312](#).
- [283] V. Bertone, R. Gauld and J. Rojo, *JHEP* 01 (2019) 217, [arXiv:1808.02034](#).
- [284] S. L. Glashow, *Nucl. Phys.* 22 (1961) 579.
- [285] S. Weinberg, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 27 (1971) 1688.
- [286] S. Weinberg, *Phys. Rev. D*5 (1972) 1412.
- [287] A. Salam and J. C. Ward, *Phys. Lett.* 13 (1964) 168.
- [288] P. W. Higgs, *Phys. Lett.* 12 (1964) 132.
- [289] P. W. Higgs, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 13 (1964) 508.
- [290] F. Englert and R. Brout, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 13 (1964) 321.
- [291] H1 Collaboration, A. Aktas *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B*632 (2006) 35, [arXiv:hep-ex/0507080](#).
- [292] ZEUS Collaboration, H. Abramowicz *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D*93 (2016) 092002, [arXiv:1603.09628](#).
- [293] H1 Collaboration, V. Andreev *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C*78 (2018) 777, [arXiv:1806.01176](#).
- [294] M. Klein and T. Riemann, *Z. Phys. C*24 (1984) 151.
- [295] M. Böhm and H. Spiesberger, *Nucl. Phys. B*294 (1987) 1081.
- [296] D. Yu. Bardin, C. Burdik, P. C. Khristova and T. Riemann, *Z. Phys. C*42 (1989) 679.
- [297] W. Hollik, D. Yu. Bardin, J. Blümlein, B. A. Kniehl, T. Riemann and H. Spiesberger, “Electroweak parameters at HERA: Theoretical aspects,” in *Workshop on physics at HERA Hamburg, Germany, October 29-30, 1991*, p. 923. 1992.
- [298] M. Böhm and H. Spiesberger, *Nucl. Phys. B*304 (1988) 749.
- [299] D. Yu. Bardin, K. C. Burdik, P. K. Khristova and T. Riemann, *Z. Phys. C*44 (1989) 149.
- [300] A. Sirlin, *Phys. Rev. D*22 (1980) 971.
- [301] M. Böhm, H. Spiesberger and W. Hollik, *Fortsch. Phys.* 34 (1986) 687–751.
- [302] W. F. L. Hollik, *Fortsch. Phys.* 38 (1990) 165.
- [303] H1 Collaboration, F. D. Aaron *et al.*, *JHEP* 09 (2012) 061, [arXiv:1206.7007](#).
- [304] D. Britzger and M. Klein, *PoS DIS2017* (2018) 105.
- [305] M. Botje, *Comput. Phys. Commun.* 182 (2011) 490, [arXiv:1005.1481](#).
- [306] M. Botje, [arXiv:1602.08383](#).
- [307] H. Spiesberger, “EPRC: A program package for electroweak physics at HERA,” in *Future physics at HERA. Proceedings, Workshop, Hamburg, Germany, September 25, 1995-May 31, 1996. Vol. 1, 2*. 1995.

- [308] G. Cowan, K. Cranmer, E. Gross and O. Vitells, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 71 (2011) 1554, [arXiv:1007.1727](#). [Erratum: *Eur. Phys. J. C* 73 (2013) 2501].
- [309] CDF, D0 Collaboration, T. E. W. Group, [arXiv:1204.0042](#).
- [310] ALEPH, DELPHI, L3, OPAL, LEP Electroweak Collaboration, S. Schael *et al.*, *Phys. Rept.* 532 (2013) 119–244, [arXiv:1302.3415](#).
- [311] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 78 (2018) 110, [arXiv:1701.07240](#). [Erratum: *Eur. Phys. J. C* 78, no. 11, 898 (2018)].
- [312] J. de Blas, M. Ciuchini, E. Franco, S. Mishima, M. Pierini, L. Reina and L. Silvestrini, *JHEP* 12 (2016) 135, [arXiv:1608.01509](#).
- [313] J. Haller, A. Hoecker, R. Kogler, K. Mönig, T. Peiffer and J. Stelzer, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 78 (2018) 675, [arXiv:1803.01853](#).
- [314] MuLan Collaboration, V. Tishchenko *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 87 (2013) 052003, [arXiv:1211.0960](#).
- [315] M. Schott, “Global EW fits: experimental and theoretical issues,” Talk presented at the Ultimate Precision at Hadron Colliders, Sarclay, France, 2019.
- [316] ALEPH, DELPHI, L3, OPAL, SLD, LEP Electroweak Working Group, SLD Electroweak Group, SLD Heavy Flavour Group Collaboration, S. Schael *et al.*, *Phys. Rept.* 427 (2006) 257–454, [arXiv:hep-ex/0509008](#).
- [317] D0 Collaboration, V. M. Abazov *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 84 (2011) 012007, [arXiv:1104.4590](#).
- [318] CDF, D0 Collaboration, T. A. Aaltonen *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. D* 97 (2018) 112007, [arXiv:1801.06283](#).
- [319] LHCb Collaboration, R. Aaij *et al.*, *JHEP* 11 (2015) 190, [arXiv:1509.07645](#).
- [320] ATLAS Collaboration, T. A. collaboration, .
- [321] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 78 (2018) 701, [arXiv:1806.00863](#).
- [322] J. Erler, “Global fits of the SM parameters,” in *7th Large Hadron Collider Physics Conference (LHCP 2019) Puebla, Puebla, Mexico, May 20-25, 2019*. 2019. [arXiv:1908.07327](#).
- [323] J. Erler and M. Schott, *Prog. Part. Nucl. Phys.* 106 (2019) 68–119, [arXiv:1902.05142](#).
- [324] J. Alwall, R. Frederix, S. Frixione, V. Hirschi, F. Maltoni, O. Mattelaer, H. S. Shao, T. Stelzer, P. Torrielli and M. Zaro, *JHEP* 07 (2014) 079, [arXiv:1405.0301](#).
- [325] NNPDF Collaboration, R. D. Ball, V. Bertone, S. Carrazza, L. Del Debbio, S. Forte, A. Guffanti, N. P. Hartland and J. Rojo, *Nucl. Phys. B* 877 (2013) 290–320, [arXiv:1308.0598](#).
- [326] K. Hagiwara, S. Ishihara, R. Szalapski and D. Zeppenfeld, *Phys. Rev. D* 48 (1993) 2182–2203.
- [327] K. Hagiwara, S. Ishihara, R. Szalapski and D. Zeppenfeld, *Phys. Lett. B* 283 (1992) 353–359.
- [328] A. De Rujula, M. B. Gavela, P. Hernandez and E. Masso, *Nucl. Phys. B* 384 (1992) 3–58.
- [329] S. S. Biswal, M. Patra and S. Raychaudhuri, [arXiv:1405.6056](#).
- [330] I. T. Cakir, O. Cakir, A. Senol and A. T. Tasci, *Acta Phys. Polon. B* 45 (2014) 1947, [arXiv:1406.7696](#).
- [331] U. Baur and D. Zeppenfeld, *Nucl. Phys. B* 325 (1989) 253–274.
- [332] U. Baur, B. A. Kniehl, J. A. M. Vermaseren and D. Zeppenfeld, “Single W and Z production at LEP / LHC,” in *ECFA Large Hadron Collider Workshop, Aachen, Germany, 4-9 Oct 1990: Proceedings.2.*, pp. 956–966. 1990.
- [333] U. Baur, J. A. M. Vermaseren and D. Zeppenfeld, *Nucl. Phys. B* 375 (1992) 3–44.
- [334] R. Li, X.-M. Shen, K. Wang, T. Xu, L. Zhang and G. Zhu, *Phys. Rev. D* 97 (2018) 075043, [arXiv:1711.05607](#).
- [335] M. Köksal, A. A. Billur, A. Gutiérrez-Rodríguez and M. A. Hernández-Ruíz, [arXiv:1910.06747](#).
- [336] A. Gutiérrez-Rodríguez, M. Köksal, A. A. Billur and M. A. Hernández-Ruíz, [arXiv:1910.02307](#).
- [337] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B* 772 (2017) 21–42, [arXiv:1703.06095](#).
- [338] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, [arXiv:1907.08354](#).
- [339] S. Villa, *Nucl. Phys. Proc. Suppl.* 142 (2005) 391–396, [arXiv:hep-ph/0410208](#). [,391(2004)].
- [340] S. Dutta, A. Goyal, M. Kumar and B. Mellado, *Eur. Phys. J. C* 75 (2015) 577, [arXiv:1307.1688](#).
- [341] A. O. Bouzas and F. Larios, *Phys. Rev. D* 88 (2013) 094007, [arXiv:1308.5634](#).
- [342] S. Oryn, X. Rouby and V. Lemaitre, [arXiv:0903.2225](#).

- [343] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JHEP* 06 (2014) 090, [arXiv:1403.7366](#).
- [344] H. Sun, *PoS DIS2018* (2018) 167.
- [345] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B736 (2014) 33–57, [arXiv:1404.2292](#).
- [346] J. A. Aguilar-Saavedra, *Acta Phys. Polon.* B35 (2004) 2695–2710, [arXiv:hep-ph/0409342](#).
- [347] J. Charles *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D91 (2015) 073007, [arXiv:1501.05013](#).
- [348] I. Turk Cakir, A. Yilmaz, H. Denizli, A. Senol, H. Karadeniz and O. Cakir, *Adv. High Energy Phys.* 2017 (2017) 1572053, [arXiv:1705.05419](#).
- [349] O. Cakir, A. Yilmaz, I. Turk Cakir, A. Senol and H. Denizli, *Nucl. Phys.* B944 (2019) 114640, [arXiv:1809.01923](#).
- [350] H. Sun and X. Wang, *Eur. Phys. J.* C78 (2018) 281, [arXiv:1602.04670](#).
- [351] J. A. Aguilar-Saavedra and T. Riemann, “Probing top flavor changing neutral couplings at TESLA,” in *5th Workshop of the 2nd ECFA - DESY Study on Physics and Detectors for a Linear Electron - Positron Collider Obernai, France, October 16-19, 1999*, pp. 2428–2450. 2001. [arXiv:hep-ph/0102197](#). <http://www-library.desy.de/cgi-bin/showprep.pl?LC-TH-2001-067>. [,2428(2001)].
- [352] Top Quark Working Group Collaboration, K. Agashe *et al.*, “Working Group Report: Top Quark,” in *Proceedings, 2013 Community Summer Study on the Future of U.S. Particle Physics: Snowmass on the Mississippi (CSS2013): Minneapolis, MN, USA, July 29-August 6, 2013*. 2013. [arXiv:1311.2028](#). <http://www.slac.stanford.edu/econf/C1307292/docs/Top-21.pdf>.
- [353] B. Coleppa, M. Kumar, S. Kumar and B. Mellado, *Phys. Lett.* B770 (2017) 335–341, [arXiv:1702.03426](#).
- [354] S. Atag and B. Sahin, *Phys. Rev.* D73 (2006) 074001.
- [355] G. R. Boroun, *Phys. Lett.* B744 (2015) 142–145, [arXiv:1503.01590](#).
- [356] S. J. Brodsky, P. Hoyer, C. Peterson and N. Sakai, *Phys. Lett.* 93B (1980) 451–455.
- [357] S. J. Brodsky, A. Kusina, F. Lyonnet, I. Schienbein, H. Spiesberger and R. Vogt, *Adv. High Energy Phys.* 2015 (2015) 231547, [arXiv:1504.06287](#).
- [358] S. J. Brodsky and S. Gardner, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 116 (2016) 019101, [arXiv:1504.00969](#).
- [359] G. F. de Teramond and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 102 (2009) 081601, [arXiv:0809.4899](#).
- [360] SELEX Collaboration, A. Ocherashvili *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B628 (2005) 18–24, [arXiv:hep-ex/0406033](#).
- [361] K. O. Mikaelian, M. A. Samuel and D. Sahdev, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 43 (1979) 746.
- [362] S. J. Brodsky and R. W. Brown, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 49 (1982) 966.
- [363] R. W. Brown, K. L. Kowalski and S. J. Brodsky, *Phys. Rev.* D28 (1983) 624. [Addendum: *Phys. Rev.* D29,2100(1984)].
- [364] M. A. Samuel and J. H. Reid, *Prog. Theor. Phys.* 76 (1986) 184.
- [365] European Muon Collaboration, J. J. Aubert *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* 123B (1983) 275–278.
- [366] CHORUS Collaboration, G. Onengut *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B632 (2006) 65–75.
- [367] J. Gomez *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D49 (1994) 4348–4372.
- [368] New Muon Collaboration, P. Amaudruz *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B441 (1995) 3–11, [arXiv:hep-ph/9503291](#).
- [369] NuTeV Collaboration, M. Tzanov *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D74 (2006) 012008, [arXiv:hep-ex/0509010](#).
- [370] New Muon Collaboration, M. Arneodo *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B441 (1995) 12–30, [arXiv:hep-ex/9504002](#).
- [371] New Muon Collaboration, M. Arneodo *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B481 (1996) 3–22.
- [372] European Muon Collaboration, J. Ashman *et al.*, *Z. Phys.* C57 (1993) 211–218.
- [373] New Muon Collaboration, M. Arneodo *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B481 (1996) 23–39.
- [374] New Muon Collaboration, P. Amaudruz *et al.*, *Nucl. Phys.* B371 (1992) 3–31.
- [375] J. P. Berge *et al.*, *Z. Phys.* C49 (1991) 187–224.
- [376] M. Arneodo, *Phys. Rept.* 240 (1994) 301–393.
- [377] D. F. Geesaman, K. Saito and A. W. Thomas, *Ann. Rev. Nucl. Part. Sci.* 45 (1995) 337–390.
- [378] K. J. Eskola, P. Paakkinen, H. Paukkunen and C. A. Salgado, *Eur. Phys. J.* C77 (2017) 163, [arXiv:1612.05741](#).
- [379] C. A. Salgado *et al.*, *J. Phys.* G39 (2012) 015010, [arXiv:1105.3919](#).
- [380] K. J. Golec-Biernat and M. Wusthoff, *Phys. Rev.* D59 (1998) 014017, [arXiv:hep-ph/9807513](#).

- [381] L. Frankfurt, V. Guzey and M. Strikman, *Phys. Rept.* 512 (2012) 255–393, [arXiv:1106.2091](#).
- [382] F. Gelis, E. Iancu, J. Jalilian-Marian and R. Venugopalan, *Ann. Rev. Nucl. Part. Sci.* 60 (2010) 463–489, [arXiv:1002.0333](#).
- [383] Y. V. Kovchegov and E. Levin, *Camb. Monogr. Part. Phys. Nucl. Phys. Cosmol.* 33 (2012) 1–350.
- [384] B. L. Ioffe, V. S. Fadin and L. N. Lipatov, *Quantum chromodynamics: Perturbative and nonperturbative aspects*, vol. 30. Cambridge Univ. Press, 2010. <http://www.cambridge.org/de/knowledge/isbn/item2710695>.
- [385] J. Collins, *Camb. Monogr. Part. Phys. Nucl. Phys. Cosmol.* 32 (2011) 1–624.
- [386] J. C. Collins, D. E. Soper and G. F. Sterman, *Adv. Ser. Direct. High Energy Phys.* 5 (1989) 1–91, [arXiv:hep-ph/0409313](#).
- [387] H. Paukkunen, *Nucl. Phys.* A967 (2017) 241–248, [arXiv:1704.04036](#).
- [388] H. Paukkunen, *PoS HardProbes2018* (2018) 014, [arXiv:1811.01976](#).
- [389] K. J. Eskola, H. Paukkunen and C. A. Salgado, *JHEP* 04 (2009) 065, [arXiv:0902.4154](#).
- [390] D. de Florian, R. Sassot, P. Zurita and M. Stratmann, *Phys. Rev.* D85 (2012) 074028, [arXiv:1112.6324](#).
- [391] K. Kovarik *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D93 (2016) 085037, [arXiv:1509.00792](#).
- [392] H. Khanpour and S. Atashbar Tehrani, *Phys. Rev.* D93 (2016) 014026, [arXiv:1601.00939](#).
- [393] H. Paukkunen and C. A. Salgado, *JHEP* 07 (2010) 032, [arXiv:1004.3140](#).
- [394] K. Kovarik, I. Schienbein, F. I. Olness, Y. Yu, C. Keppel, J. G. Morfin, J. F. Owens and T. Stavreva, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 106 (2011) 122301, [arXiv:1012.0286](#).
- [395] H. Paukkunen and C. A. Salgado, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 110 (2013) 212301, [arXiv:1302.2001](#).
- [396] N. Armesto, *J. Phys.* G32 (2006) R367–R394, [arXiv:hep-ph/0604108](#).
- [397] K. J. Eskola, P. Paakkinen and H. Paukkunen, *Eur. Phys. J.* C79 (2019) 511, [arXiv:1903.09832](#).
- [398] N. Armesto, H. Paukkunen, J. M. Penín, C. A. Salgado and P. Zurita, *Eur. Phys. J.* C76 (2016) 218, [arXiv:1512.01528](#).
- [399] A. Kusina, F. Lyonnet, D. B. Clark, E. Godat, T. Jezo, K. Kovarik, F. I. Olness, I. Schienbein and J. Y. Yu, *Eur. Phys. J.* C77 (2017) 488, [arXiv:1610.02925](#).
- [400] N. Armesto, A. Capella, A. B. Kaidalov, J. Lopez-Albacete and C. A. Salgado, *Eur. Phys. J.* C29 (2003) 531–540, [arXiv:hep-ph/0304119](#).
- [401] N. Armesto, A. B. Kaidalov, C. A. Salgado and K. Tywoniuk, *Eur. Phys. J.* C68 (2010) 447–457, [arXiv:1003.2947](#).
- [402] S. J. Brodsky, I. Schmidt and J.-J. Yang, *Phys. Rev.* D70 (2004) 116003, [arXiv:hep-ph/0409279](#).
- [403] Z. Citron *et al.*, “Future physics opportunities for high-density QCD at the LHC with heavy-ion and proton beams,” in *HL/HE-LHC Workshop: Workshop on the Physics of HL-LHC, and Perspectives at HE-LHC Geneva, Switzerland, June 18-20, 2018*. 2018. [arXiv:1812.06772](#).
- [404] M. Klein, *EPJ Web Conf.* 112 (2016) 03002.
- [405] LHeC study Group Collaboration, H. Paukkunen, *PoS DIS2017* (2018) 109, [arXiv:1709.08342](#).
- [406] E. C. Aschenauer, S. Fazio, M. A. C. Lamont, H. Paukkunen and P. Zurita, *Phys. Rev.* D96 (2017) 114005, [arXiv:1708.05654](#).
- [407] LHCb Collaboration, R. Aaij *et al.*, *JHEP* 10 (2017) 090, [arXiv:1707.02750](#).
- [408] LHCb Collaboration, R. Aaij *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D99 (2019) 052011, [arXiv:1902.05599](#).
- [409] K. J. Eskola, I. Helenius, P. Paakkinen and H. Paukkunen, [arXiv:1906.02512](#).
- [410] I. Helenius, K. J. Eskola and H. Paukkunen, *JHEP* 09 (2014) 138, [arXiv:1406.1689](#).
- [411] J. Pumplin, D. Stump, R. Brock, D. Casey, J. Huston, J. Kalk, H. L. Lai and W. K. Tung, *Phys. Rev.* D65 (2001) 014013, [arXiv:hep-ph/0101032](#).
- [412] N. Armesto, “Nuclear pdfs.” 2nd FCC Physics Workshop (CERN, January 15th-19th 2018), 2018.
- [413] N. Armesto, *PoS HardProbes2018* (2019) 123.
- [414] S. Alekhin *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J.* C75 (2015) 304, [arXiv:1410.4412](#).
- [415] T. Lappi and H. Mantysaari, *Phys. Rev.* C87 (2013) 032201, [arXiv:1301.4095](#).
- [416] A. J. Baltz, *Phys. Rept.* 458 (2008) 1–171, [arXiv:0706.3356](#).

- [417] V. N. Gribov and A. A. Migdal, *Sov. J. Nucl. Phys.* 8 (1969) 583–590. [*Yad. Fiz.*8,1002(1968)].
- [418] L. L. Frankfurt, G. A. Miller and M. Strikman, *Ann. Rev. Nucl. Part. Sci.* 44 (1994) 501–560, [arXiv:hep-ph/9407274](#).
- [419] C. Marquet, M. R. Moldes and P. Zurita, *Phys. Lett.* B772 (2017) 607–614, [arXiv:1702.00839](#).
- [420] L. L. Frankfurt and M. I. Strikman, *Phys. Lett.* B382 (1996) 6–12.
- [421] H. Kowalski, T. Lappi, C. Marquet and R. Venugopalan, *Phys. Rev.* C78 (2008) 045201, [arXiv:0805.4071](#).
- [422] A. H. Mueller and H. Navelet, *Nucl. Phys.* B282 (1987) 727–744.
- [423] M. Deak, F. Hautmann, H. Jung and K. Kutak, *Eur. Phys. J.* C72 (2012) 1982, [arXiv:1112.6354](#).
- [424] J. L. Albacete and C. Marquet, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 105 (2010) 162301, [arXiv:1005.4065](#).
- [425] T. Lappi and H. Mantysaari, *Nucl. Phys.* A908 (2013) 51–72, [arXiv:1209.2853](#).
- [426] A. Stasto, S.-Y. Wei, B.-W. Xiao and F. Yuan, *Phys. Lett.* B784 (2018) 301–306, [arXiv:1805.05712](#).
- [427] A. van Hameren, P. Kotko, K. Kutak, C. Marquet, E. Petreska and S. Sapeta, *JHEP* 12 (2016) 034, [arXiv:1607.03121](#). [Erratum: *JHEP*02,158(2019)].
- [428] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JHEP* 09 (2010) 091, [arXiv:1009.4122](#).
- [429] S. Schlichting and P. Tribedy, *Adv. High Energy Phys.* 2016 (2016) 8460349, [arXiv:1611.00329](#).
- [430] C. Loizides, *Nucl. Phys.* A956 (2016) 200–207, [arXiv:1602.09138](#).
- [431] B. Schenke, *Nucl. Phys.* A967 (2017) 105–112, [arXiv:1704.03914](#).
- [432] P. Romatschke, *Eur. Phys. J.* C77 (2017) 21, [arXiv:1609.02820](#).
- [433] ATLAS Collaboration, T. A. collaboration, .
- [434] A. Badea, A. Baty, P. Chang, G. M. Innocenti, M. Maggi, C. McGinn, M. Peters, T.-A. Sheng, J. Thaler and Y.-J. Lee, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 123 (2019) 212002, [arXiv:1906.00489](#).
- [435] ZEUS Collaboration, [arXiv:1912.07431](#).
- [436] J. D. Bjorken, S. J. Brodsky and A. Scharff Goldhaber, *Phys. Lett.* B726 (2013) 344–346, [arXiv:1308.1435](#).
- [437] S. D. Glazek, S. J. Brodsky, A. S. Goldhaber and R. W. Brown, *Phys. Rev.* D97 (2018) 114021, [arXiv:1805.08847](#).
- [438] CMS Collaboration, S. Chatrchyan *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B724 (2013) 213–240, [arXiv:1305.0609](#).
- [439] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B765 (2017) 193–220, [arXiv:1606.06198](#).
- [440] S. J. Brodsky, H.-C. Pauli and S. S. Pinsky, *Phys. Rept.* 301 (1998) 299–486, [arXiv:hep-ph/9705477](#).
- [441] P. A. M. Dirac, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* 21 (1949) 392–399.
- [442] D. Ashery, *Nucl. Phys. Proc. Suppl.* 161 (2006) 8–14, [arXiv:hep-ex/0511052](#). [8(2005)].
- [443] G. Bertsch, S. J. Brodsky, A. S. Goldhaber and J. F. Gunion, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 47 (1981) 297.
- [444] L. Frankfurt, G. A. Miller and M. Strikman, *Phys. Rev.* D65 (2002) 094015, [arXiv:hep-ph/0010297](#).
- [445] S. J. Brodsky, C.-R. Ji and G. P. Lepage, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 51 (1983) 83.
- [446] S. J. Brodsky and A. H. Mueller, *Phys. Lett.* B206 (1988) 685–690.
- [447] S. J. Brodsky, I. A. Schmidt and G. F. de Teramond, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 64 (1990) 1011.
- [448] S. J. Brodsky and H. J. Lu, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 64 (1990) 1342.
- [449] S. J. Brodsky, I. Schmidt and S. Liuti, [arXiv:1908.06317](#).
- [450] S. Buddenbrock, A. S. Cornell, Y. Fang, A. Fadol Mohammed, M. Kumar, B. Mellado and K. G. Tomiwa, *JHEP* 10 (2019) 157, [arXiv:1901.05300](#).
- [451] W. Liu, H. Sun, X. Wang and X. Luo, *Phys. Rev.* D92 (2015) 074015, [arXiv:1507.03264](#).
- [452] X. Wang, H. Sun and X. Luo, *Adv. High Energy Phys.* 2017 (2017) 4693213, [arXiv:1703.02691](#).
- [453] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Phys. Rev.* D98 (2018) 032002, [arXiv:1805.03483](#).
- [454] CMS Collaboration, V. Khachatryan *et al.*, *JHEP* 02 (2017) 079, [arXiv:1610.04857](#).
- [455] J. Hernandez-Sanchez, O. Flores-Sanchez, C. G. Honorato, S. Moretti and S. Rosado, *PoS CHARGED2016* (2017) 032, [arXiv:1612.06316](#).
- [456] S. P. Das, J. Hernandez-Sanchez, S. Moretti and A. Rosado, [arXiv:1806.08361](#).
- [457] H. Sun, X. Luo, W. Wei and T. Liu, *Phys. Rev.* D96 (2017) 095003, [arXiv:1710.06284](#).

- [458] G. Azuelos, H. Sun and K. Wang, *Phys. Rev. D* **97** (2018) 116005, [arXiv:1712.07505](#).
- [459] C. Mosomane, M. Kumar, A. S. Cornell and B. Mellado, *J. Phys. Conf. Ser.* **889** (2017) 012004, [arXiv:1707.05997](#).
- [460] L. Delle Rose, O. Fischer and A. Hammad, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A* **34** (2019) 1950127, [arXiv:1809.04321](#).
- [461] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, *JHEP* **06** (2018) 127, [arXiv:1804.01939](#). [Erratum: *JHEP* **03**,128(2019)].
- [462] CMS Collaboration, C. Collaboration, .
- [463] S. P. Das, J. Hernández-Sánchez, S. Moretti, A. Rosado and R. Xoxocotzi, *Phys. Rev. D* **94** (2016) 055003, [arXiv:1503.01464](#).
- [464] S. P. Das and M. Nowakowski, *Phys. Rev. D* **96** (2017) 055014, [arXiv:1612.07241](#).
- [465] S. S. Biswal, R. M. Godbole, B. Mellado and S. Raychaudhuri, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **109** (2012) 261801, [arXiv:1203.6285](#).
- [466] I. T. Cakir, O. Cakir, A. Senol and A. T. Tasci, *Mod. Phys. Lett. A* **28** (2013) 1350142, [arXiv:1304.3616](#).
- [467] M. Kumar, X. Ruan, R. Islam, A. S. Cornell, M. Klein, U. Klein and B. Mellado, *Phys. Lett. B* **764** (2017) 247–253, [arXiv:1509.04016](#).
- [468] H. Hesari, H. Khanpour and M. Mohammadi Najafabadi, *Phys. Rev. D* **97** (2018) 095041, [arXiv:1805.04697](#).
- [469] Y.-L. Tang, C. Zhang and S.-h. Zhu, *Phys. Rev. D* **94** (2016) 011702, [arXiv:1508.01095](#).
- [470] S. Liu, Y.-L. Tang, C. Zhang and S.-h. Zhu, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **77** (2017) 457, [arXiv:1608.08458](#).
- [471] D. Curtin, K. Deshpande, O. Fischer and J. Zurita, *JHEP* **07** (2018) 024, [arXiv:1712.07135](#).
- [472] G. Azuelos, M. D’Onofrio, S. Iwamoto and K. Wang, [arXiv:1912.03823](#).
- [473] C. Han, R. Li, R.-Q. Pan and K. Wang, *Phys. Rev. D* **98** (2018) 115003, [arXiv:1802.03679](#).
- [474] S. Kunday, *J. Korean Phys. Soc.* **64** (2014) 1783–1787, [arXiv:1304.2124](#).
- [475] R.-Y. Zhang, H. Wei, L. Han and W.-G. Ma, *Mod. Phys. Lett. A* **29** (2014) 1450029, [arXiv:1401.4266](#).
- [476] X.-P. Li, L. Guo, W.-G. Ma, R.-Y. Zhang, L. Han and M. Song, *Phys. Rev. D* **88** (2013) 014023, [arXiv:1307.2308](#).
- [477] J. A. Evans and D. Mckeen, [arXiv:1803.01880](#).
- [478] D. Curtin, K. Deshpande, O. Fischer and J. Zurita, *Phys. Rev. D* **99** (2019) 055011, [arXiv:1812.01568](#).
- [479] S. Antusch and O. Fischer, *JHEP* **05** (2015) 053, [arXiv:1502.05915](#).
- [480] S. Antusch, E. Cazzato and O. Fischer, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A* **32** (2017) 1750078, [arXiv:1612.02728](#).
- [481] S. Antusch, O. Fischer and A. Hammad, [arXiv:1908.02852](#).
- [482] A. Das, S. Jana, S. Mandal and S. Nandi, *Phys. Rev. D* **99** (2019) 055030, [arXiv:1811.04291](#).
- [483] ATLAS Collaboration, G. Aad *et al.*, [arXiv:1905.09787](#).
- [484] S. Antusch, E. Cazzato and O. Fischer, *Phys. Lett. B* **774** (2017) 114–118, [arXiv:1706.05990](#).
- [485] DELPHI Collaboration, P. Abreu *et al.*, *Z. Phys. C* **74** (1997) 57–71. [Erratum: *Z. Phys. C* **75**,580(1997)].
- [486] MEG Collaboration, J. Adam *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **110** (2013) 201801, [arXiv:1303.0754](#).
- [487] S. Jana, N. Okada and D. Raut, [arXiv:1911.09037](#).
- [488] L. Duarte, G. A. González-Sprinberg and O. A. Sampayo, *Phys. Rev. D* **91** (2015) 053007, [arXiv:1412.1433](#).
- [489] L. Duarte, G. Zapata and O. A. Sampayo, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **78** (2018) 352, [arXiv:1802.07620](#).
- [490] S. Mondal and S. K. Rai, *Phys. Rev. D* **93** (2016) 011702, [arXiv:1510.08632](#).
- [491] M. Lindner, F. S. Queiroz, W. Rodejohann and C. E. Yaguna, *JHEP* **06** (2016) 140, [arXiv:1604.08596](#).
- [492] S. Mondal and S. K. Rai, *Phys. Rev. D* **94** (2016) 033008, [arXiv:1605.04508](#).
- [493] B. Holdom, *Phys. Lett.* **166B** (1986) 196–198.
- [494] M. D’Onofrio, O. Fischer and Z. S. Wang, [arXiv:1909.02312](#).
- [495] LHCb Collaboration, R. Aaij *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **120** (2018) 061801, [arXiv:1710.02867](#).
- [496] S. Heeba and F. Kahlhoefer, [arXiv:1908.09834](#).
- [497] C.-X. Yue, M.-Z. Liu and Y.-C. Guo, *Phys. Rev. D* **100** (2019) 015020, [arXiv:1904.10657](#).

- [498] I. T. Cakir, A. Senol and A. T. Tasci, *Mod. Phys. Lett. A29* (2014) 1450021, [arXiv:1301.2617](#).
- [499] I. A. Sarmiento-Alvarado, A. O. Bouzas and F. Larios, *J. Phys. G42* (2015) 085001, [arXiv:1412.6679](#).
- [500] H. Denizli, A. Senol, A. Yilmaz, I. Turk Cakir, H. Karadeniz and O. Cakir, *Phys. Rev. D96* (2017) 015024, [arXiv:1701.06932](#).
- [501] S. Behera, R. Islam, M. Kumar, P. Poulouse and R. Rahaman, *Phys. Rev. D100* (2019) 015006, [arXiv:1811.04681](#).
- [502] HFLAV Collaboration, Y. S. Amhis *et al.*, [arXiv:1909.12524](#).
- [503] J. C. Pati and A. Salam, *Phys. Rev. D10* (1974) 275–289. [Erratum: *Phys. Rev. D11*,703(1975)].
- [504] W. Buchmuller, R. Ruckl and D. Wyler, *Phys. Lett. B191* (1987) 442–448. [Erratum: *Phys. Lett. B448*,320(1999)].
- [505] I. Doršner, S. Fajfer, A. Greljo, J. F. Kamenik and N. Košnik, *Phys. Rept.* 641 (2016) 1–68, [arXiv:1603.04993](#).
- [506] ATLAS Collaboration, “ATLAS Exotics Searches,”. https://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/CombinedSummaryPlots/EXOTICS/ATLAS_Exotics_Summary/ATLAS_Exotics_Summary.pdf.
- [507] CMS Collaboration, “Overview of CMS Exo Results,”. https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/pub/CMSPublic/SummaryPlotsEX013TeV/EX0_barchart_Jan19.svg.
- [508] J. Zhang, C.-X. Yue and Z.-C. Liu, *Mod. Phys. Lett. A33* (2018) 1850039.
- [509] I. Doršner and A. Greljo, *JHEP* 05 (2018) 126, [arXiv:1801.07641](#).
- [510] M. Bahr *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C58* (2008) 639–707, [arXiv:0803.0883](#).
- [511] J. Bellm *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C76* (2016) 196, [arXiv:1512.01178](#).
- [512] S. Mandal, M. Mitra and N. Sinha, *Phys. Rev. D98* (2018) 095004, [arXiv:1807.06455](#).
- [513] R. Padhan, S. Mandal, M. Mitra and N. Sinha, [arXiv:1912.07236](#).
- [514] Y.-J. Zhang, L. Han and Y.-B. Liu, *Phys. Lett. B768* (2017) 241–247.
- [515] Y.-B. Liu, *Nucl. Phys. B923* (2017) 312–323, [arXiv:1704.02059](#).
- [516] L. Han, Y.-J. Zhang and Y.-B. Liu, *Phys. Lett. B771* (2017) 106–112.
- [517] A. Ozansoy, V. Ar? and V. Çetinkaya, *Adv. High Energy Phys.* 2016 (2016) 1739027, [arXiv:1607.04437](#).
- [518] A. Caliskan, *Adv. High Energy Phys.* 2017 (2017) 4726050, [arXiv:1706.09797](#).
- [519] A. Caliskan and S. O. Kara, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A33* (2018) 1850141, [arXiv:1806.02037](#).
- [520] Y. O. Günayd?n, M. Sahin and S. Sultansoy, *Acta Phys. Polon. B49* (2018) 1763, [arXiv:1707.00056](#).
- [521] M. Sahin, *Acta Phys. Polon. B45* (2014) 1811, [arXiv:1302.5747](#).
- [522] Y. C. Acar, U. Kaya, B. B. Oner and S. Sultansoy, *J. Phys. G44* (2017) 045005, [arXiv:1605.08028](#).
- [523] A. Michel and M. Sher, *Phys. Rev. D100* (2019) 095011, [arXiv:1909.10627](#).
- [524] G. R. Boroun, *Chin. Phys. C41* (2017) 013104, [arXiv:1510.02914](#).
- [525] G. R. Boroun, B. Rezaei and S. Heidari, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A32* (2017) 1750197, [arXiv:1606.02864](#).
- [526] H.-Y. Bi, R.-Y. Zhang, H.-Y. Han, Y. Jiang and X.-G. Wu, *Phys. Rev. D95* (2017) 034019, [arXiv:1612.07990](#).
- [527] K. He, H.-Y. Bi, R.-Y. Zhang, X.-Z. Li and W.-G. Ma, *J. Phys. G45* (2018) 055005, [arXiv:1710.11508](#).
- [528] H.-Y. Bi, R.-Y. Zhang, X.-G. Wu, W.-G. Ma, X.-Z. Li and S. Owusu, *Phys. Rev. D95* (2017) 074020, [arXiv:1702.07181](#).
- [529] N. Armesto and E. Scomparin, *Eur. Phys. J. Plus* 131 (2016) 52, [arXiv:1511.02151](#).
- [530] W. Busza, K. Rajagopal and W. van der Schee, *Ann. Rev. Nucl. Part. Sci.* 68 (2018) 339–376, [arXiv:1802.04801](#).
- [531] P. Romatschke and U. Romatschke, *Relativistic Fluid Dynamics In and Out of Equilibrium*. Cambridge Monographs on Mathematical Physics. Cambridge University Press, 2019. [arXiv:1712.05815](#). <https://www.cambridge.org/academic/subjects/physics/theoretical-physics-and-mathematical-physics/relativistic-fluid-dynamics-and-out-equilibrium-and-applications-relativistic-nuclear-collisions?format=HB&isbn=9781108483681>.
- [532] Y. Mehtar-Tani, J. G. Milhano and K. Tywoniuk, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A28* (2013) 1340013, [arXiv:1302.2579](#).

- [533] A. Andronic *et al.*, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **76** (2016) 107, [arXiv:1506.03981](#).
- [534] D. d’Enterria, A. Morsch and P. Crochet (eds.), *Proceedings, 9th International Conference on Hard and Electromagnetic Probes of High-Energy Nuclear Collisions: Hard Probes 2018 (HP2018)*, vol. HardProbes2018, SISSA. SISSA, 2018. <https://pos.sissa.it/345>.
- [535] H. A. Andrews *et al.*, [arXiv:1808.03689](#).
- [536] ALICE Collaboration, B. B. Abelev *et al.*, *Phys. Lett. B* **734** (2014) 314–327, [arXiv:1311.0214](#).
- [537] H. Song, S. A. Bass, U. Heinz, T. Hirano and C. Shen, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **106** (2011) 192301, [arXiv:1011.2783](#). [Erratum: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **109**, 139904(2012)].
- [538] H. Niemi, K. J. Eskola and R. Paatelainen, *Phys. Rev. C* **93** (2016) 024907, [arXiv:1505.02677](#).
- [539] J. Liu, C. Shen and U. Heinz, *Phys. Rev. C* **91** (2015) 064906, [arXiv:1504.02160](#). [Erratum: *Phys. Rev. C* **92**, no.4, 049904(2015)].
- [540] B. Schenke, P. Tribedy and R. Venugopalan, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **108** (2012) 252301, [arXiv:1202.6646](#).
- [541] J.-Y. Ollitrault, A. M. Poskanzer and S. A. Voloshin, *Phys. Rev. C* **80** (2009) 014904, [arXiv:0904.2315](#).
- [542] STAR Collaboration, J. Adams *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. C* **72** (2005) 014904, [arXiv:nucl-ex/0409033](#).
- [543] STAR Collaboration, B. I. Abelev *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. C* **79** (2009) 034909, [arXiv:0808.2041](#).
- [544] CMS Collaboration, A. M. Sirunyan *et al.*, [arXiv:1905.01486](#).
- [545] V. Guzey and M. Zhalov, *JHEP* **10** (2013) 207, [arXiv:1307.4526](#).
- [546] J. G. Contreras, *Phys. Rev. C* **96** (2017) 015203, [arXiv:1610.03350](#).
- [547] V. Guzey and M. Klasen, *Eur. Phys. J. C* **79** (2019) 396, [arXiv:1902.05126](#).
- [548] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **121** (2018) 212301, [arXiv:1806.08708](#).
- [549] ATLAS Collaboration, M. Aaboud *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. C* **100** (2019) 034903, [arXiv:1901.10440](#).
- [550] R. Aaij *et al.*, “Expression of Interest for a Phase-II LHCb Upgrade: Opportunities in flavour physics, and beyond, in the HL-LHC era,” CERN-LHCC-2017-003, CERN, Geneva, Feb 2017. <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2244311>.
- [551] J. L. Abelleira Fernandez *et al.*, *Journal of Physics G: Nuclear and Particle Physics* **39** (2012) 075001. <https://doi.org/10.1088/0954-3899/39/7/075001>.
- [552] O. Brüning, “Accelerator design.” Presented at the lhec workshop, June 2015.
- [553] D. Brandt, H. Burkhardt, M. Lamont, S. Myers and J. Wenninger, *Rept. Prog. Phys.* **63** (2000) 939–1000.
- [554] A. Klein, M. and. Stocchi, “PERLE: A High Power Energy Recovery Facility for Europe A contribution to the Update of the European Strategy on Particle Physics,” CERN-ACC-NOTE-2018-0086, CERN, Geneva, 2018.
- [555] I. Apollinari, G. and. Bejar Alonso, O. Brüning, P. Fessia, M. Lamont, L. Rossi and L. Taviani, “High-Luminosity Large Hadron Collider (HL-LHC), Technical Design Report V.0.1,” CERN-2017-007-M, CERN, Geneva, 2017.
- [556] D. S. D. Pellegrini, A. Latina and S. Bogacz, *Phys. Rev. ST-AB* **12**1004 (2015) .
- [557] S. B. et al, *ICFA Beam Dynamics Newsletter* **71** (2017) 135–144.
- [558] G. Hoffstaetter and I. Bazarov, *Phys. Rev. ST-AB* **7** (2004) .
- [559] 12 GeV CEBAF Upgrade, Reference Design: www.jlab.org/physics/GeV/accelerator (2012).
- [560] D. Pellegrini, *Ph.D. Thesis, EPFL, Switzerland* (2016) .
- [561] J. S. Schwinger, *Phys. Rev.* **70** (1946) 798. Report No. LBL-39088.
- [562] R. Calaga and E. Jensen, “A Proposal for an ERL Test Facility at CERN,” in *Proceedings, 4th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC 2013): Shanghai, China, May 12-17, 2013*, p. WEPWO049. 2013. <http://JACoW.org/IPAC2013/papers/wepwo049.pdf>.
- [563] F. Marhauser, “Cost Rationales for an SRF Proton Linac,” in *Proceedings, 5th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC 2014): Dresden, Germany, June 15-20, 2014*, p. THPME053. 2014. <http://jacow.org/IPAC2014/papers/thpme053.pdf>.
- [564] F. Marhauser, “Recent results on a multi-cell 802 mhz bulk nb cavity.” Presented at fcc week 2018, https://indico.cern.ch/event/656491/contributions/2932251/attachments/1629681/2597650/5_cell_Cavity_Marhauser.pdf, 2018.

- [565] A. T. H.P. Bluem, D. Dowell and L. Young, “High brightness thermionic electron gun performance,” in *Proceedings of ERL2011*, pp. 30–35. Association for Computing Machinery, Tsukuba, Japan, 2011. <https://accelconf.web.cern.ch/AccelConf/ERL2011/papers/proceed.pdf>.
- [566] F. Sannibale, K. Baptiste, C. Cork, J. Corlett, M. Decool, S. D. Santis, M. Dickinson, L. Doolittle, J. Doyle, J. Feng, D. Filippetto, D. Gibson, S. Giermann, G. Harris, G. Huang, M. Johnson, M. K. and T. Kramasz, S. Kwiatkowski, D. Leitner, R. Lellinger, R. Li, C. Mitchell, V. Moroz, J. Nasiatka, W. Norum, H. Padmore, C. Pagani, G. Portmann, H. Qian, H. Rasool, J. Schmerge, D. Sertore, D. Syversrud, T. Vecchione, M. Vinco, S. Virostek, R. Wells, F. Zhou and M. Zolotarev, “The vhf-gun, the lbnl high-brightness electron photo-injector for mhz-class repetition-rate applications*,” in *High-Brightness Sources and Light-Driven Interactions*, p. ET1A.1. Optical Society of America, 2016. <http://www.osapublishing.org/abstract.cfm?URI=EUVXRAY-2016-ET1A.1>.
- [567] Z. Wang, Q. Gu, G. Wang and M. Zhao, “Injector Physics Design at SHINE,” in *Proc. 10th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC’19), Melbourne, Australia, 19-24 May 2019*, no. 10 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pp. 1801–1803. JACoW Publishing, Geneva, Switzerland, Jun. 2019. <http://jacow.org/ipac2019/papers/tuprb053.pdf>. <https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2019-TUPRB053>.
- [568] G. Shu, Y. Chen, S. Lal, H. Qian, H. Shaker and F. Stephan, “FIRST DESIGN STUDIES OF A NC CW RF GUN FOR EUROPEAN XFEL,” in *Proc. 10th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC’19), Melbourne, Australia, 19-24 May 2019*, no. 10 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pp. 1698–1701. JACoW Publishing, Geneva, Switzerland, Jun. 2019. <http://jacow.org/ipac2019/papers/tuprb010.pdf>. <https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2019-TUPRB010>.
- [569] J. Teichert, A. Arnold, H. BÄEtzig, M. Justus, T. Kamps, U. Lehnert, P. Lu, P. Michel, P. Murcek, J. Rudolph, R. Schurig, W. Seidel, H. Vennekate, I. Will and R. Xiang, *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment* 743 (2014) 114 – 120. <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S016890021400014X>.
- [570] B. Dunham, J. Barley, A. Bartnik, I. Bazarov, L. Cultrera, J. Dobbins, G. Hoffstaetter, B. Johnson, R. Kaplan, S. Karkare, V. Kostroun, Y. Li, M. Liepe, X. Liu, F. Loehl, J. Maxson, P. Quigley, J. Reilly, D. Rice, D. Sabol, E. Smith, K. Smolenski, M. Tigner, V. Vesherevich, D. Widger and Z. Zhao, *Applied Physics Letters* 102 (2013) 034105, <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4789395>. <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4789395>.
- [571] B. Hounsell, W. Kaabi, M. Klein, B. Militsyn and C. Welsch, “Optimisation of the PERLE injector,” in *Proceedings, ERL19*. 2019.
- [572] N. Nishimori, R. Nagai, S. Matsuba, R. Hajima, M. Yamamoto, T. Miyajima, Y. Honda, H. Iijima, M. Kuriki and M. Kuwahara, *Applied Physics Letters* 102 (2013) 234103, <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4811158>. <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4811158>.
- [573] B. Hounsell, W. Kaabi, M. Klein, B. Militsyn, T. Noakes and C. Welsch, “Re-optimisation of the ALICE Gun Upgrade Design for the 500-pC Bunch Charge Requirements of PERLE,” in *Proceedings, 10th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC2019): Melbourne, Australia, May 19-24, 2019*, p. TUPTS066. 2019.
- [574] A. Zaltsman and R. Lambiase, *Proceedings of the 24-th Particle Accelerator Conference, PAC-2011, TUP125* (2011) .
- [575] B. Parker, “Latest Developments and Progress on the IR magnet design.” presented at the LHeC and FCC-eh Workshop, Sept 2017.
- [576] B. Parker, “Superconducting Magnet Concepts for Electron Hadron Collider IRs.” Presented at the electrons for the lhc - lhec/fceeh and perle workshop, Sept 2018.
- [577] E. Cruz-Alaniz, D. Newton, R. Tomás and M. Korostelev, *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams* 18 (2015) 111001. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevSTAB.18.111001>.
- [578] R. Martin and R. Tomás Garcia, “Length optimization of the detector region dipoles in LHeC and FCC-eh,” CERN-ACC-2018-0042, CERN, Geneva, Oct 2018. <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2644892>.
- [579] S. Fartoukh, *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams* 16 (2013) 111002. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevSTAB.16.111002>.
- [580] “Lattice repository.” <https://gitlab.cern.ch/lhec-optics/lhec-lattice>, 2019.
- [581] A. Gaddi, “Installation Issues of eh Detectors (LHC and FCC).” Presented at the lhec and fcc-eh workshop, Sept 2017.

- [582] A. Gaddi. Private communication, Jan 2019.
- [583] R. Bruce, C. Bracco, R. De Maria, M. Giovannozzi, S. Redaelli, R. Tomás Garcia, F. M. Velotti and J. Wenninger, “Updated parameters for HL-LHC aperture calculations for proton beams,” CERN-ACC-2017-0051, CERN, Geneva, Jul 2017. <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2274330>.
- [584] R. De Maria *et al.*, “HLLHC V1.3 Optics repository.” <http://lhc-optics.web.cern.ch/lhc-optics/HLLHC V1.3/>.
- [585] E. Cruz-Alaniz, R. Martin and R. Tomás, “LHeC optics with $\beta^* = 10$ cm and $L^* = 15$ m,” CERN-XXX-2019-XXX, CERN, Geneva, 2019.
- [586] Sixtrack web site: <http://sixtrack.web.cern.ch/SixTrack/>.
- [587] E. Cruz-Alaniz, J. L. Abelleira, L. van Riesen-Haupt, A. Seryi, R. Martin and R. Tomás, “Methods to increase the dynamic aperture of the fcc-hh lattice,” in *Proc. of International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC’18), Vancouver, Canada, 2018*, no. 1 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pp. 3593–3596. JACoW, Geneva, Switzerland, May 2018. <https://accelconf.web.cern.ch/AccelConf/ipac2018/papers/thpak145.pdf>.
- [588] F. Zimmermann *et al.*, “Interaction-Region Design Options for a Linac-Ring LHeC,” in *Proc. of International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC’10), Kyoto, Japan, May 23-28, 2010*, no. 1 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pp. 1605–1607. JACoW, Geneva, Switzerland, May 2010. <http://accelconf.web.cern.ch/AccelConf/IPAC10/papers/tupeb037.pdf>.
- [589] J. L. Abelleira, H. Garcia, R. Tomás and F. Zimmermann, “Final-Focus Optics for the LHeC Electron Beam Line,” in *Proc. of International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC’12), New Orleans, Louisiana, USA, May 20-25, 2012*, no. 1 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pp. 1861–1863. JACoW, Geneva, Switzerland, May 2012. <http://accelconf.web.cern.ch/AccelConf/IPAC10/papers/tupeb037.pdf>.
- [590] G. Arduini *et al.*, “Energy frontier DIS at CERN: the LHeC and the FCCeh, PERLE.” <https://pos.sissa.it/316/183/pdf>.
- [591] R. Tomás, “LHeC interaction region.” Presented at dis 2012 workshop, <https://indico.cern.ch/event/153252/contributions/1396962/attachments/160393/226540/SLIDES.pdf>, 2012.
- [592] P. et al., *IEEE Transactions on Applied Superconductivity* (2003) .
- [593] S. Russenschuck, *Field computation for accelerator magnets: analytical and numerical methods for electromagnetic design and optimization*. Wiley, Weinheim, 2010. <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1221810>.
- [594] V. Fern, E.J. and Di Murro, K. Soga, Z. Li, L. Scibile and J. Osborne, (2018) . <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tust.2018.04.003>.
- [595] C. Laughton, *International Journal of Mining and Geological Engineering* (1988) .
- [596] C. Tennant, “Energy Recovery Linacs,” in *Challenges and Goals for Accelerators in the XXI Century*, O. Brüning and S. Myers (eds.). World Scientific, 2016.
- [597] C. Tennant, “Progress at the Jefferson Laboratory FEL,” in *Particle accelerator. Proceedings, 23rd Conference, PAC’09, Vancouver, Canada, May 4-8, 2009*, p. TH3PBI03. 2010. http://www1.jlab.org/UL/publications/view_pub.cfm?pub_id=8641.
- [598] G. H. Hoffstaetter and I. V. Bazarov, *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams* 7 (2004) 054401. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevSTAB.7.054401>.
- [599] D. R. Douglas, K. C. Jordan, L. Merminga, E. G. Pozdeyev, C. D. Tennant, H. Wang, T. I. Smith, S. Simrock, I. V. Bazarov and G. H. Hoffstaetter, *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams* 9 (2006) 064403. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevSTAB.9.064403>.
- [600] S. Di Mitri, M. Cornacchia and S. Spampinati, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 110 (2013) 014801. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.110.014801>.
- [601] M. G. Fedurin, D. Kayran, V. Yakimenko, A. V. Fedotov, V. Litvinenko and P. Muggli, *Conf. Proc. C110328* (2011) 1677–1679.
- [602] S. Heifets, G. Stupakov and S. Krinsky, *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams* 5 (2002) 064401. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevSTAB.5.064401>.
- [603] Z. Huang and K.-J. Kim, *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams* 5 (2002) 074401. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevSTAB.5.074401>.
- [604] S. Di Mitri and M. Cornacchia, *EPL (Europhysics Letters)* 109 (2015) 62002. <https://app.dimensions.ai/details/publication/pub.1064226665>.

- [605] C.-Y. Tsai, D. Douglas, R. Li and C. Tennant, *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams* 19 (2016) 114401. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.19.114401>.
- [606] C.-Y. Tsai, S. Di Mitri, D. Douglas, R. Li and C. Tennant, *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams* 20 (2017) 024401. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevAccelBeams.20.024401>.
- [607] D. Douglas *et al.* Jefferson Laboratory Technical Note 12-017, 2012.
- [608] R. Alarcon *et al.*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 111 (2013) 164801. <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.111.164801>.
- [609] T. Powers and C. Tennant, “Implications of incomplete energy recovery in srf-based energy recovery linacs,” in *Proceedings of the 2007 ICFA Workshop on Energy Recovery Linacs, Daresbury, UK*, p. 75. 2007.
- [610] T. Powers, “Control of Microphonics for Narrow Control Bandwidth Cavities,” Talk presented at the 2017 International Conference on RF Superconductivity, Lanzhou, China, 2017.
- [611] S. Benson *et al.*, *Conf. Proc.* C070625 (2007) 79.
- [612] T. Powers, “Optimization of SRF Linacs,” in *Proceedings of the 2013 International Conference on RF Superconductivity, Paris, France*, p. 830. 2013.
- [613] P. Williams, “A Staged, Multi-User X-Ray Free Electron Laser and Nuclear Physics Facility based on a Multi-Pass Recirculating Superconducting CW Linac,” in *Proc. Future Light Sources 2018, Shanghai*. 2018.
- [614] S. Benson *et al.*, “Development of a Bunched-Beam Electron Cooler for the Jefferson Lab Electron-Ion Collider,” in *Proceedings, 9th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC 2018), Vancouver, BC Canada*, p. MOPMK015. 2018.
- [615] C. Tennant. <https://userweb.jlab.org/~tennant/>.
- [616] C. Tennant, “Analysis of the Baseline PERLE Lattice,” Jefferson Laboratory Technical Note 18-031, 2018.
- [617] D. Douglas *et al.*, ““Why PERLE?” Historical Context and Technological Motivation,” Jefferson Laboratory Technical Note 18-014, 2018.
- [618] G. H. Hoffstaetter *et al.*, “CBETA Design Report, Cornell-BNL ERL Test Accelerator,” 2017. [arXiv:1706.04245](https://arxiv.org/abs/1706.04245).
- [619] T. Satogata *et al.*, “ER@CEBAF: A test of 5-pass energy recovery at CEBAF,” Program Advisory Committee Proposal, June 2016.
- [620] M. Frank, F. Gaede, M. Petric and A. Sailer, “Aidasoft/dd4hep,” Oct. 2018. <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.592244>. webpage: <http://dd4hep.cern.ch/>.
- [621] CMS Collaboration, G. Bianchi, *JINST* 9 (2014) C03054.
- [622] LHCf Collaboration, O. Adriani *et al.*, *Phys. Lett.* B780 (2018) 233–239, [arXiv:1703.07678](https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.07678).